THE

POLITICS OF ARISTOTLE

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH

WITH INTRODUCTION, MARGINAL ANALYSIS
ESSAYS, NOTES AND INDICES

BY

B. JOWETT M.A.
MASTER OF BALLIOL COLLEGE
REGius PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD
DOCTOR IN THEOLOGY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF LEYDEN

VOL. I

CONTAINING THE INTRODUCTION AND TRANSLATION

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1885

[All rights reserved]
THE POLITICS.

BOOK I.

EVERY state is a community of some kind, and every community is established with a view to some good; for mankind always act in order to obtain that which they think good. But, if all communities aim at some good, the state or political community, which is the highest of all, and which embraces all the rest, aims, and in a greater degree than any other, at the highest good.

Now there is an erroneous opinion  that a statesman, king, householder, and master are the same, and that they differ, not in kind, but only in the number of their subjects. For example, the ruler over a few is called a master; over more, the manager of a household; over a still larger number, a statesman or king, as if there were no difference between a great household and a small state. The distinction which is made between the king and the statesman is as follows: When the government is personal, the ruler is a king; when, according to the principles of the political science, the citizens rule and are ruled in turn, then he is called a statesman.

But all this is a mistake; for governments differ in kind, as will be evident to any one who considers the matter according to the method  which has hitherto guided us. As in other departments of science, so in politics, the compound should always be resolved into the simple elements or least parts of the whole. We must

---

* Cp. Plato Politicus, 258 e foll.  
* Cp. c. 8. § 1.

---

Ed. Bekker, 1252 a.
therefore look at the elements of which the state is composed, in order that we may see in what they differ from one another, and whether any scientific distinction can be drawn between the different kinds of rule.

He who thus considers things in their first growth and origin, whether a state or anything else, will obtain the clearest view of them. In the first place (1) there must be a union of those who cannot exist without each other; for example, of male and female, that the race may continue; and this is a union which is formed, not of deliberate purpose, but because, in common with other animals and with plants, mankind have a natural desire to leave behind them an image of themselves. And (2) there must be a union of natural ruler and subject, that both may be preserved. For he who can foresee with his mind is by nature intended to be lord and master, and he who can work with his body is a subject, and by nature a slave; hence master and slave have the same interest. Nature, however, has distinguished between the female and the slave. For she is not niggardly, like the smith who fashions the Delphian knife for many uses; she makes each thing for a single use, and every instrument is best made when intended for one and not for many uses. But among barbarians no distinction is made between women and slaves, because there is no natural ruler among them: they are a community of slaves, male and female. Wherefore the poets say,—

'It is meet that Hellenes should rule over barbarians;'

as if they thought that the barbarian and the slave were by nature one.

Out of these two relationships between man and woman, master and slave, the family first arises, and Hesiod is right when he says,—

'First house and wife and an ox for the plough.'

* Or, with Bernays, "how the different kinds of rule differ from one another, and generally whether any scientific result can be attained about each one of them."

b Eurip. Iphig. in Aulid. 1400.

for the ox is the poor man's slave. The family is the association established by nature for the supply of men's every day wants, and the members of it are called by Charondas 'companions of the cupboard' [δομοστῆτοι], and by Epimenides the Cretan, 'companions of the manger' [δομοκάπτης]. But when several families are united, and the association aims at something more than the supply of daily needs, then comes into existence the village. And the most natural form of the village appears to be that of a colony from the family, composed of the children and grandchildren, who are said to be 'suckled with the same milk.' And this is the reason why Hellenic states were originally governed by kings; because the Hellenes were under royal rule before they came together, as the barbarians still are. Every family is ruled by the eldest, and therefore in the colonies of the family the kingly form of government prevailed because they were of the same blood. As Homer says [of the Cyclopes]:—

'Each one gives law to his children and to his wives.'

For they lived dispersedly, as was the manner in ancient times. Wherefore men say that the Gods have a king, because they themselves either are or were in ancient times under the rule of a king. For they imagine, not only the forms of the Gods, but their ways of life to be like their own.

When several villages are united in a single community, perfect and large enough to be nearly or quite self-sufficing, the state comes into existence, originating in the bare needs of life, and continuing in existence for the sake of a good life. And therefore, if the earlier forms of society are natural, so is the state, for it is the end of them, and the [completed] nature is the end. For what each thing is when fully developed, we call its nature, whether we are speaking of a man, a horse, or a family.

---

* Or, reading with the old translator (William of Moerbek) δομοκάπτης, 'companions of the hearth.'
* Od. ix. 114, quoted by Plato Laws, iii. 680, and in N. Eth. x. 9. § 13.
Besides, the final cause and end of a thing is the best, and to be self-sufficing is the end and the best. Hence it is evident that the state is a creation of nature, and that man is by nature a political animal. And he who by nature and not by mere accident is without a state, is either above humanity, or below it; he is the 'Tribeless, lawless, heartless one,' whom Homer\(^a\) denounces—the outcast who is a lover of war; he may be compared to a bird which flies alone.

Now the reason why man is more of a political animal than bees or any other gregarious animals is evident. Nature, as we often say, makes nothing in vain\(^b\), and man is the only animal whom she has endowed with the gift of speech\(^c\). And whereas mere sound is but an indication of pleasure or pain, and is therefore found in other animals (for their nature attains to the perception of pleasure and pain and the intimation of them to one another, and no further), the power of speech is intended to set forth the expedient and inexpedient, and likewise the just and the unjust. And it is a characteristic of man that he alone has any sense of good and evil, of just and unjust, and the association of living beings who have this sense makes a family and a state.

Thus the state is by nature clearly prior to the family and to the individual, since the whole is of necessity prior to the part; for example, if the whole body be destroyed, there will be no foot or hand, except in an equivocal sense, as we might speak of a stone hand; for when destroyed the hand will be no better. But things are defined by their working and power; and we ought not to say that they are the same when they are no longer the same, but only that they have the same name. The proof that the state is a creation of nature and prior to the individual is that the individual, when isolated, is not self-sufficing; and therefore he is like a part in relation to the whole. But he who is unable to live in society, or who has no need because he is sufficient for himself, must

\(^a\) II. ix. 63. \(^b\) Cp. c. 8. § 12. \(^c\) Cp. vii. 13. § 12.
be either a beast or a god: he is no part of a state. A social instinct is implanted in all men by nature, and yet he who first founded the state was the greatest of benefactors. For man, when perfected, is the best of animals, but, when separated from law and justice, he is the worst of all; since armed injustice is the more dangerous, and he is equipped at birth with the arms of intelligence and with moral qualities which he may use for the worst ends. Wherefore, if he have not virtue, he is the most unholy and the most savage of animals, and the most full of lust and gluttony. But justice is the bond of men in states, and the administration of justice, which is the determination of what is just, is the principle of order in political society.

Seeing then that the state is made up of households, before speaking of the state, we must speak of the management of the household. The parts of the household are the persons who compose it, and a complete household consists of slaves and freemen. Now we should begin by examining everything in its least elements; and the first and least parts of a family are master and slave, husband and wife, father and children. We have therefore to consider what each of these three relations is and ought to be:—I mean the relation of master and servant, of husband and wife, and thirdly of parent and child. [I say γαμίκη and τεκνοτούτικη, there being no words for the two latter notions which adequately represent them.] And there is another element of a household, the so-called art of money-making, which, according to some, is identical with household management, according to others, a principal part of it; the nature of this art will also have to be considered by us.

Let us first speak of master and slave, looking to the needs of practical life and also seeking to attain some better theory of their relation than exists at present. For some are of opinion that the rule of a master is a science,

---

*a* Cp. N. Eth. v. 6. § 4.

*b* Reading with the MSS. ὀλενομοιας.
and that the management of a household, and the master-ship of slaves, and the political and royal rule, as I was saying at the outset, are all the same. Others affirm that the rule of a master over slaves is contrary to nature, and that the distinction between slave and free-man exists by law only, and not by nature; and being an interference with nature is therefore unjust.

Property is a part of the household, and therefore the art of acquiring property is a part of the art of managing the household; for no man can live well, or indeed live at all, unless he be provided with necessaries. And as in the arts which have a definite sphere the workers must have their own proper instruments for the accomplishment of their work, so it is in the management of a household. Now, instruments are of various sorts; some are living, others lifeless; in the rudder, the pilot of a ship has a lifeless, in the look-out man, a living instrument; for in the arts the servant is a kind of instrument. Thus, too, a possession is an instrument for maintaining life. And so, in the arrangement of the family, a slave is a living possession, and property a number of such instruments; and the servant is himself an instrument, which takes precedence of all other instruments. For if every instrument could accomplish its own work, obeying or anticipating the will of others, like the statues of Daedalus, or the tripods of Hephaestus, which, says the poet,  

'of their own accord entered the assembly of the Gods';

if, in like manner, the shuttle would weave and the plectrum touch the lyre without a hand to guide them, chief workmen would not want servants, nor masters slaves. Here, however, another distinction must be drawn: the instruments commonly so called are instruments of production, whilst a possession is an instrument of action. The shuttle, for example, is not only of use; but something

---

a Plato in Pol. 258 e foll., referred to already in c. 1. § 2.
b Hom. II. xviii. 376.
else is made by it, whereas of a garment or of a bed there is only the use. Further, as production and action are different in kind, and both require instruments, the instruments which they employ must likewise differ in kind. But life is action and not production, and therefore the slave is the minister of action [for he ministers to his master's life]. Again, a possession is spoken of as a part is spoken of; for the part is not only a part of something else, but wholly belongs to it; and this is also true of a possession. The master is only the master of the slave; he does not belong to him, whereas the slave is not only the slave of his master, but wholly belongs to him. Hence we see what is the nature and office of a slave; he who is by nature not his own but another's and yet a man, is by nature a slave; and he may be said to belong to another who, being a human being, is also a possession. And a possession may be defined as an instrument of action, separable from the possessor.

But is there any one thus intended by nature to be a slave, and for whom such a condition is expedient and right, or rather is not all slavery a violation of nature?

There is no difficulty in answering this question, on grounds both of reason and of fact. For that some should rule, and others be ruled is a thing, not only necessary but expedient; from the hour of their birth, some are marked out for subjection, others for rule.

And whereas there are many kinds both of rulers and subjects, that rule is the better which is exercised over better subjects—for example, to rule over men is better than to rule over wild beasts. The work is better which is executed by better workmen; and where one man rules and another is ruled, they may be said to have a work. In all things which form a composite whole and which are made up of parts, whether continuous or discrete, a distinction between the ruling and the subject element comes to light. Such a duality exists in living creatures, but not in them only; it originates in the constitution of
I. 5. the universe; even in things which have no life, there is a ruling principle, as "in musical harmony*. But we are wandering from the subject. We will, therefore, restrict ourselves to the living creature which, in the first place, consists of soul and body: and of these two, the one is by nature the ruler, and the other the subject. But then we must look for the intentions of nature in things which retain their nature, and not in things which are corrupted. And therefore we must study the man who is in the most perfect state both of body and soul, for in him we shall see the true relation of the two; although in bad or corrupted natures the body will often appear to rule over the soul, because they are in an evil and unnatural condition. First then we may observe in living creatures both a despotic and a constitutional rule; for the soul rules the body with a despotic rule, whereas the intellect rules the appetites with a constitutional and royal rule. And it is clear that the rule of the soul over the body, and of the mind and the rational element over the passionate is natural and expedient; whereas the equality of the two or the rule of the inferior is always hurtful. The same holds good of animals as well as of men; for tame animals have a better nature than wild, and all tame animals are better off when they are ruled by man; for then they are preserved. Again, the male is by nature superior, and the female inferior; and the one rules, and the other is ruled; this principle, of necessity, extends to all mankind. Where then there is such a difference as that between soul and body, or between men and animals (as in the case of those whose business is to use their body, and who can do nothing better), the lower sort are by nature slaves, and it is better for them as for all inferiors that they should be under the rule of a master. For he who can be, and therefore is another's, and he who participates in reason enough to apprehend, but not to have, reason, is a slave by nature. Whereas the lower animals cannot even apprehend

* Or, 'of harmony [in music].'
reason; they obey their instincts. And indeed the use
made of slaves and of tame animals is not very different;
for both with their bodies minister to the needs of life.
Nature would like to distinguish between the bodies of
freemen and slaves, making the one strong for servile
labour, the other upright, and although useless for such
services, useful for political life in the arts both of war
and peace. But this does not hold universally: for
some slaves have the souls and others have the bodies of
freemen. And doubtless if men differed from one
another in the mere forms of their bodies as much as the
statues of the Gods do from men, all would acknowledge
that the inferior class should be slaves of the superior.
And if there is a difference in the body, how much more
in the soul? But the beauty of the body is seen, whereas
the beauty of the soul is not seen. It is clear, then, that
some men are by nature free, and others slaves, and that
for these latter slavery is both expedient and right.
But that those who take the opposite view have in a
certain way right on their side, may be easily seen.
For the words slavery and slave are used in two senses.
There is a slave or slavery by law as well as by nature.
The law of which I speak is a sort of convention, ac-
cording to which whatever is taken in war is supposed to
belong to the victors. But this right many jurists im-
peach, as they would an orator who brought forward an
unconstitutional measure: they detest the notion that,
because one man has the power of doing violence and
is superior in brute strength, another shall be his slave
and subject. Even among philosophers there is a dif-
ference of opinion. The origin of the dispute, and the
reason why the arguments cross, is as follows: Virtue,
when furnished with means, may be deemed to have the
greatest power of doing violence: and as superior power
is only found where there is superior excellence of some
kind, power is thought to imply virtue. But does
it likewise imply justice?—that is the question. And,
in order to make a distinction between them, some
assert that justice is benevolence: to which others reply
that justice is nothing more than the rule of a superior.
If the two views are regarded as antagonistic and ex-
clusive [i.e. if the notion that justice is benevolence
excludes the idea of a just rule of a superior], the alter-
native [viz. that no one should rule over others*] has no
force or plausibility, because it implies that not even the
superior in virtue ought to rule, or be master. Some, 5
clinging, as they think, to a principle of justice (for law
and custom are a sort of justice), assume that slavery in
war is justified by law, but they are not consistent. For
what if the cause of the war be unjust? No one would
ever say that he is a slave who is unworthy to be a
slave. Were this the case, men of the highest rank
would be slaves and the children of slaves if they or
their parents chance to have been taken captive and
sold. Wherefore Hellenes do not like to call themselves 6
slaves, but confine the term to barbarians. Yet, in
using this language, they really mean the natural slave
of whom we spoke at first; for it must be admitted
that some are slaves everywhere, others nowhere. The
same principle applies to nobility. Hellenes regard them-
selves as noble everywhere, and not only in their own
country, but they deem the barbarians noble only when
at home, thereby implying that there are two sorts of
nobility and freedom, the one absolute, the other relative.
The Helen of Theodectes says:—

* Who would presume to call me servant who am on both sides
sprung from the stem of the Gods?*

What does this mean but that they distinguish freedom 8
and slavery, noble and humble birth, by the two prin-
ciples of good and evil? They think that as men and 1255b.
animals beget men and animals, so from good men a
good man springs. But this is what nature, though she
may intend it, cannot always accomplish.

We see then that there is some foundation for this 9

* Cp. § 2.
difference of opinion, and that all are not either slaves by nature or freemen by nature, and also that there is in some cases a marked distinction between the two classes, rendering it expedient and right for the one to be slaves and the others to be masters: the one practising obedience, the others exercising the authority which nature intended them to have. The abuse of this authority is injurious to both; for the interests of part and whole*, of body and soul, are the same, and the slave is a part of the master, a living but separated part of his bodily frame. Where the relation between them is natural they are friends and have a common interest, but where it rests merely on law and force the reverse is true.

The previous remarks are quite enough to show that the rule of a master is not a constitutional rule, and therefore that all the different kinds of rule are not, as some affirm, the same with each other⁵. For there is one rule exercised over subjects who are by nature free, another over subjects who are by nature slaves. The rule of a household is a monarchy, for every house is under one head: whereas constitutional rule is a government of freemen and equals. The master is not called a master because he has science, but because he is of a certain character, and the same remark applies to the slave and the freeman. Still there may be a science for the master and a science for the slave. The science of the slave would be such as the man of Syracuse taught, who made money by instructing slaves in their ordinary duties. And such a knowledge may be carried further, so as to include cookery and similar menial arts. For some duties are of the more necessary, others of the more honourable sort; as the proverb says, 'slave before slave, master before master.' But all such branches of knowledge are servile. There is likewise a science of

---

* Cp. c. 4. § 5.

b Plato Polit. 258 E foll., referred to already in c. 1. § 2.
the master, which teaches the use of slaves; for the master as such is concerned, not with the acquisition, but with the use of them. Yet this so-called science is not anything great or wonderful; for the master need only know how to order that which the slave must know how to execute. Hence those who are in a position which places them above toil, have stewards who attend to their households while they occupy themselves with philosophy or with politics. But the art of acquiring slaves, I mean of justly acquiring them, differs both from the art of the master and the art of the slave, being a species of hunting or war. Enough of the distinction between master and slave.

Let us now inquire into property generally, and into the art of money-making, in accordance with our usual method [of resolving a whole into its parts], for a slave has been shown to be a part of property. The first question is whether the art of money-making is the same with the art of managing a household or a part of it, or instrumental to it; and if the last, whether in the way that the art of making shuttles is instrumental to the art of weaving, or in the way that the casting of bronze is instrumental to the art of the statuary, for they are not instrumental in the same way, but the one provides tools and the other material; and by material I mean the substratum out of which any work is made; thus wool is the material of the weaver, bronze of the statuary. Now it is easy to see that the art of household management is not identical with the art of money-making, for the one uses the material which the other provides. And the art which uses household stores can be no other than the art of household management. There is, however, a doubt whether the art of money-making is a part of household management or a distinct art. [They appear to be connected]; for the money-maker has to consider whence money and property can be procured;

*b Cp. c. 1. § 3.
but there are many sorts of property and wealth:—there is husbandry and the care and provision of food in general; are these parts of the money-making art or distinct arts? Again, there are many sorts of food, and therefore there are many kinds of lives both of animals and men; they must all have food, and the differences in their food have made differences in their ways of life. For of beasts, some are gregarious, others are solitary; they live in the way which is best adapted to sustain them, accordingly as they are carnivorous or herbivorous or omnivorous: and their habits are determined for them by nature in such a manner that they may obtain with greater facility the food of their choice. But, as different individuals have different tastes, the same things are not naturally pleasant to all of them; and therefore the lives of carnivorous or herbivorous animals further differ among themselves. In the lives of men too there is a great difference. The laziest are shepherds, who lead an idle life, and get their subsistence without trouble from tame animals; their flocks having to wander from place to place in search of pasture, they are compelled to follow them, cultivating a sort of living farm. Others support themselves by hunting, which is of different kinds. Some, for example, are pirates, others, who dwell near lakes or marshes or rivers or a sea in which there are fish, are fishermen, and others live by the pursuit of birds or wild beasts. The greater number obtain a living from the fruits of the soil. Such are the modes of subsistence which prevail among those *whose industry is employed immediately upon the products of nature*, and whose food is not acquired by exchange and retail trade—there is the shepherd, the husbandman, the pirate, the fisherman, the hunter. Some gain a comfortable maintenance out of two employments, eking out the deficiencies of one of them by another: thus the life of a shepherd may be

* Or, 'whose labour is personal.'
combined with that of a brigand, the life of a farmer
with that of a hunter. Other modes of life are similarly 9
combined in any way which the needs of men may re-
quire. Property, in the sense of a bare livelihood, seems
to be given by nature herself to all, both when they are
first born, and when they are grown up. For some 10
animals bring forth, together with their offspring, so
much food as will last until they are able to supply
themselves; of this the verminiparous or oviparous animals
are an instance; and the viviparous animals have up to
a certain time a supply of food for their young in them-
selves, which is called milk. In like manner we may 11
infer that, after the birth of animals, plants exist for
their sake, and that the other animals exist for the sake
of man, the tame for use and food, the wild, if not all, 12
at least the greater part of them, for food, and for the
provision of clothing and various instruments. Now if 13
nature makes nothing incomplete, and nothing in vain,
the inference must be that she has made all animals and
plants for the sake of man. And so, in one point of
view, the art of war is a natural art of acquisition, for
it includes hunting, an art which we ought to practise
against wild beasts, and against men who, though inten-
tended by nature to be governed, will not submit; for
war of such a kind is naturally just 14.

Of the art of acquisition then there is one kind 15 which
is natural and is a part of the management of a house-
hold 16. Either we must suppose the necessaries of life
to exist previously, or the art of household management
must provide a store of them for the common use of the
family or state. They are the elements of true wealth; 17
for the amount of property which is needed for a good
life is not unlimited, although Solon in one of his poems
says that

‘No bound to riches has been fixed for man 18.’

---

b Or, with Bernays, ‘which by nature is a part of the management of a household.’
But there is a boundary fixed, just as there is in the arts; for the instruments of any art are never unlimited, either in number or size, and wealth may be defined as a number of instruments to be used in a household or in a state. And so we see that there is a natural art of acquisition which is practised by managers of households and by statesmen, and what is the reason of this.

There is another variety of the art of acquisition which is commonly and rightly called the art of making money, and has in fact suggested the notion that wealth and property have no limit. Being nearly connected with the preceding, it is often identified with it. But though they are not very different, neither are they the same. The kind already described is given by nature, the other is gained by experience and art.

Let us begin our discussion of the question with the following considerations:—

Of everything which we possess there are two uses: both belong to the thing as such, but not in the same manner, for one is the proper, and the other the improper or secondary use of it. For example, a shoe is used for wear, and is used for exchange; both are uses of the shoe. He who gives a shoe in exchange for money or food to him who wants one, does indeed use the shoe as a shoe, but this is not its proper or primary purpose, for a shoe is not made to be an object of barter. The same may be said of all possessions, for the art of exchange extends to all of them, and it arises at first in a natural manner from the circumstance that some have too little, others too much. Hence we may infer that retail trade is not a natural part of the art of money-making; had it been so, men would have ceased to exchange when they had enough. And in the first community, which is the family, this art is obviously of no use, but only begins to be useful when the society increases. For the members of the family originally had all things in common; in a more divided state of society
I. 9. they *still shared in many things, but they were different things* which they had to give in exchange for what they wanted, a kind of barter which is still practised among barbarous nations who exchange with one another 6 the necessaries of life and nothing more; giving and receiving wine, for example, in exchange for corn and the like. This sort of barter is not part of the money-making art and is not contrary to nature, but is needed for the satisfaction of men’s natural wants. The other 7 or more complex form of exchange grew out of the simpler. When the inhabitants of one country became more dependent on those of another, and they imported what they needed, and exported the surplus, money necessarily came into use. For the various necessaries 8 of life are not easily carried about, and hence men agreed to employ in their dealings with each other something which was intrinsically useful and easily applicable to the purposes of life, for example, iron, silver, and the like. Of this the value was at first measured by size and weight, but in process of time they put a stamp upon it, to save the trouble of weighing and to mark the value.

When the use of coin had once been discovered, out of 9 the barter of necessary articles arose the other art of money-making, namely, retail trade; which was at first probably a simple matter, but became more complicated as soon as men learned by experience whence and by what exchanges the greatest profit might be made. Originating in the use of coin, the art of money-making 10 is generally thought to be chiefly concerned with it, and to be the art which produces wealth and money; having to consider how they may be accumulated. Indeed, wealth is assumed by many to be only a quantity of coin, because the art of money-making and retail trade are concerned with coin. Others maintain that 11 coined money is a mere sham, a thing not natural,

* Or, more simply, ‘shared in many more things.’
but conventional only, which would have no value or use for any of the purposes of daily life if another commodity were substituted by the users. And, indeed, he who is rich in coin may often be in want of necessary food. But how can that be wealth of which a man may have a great abundance and yet perish with hunger, like Midas in the fable, whose insatiable prayer turned everything that was set before him into gold?

Men seek after a better notion of wealth and of the art of making money than the mere acquisition of coin, and they are right. For natural wealth and the natural art of money-making are a different thing; in their true form they are part of the management of a household; whereas retail trade is the art of producing wealth, not in every way, but by exchange. And it seems to be concerned with coin; for coin is the beginning of exchange and the measure or limit of it. And there is no bound to the wealth which springs from this art of money-making*. As in the art of medicine there is no limit to the pursuit of health, and as in the other arts there is no limit to the pursuit of their several ends, for they aim at accomplishing their ends to the uttermost; (but of the means there is a limit, for the end is always the limit), so, too, in this art of money-making there is no limit of the end, which is wealth of the spurious kind.

and the acquisition of money. But the art of household management has a limit; the unlimited acquisition of money is not its business. And, therefore, in one point of view, all wealth must have a limit; nevertheless, as a matter of fact, we find the opposite to be the case; for all money-makers increase their hoard of coin without limit. The source of the confusion is the near connexion between the two kinds of money-making; in either, the instrument [i.e. wealth] is the same, although the use is different, and so they pass into one another; for each is a use of the same propertyb, but with a difference: accumulation is the end in the one case, but there is a further end in the

* Cp. c. 8. § 14.

Reading κτίσεως χρήσις.

C

VOL. I.
other. Hence some persons are led to believe that making money is the object of household management, and the whole idea of their lives is that they ought either to increase their money without limit, or at any rate not to lose it. The origin of this disposition in men is that they are intent upon living only, and not upon living well; and, as their desires are unlimited, they also desire that the means of gratifying them should be without limit. Even those who aim at a good life seek the means of obtaining bodily pleasures; and, since the enjoyment of these appears to depend on property, they are absorbed in making money: and so there arises the second species of money-making. For, as their enjoyment is in excess, they seek an art which produces the excess of enjoyment; and, if they are not able to supply their pleasures by the art of money-making, they try other arts, using in turn every faculty in a manner contrary to nature. The quality of courage, for example, is not intended to make money, but to inspire confidence; neither is this the aim of the general’s or of the physician’s art; but the one aims at victory and the other at health. Nevertheless, some men turn every quality or art into a means of making money; this they conceive to be the end, and to the promotion of the end all things must contribute.

Thus, then, we have considered the art of money-making, which is unnecessary, and why men want it; and also the necessary art of money-making, which we have seen to be different from the other, and to be a natural part of the art of managing a household, concerned with the provision of food, not, however, like the former kind, unlimited, but having a limit.

And we have found the answer to our original question: Whether the art of money-making is the business of the manager of a household and of the statesman or not their business?—viz. that it is an art which is presupposed by them. For political science does not make  

* Cp. c. 8. § 1.
MONEY-MAKING: THE TRUE KIND.

men, but takes them from nature and uses them; and nature provides them with food from the element of earth, air, or sea. At this stage begins the duty of the manager of a household, who has to order the things which nature supplies;—he may be compared to the weaver who has not to make but to use wool, and to know what sort of wool is good and serviceable or bad and unserviceable. Were this otherwise, it would be difficult to see why the art of money-making is a part of the management of a household and the art of medicine not; for surely the members of a household must have health just as they must have life or any other necessary. And as from one point of view the master of the house and the ruler of the state have to consider about health, from another point of view not they but the physician; so in one way the art of household management, in another way the subordinate art, has to consider about money. But, strictly speaking, as I have already said, the means of life must be provided beforehand by nature; for the business of nature is to furnish food to that which is born, and the food of the offspring always remains over in the parent. Wherefore the art of making money out of fruits and animals is always natural.

Of the two sorts of money-making one, as I have just said, is a part of household management, the other is retail trade: the former necessary and honourable, the latter a kind of exchange which is justly censured; for it is unnatural, and a mode by which men gain from one another. The most hated sort, and with the greatest reason, is usury, which makes a gain out of money itself, and not from the natural use of it. For money was intended to be used in exchange, but not to increase at interest. And this term usury [rόκος], which means the birth of money from money, is applied to the breeding of money because the offspring resembles the parent. Wherefore of all modes of making money this is the most unnatural.

a Cp. c. 8. § 10.

C 2
Enough has been said about the theory of money-making; we will now proceed to the practical part. The discussion of such matters is not unworthy of philosophy, but to be engaged in them practically is illiberal and irksome. The useful parts of money-making are, first, the knowledge of live-stock,—which are most profitable, and where, and how,—as, for example, what sort of horses or sheep or oxen or any other animals are most likely to give a return. A man ought to know which of these pay better than others, and which pay best in particular places, for some do better in one place and some in another. Secondly, husbandry, which may be either tillage or planting, and the keeping of bees and of fish, or fowl, or of any animals which may be useful to man. These are the divisions of the true or proper art of money-making and come first. Of the other, which consists in exchange, the first and most important division is commerce (of which there are three kinds—commerce by sea, commerce by land, selling in shops—these again differing as they are safer or more profitable), the second is usury, the third, service for hire—of this, one kind is employed in the mechanical arts, the other in unskilled and bodily labour. There is still a third sort of money-making intermediate between this and the first or natural mode which is partly natural, but is also concerned with exchange of the fruits and other products of the earth. Some of these latter, although they bear no fruit, are nevertheless profitable; for example, wood and minerals. The art of mining, by which minerals are obtained, has many branches, for there are various kinds of things dug out of the earth. Of the several divisions of money-making I now speak generally; a minute consideration of them might be useful in practice, but it would be tiresome to dwell upon them at greater length now.

Those occupations are most truly arts in which there

* Or, 'We are free to speculate about them, but in practice we are limited by circumstances.' (Bernays.)
is the least element of chance; they are the meanest in which the body is most deteriorated, the most servile in which there is the greatest use of the body, and the most illiberal in which there is the least need of excellence.

7 Works have been written upon these subjects by various persons; for example, by Chares the Parian, and Apollodorus the Lemnian, who have treated of Tillage and Planting, while others have treated of other branches; any one who cares for such matters may refer to their writings. It would be well also to collect the scattered stories of the ways in which individuals have succeeded in amassing a fortune; for all this is useful to persons who value the art of making money. There is the anecdote of Thales the Milesian and his financial device, which involves a principle of universal application, but is attributed to him on account of his reputation for wisdom.

9 He was reproached for his poverty, which was supposed to show that philosophy was of no use. According to the story, he knew by his skill in the stars while it was yet winter that there would be a great harvest of olives in the coming year; so, having a little money, he gave deposits for the use of all the olive-presses in Chios and Miletus, which he hired at a low price because no one bid against him. When the harvest-time came, and many wanted them all at once and of a sudden, he let them out at any rate which he pleased, and made a quantity of money. Thus he showed the world that philosophers can easily be rich if they like, but that their ambition is of another sort. He is supposed to have given a striking proof of his wisdom, but, as I was saying, his device for getting money is of universal application, and is nothing but the creation of a monopoly. It is an art often practised by cities when they are in want of money; they make a monopoly of provisions.

11 There was a man of Sicily, who, having money deposited with him, bought up all the iron from the iron mines; afterwards, when the merchants from their various
markets came to buy, he was the only seller, and without much increasing the price he gained 200 per cent. Which when Dionysius heard, he told him that he might take away his money, but that he must not remain at Syracuse, for he thought that the man had discovered a way of making money which was injurious to his own interests. He had the same idea as Thales; they both contrived to create a monopoly for themselves. And statesmen ought to know these things; for a state is often as much in want of money and of such devices for obtaining it as a household, or even more so; hence some public men devote themselves entirely to finance.

Of household management we have seen that there are three parts—one is the rule of a master over slaves, which has been discussed already; another of a father, and the third of a husband. A husband and father rules over wife and children, both free, but the rule differs, the rule over his children being a royal, over his wife a constitutional rule. For although there may be exceptions to the order of nature, the male is by nature fitter for command than the female, just as the elder and full-grown is superior to the younger and more immature. But in most constitutional states the citizens rule and are ruled by turns, for the idea of a constitutional state implies that the natures of the citizens are equal, and do not differ at all. Nevertheless, when one rules and the other is ruled we endeavour to create a difference of outward forms and names and titles of respect, which may be illustrated by the saying of Amasis about his foot-pan. The relation of the male to the female is of this kind, but there the inequality is permanent. The rule of a father over his children is royal, for he receives both love and the respect due to age, exercising a kind of royal power. And therefore Homer has appropriately called Zeus 'father of Gods and men,' because he is the king of them all. For a king

---

a Reading εύρημα with Bernays. b Cp. c. 3. § 1. c Cp. c. 3–7. d Cp. ii. 2. § 6; iii. 17. § 4. e Herod. ii. 172, and note on this passage.
is the natural superior of his subjects, but he should be of the same kin or kind with them, and such is the relation of elder and younger, of father and son.

Thus it is clear that household management attends more to men than to the acquisition of inanimate things, and to human excellence more than to the excellence of property which we call wealth, and to the virtue of freemen more than to the virtue of slaves. A question may indeed be raised, whether there is any excellence at all in a slave beyond merely instrumental and ministerial qualities—whether he can have the virtues of temperance, courage, justice, and the like; or whether slaves possess only bodily and ministerial qualities. And, whichever way we answer the question, a difficulty arises; for, if they have virtue, in what will they differ from freemen? On the other hand, since they are men and share in reason, it seems absurd to say that they have no virtue. A similar question may be raised about women and children, whether they too have virtues: ought a woman to be temperate and brave and just, and is a child to be called temperate, and intemperate, or not?

So in general we may ask about the natural ruler, and the natural subject, whether they have the same or different virtues. For a noble nature is equally required in both, but if so, why should one of them always rule, and the other always be ruled? Nor can we say that this is a question of degree, for the difference between ruler and subject is a difference of kind, and therefore not of degree; yet how strange is the supposition that the one ought, and that the other ought not, to have virtue! For if the ruler is intemperate and unjust, how can he rule well? if the subject, how can he obey well? If he be licentious and cowardly, he will certainly not do his duty. It is evident, therefore, that both of them must have a share of virtue, but varying according to their various natures. And this is at once indicated by the soul, in which one part naturally rules, and the other is subject, and the virtue of the ruler we maintain...
to be different from that of the subject; —the one being
the virtue of the rational, and the other of the irrational
part. Now, it is obvious that the same principle applies
generally, and therefore almost all things rule and are
ruled according to nature. But the kind of rule differs; 7
—the freeman rules over the slave after another manner
from that in which the male rules over the female, or
the man over the child; although the parts of the soul
are present in all of them, they are present in different
degrees. For the slave has no deliberative faculty at all;
the woman has, but it is *without authority*, and the
child has, but it is immature. So it must necessarily be 8
with the moral virtues also; all may be supposed to
partake of them, but only in such manner and degree
as is required by each for the fulfilment of his duty.
Hence the ruler ought to have moral virtue in perfection,
for his duty is entirely that of a master artificer, and the
master artificer is reason; the subjects, on the other
hand, require only that measure of virtue which is proper
to each of them. Clearly, then, moral virtue belongs to 9
all of them; but the temperance of a man and of a
woman, or the courage and justice of a man and of a
woman, are not, as Socrates maintainedb, the same; the
courage of a man is shown in commanding, of a woman
in obeying. And this holds of all other virtues, as 10
will be more clearly seen if we look at them in detail,
for those who say generally that virtue consists in a
good disposition of the soul, or in doing rightly, or the
like, only deceive themselves. Far better than such
definitions is their mode of speaking, who, like Gorgiasb,
enumerate the virtues. All classes must be deemed to 11
have their special attributes; as the poet says of women,

‘Silence is a woman’s glory c,’

but this is not equally the glory of man. The child is im-
perfect, and therefore obviously his virtue is not relative

a Or, with Bernays, ‘inconclusive.’ b Plato Meno, 71–73.
   * Soph. Aj. 293.
to himself alone, but to the perfect man and to his teacher, and in like manner the virtue of the slave is relative to a master. Now we determined that a slave is useful for the wants of life, and therefore he will obviously require only so much virtue as will prevent him from failing in his duty through cowardice and intemperance. Some one will ask whether, if what we are saying is true, virtue will not be required also in the artisans, for they often fail in their work through mis-conduct? But is there not a great difference in the two cases? For the slave shares in his master’s life; the artisan is less closely connected with him, and only attains excellence in proportion as he becomes a slave, [i.e. is under the direction of a master]. The meaner sort of mechanic has a special and separate slavery; and whereas the slave exists by nature, not so the shoemaker or other artisan: It is manifest, then, that the master ought to be the source of excellence in the slave; but not merely because he possesses the art which trains him in his duties. Wherefore they are mistaken who forbid us to converse with slaves and say that we should employ command only, for slaves stand even more in need of admonition than children.

The relations of husband and wife, parent and child, their several virtues, what in their intercourse with one another is good, and what is evil, and how we may pursue the good and escape the evil, will have to be discussed when we speak of the different forms of government. For, inasmuch as every family is a part of a state, and these relationships are the parts of a family, the virtue of the part must have regard to the virtue of the whole. And therefore women and children must be trained by education with an eye to the state, if the virtues of either of them are supposed to make any difference in the virtues of the state. And they must make a difference: for the children grow up to be

---

*a* 'His father who guides him' (Bernays).  
*b* Cp. c. 7. § 4.  
*c* Plato Laws, vi. 777.  
*d* Cp. v. 9. § 11-15; viii. i. § 1.
I. 14. citizens, and half the free persons in a state are women.

Of these matters, enough has been said; of what remains, let us speak at another time. Regarding, then, our present enquiry as complete, we will make a new beginning. And, first, let us examine the various theories of a perfect state.

* Plato Laws, vi. 781 B.
BOOK II.

Our purpose is to consider what form of political community is best of all for those who are most able to realise their ideal of life. We must therefore examine not only this but other constitutions, both such as actually exist in well-governed states, and any theoretical forms which are held in esteem; that what is good and useful may be brought to light. And let no one suppose that in seeking for something beyond them we at all want to philosophise at the expense of truth; we only undertake this enquiry because all the constitutions with which we are acquainted are faulty.

We will begin with the natural beginning of the subject. Three alternatives are conceivable: The members of a state must either have (1) all things or (2) nothing in common, or (3) some things in common and some not. That they should have nothing in common is clearly impossible, for the state is a community, and must at any rate have a common place—one city will be in one place, and the citizens are those who share in that one city. But should a well-ordered state have all things, as far as may be, in common, or some only and not others? For the citizens might conceivably have wives and children and property in common, as Socrates proposes in the Republic of Plato. Which is better, our present condition, or the proposed new order of society?

There are many difficulties in the community of women. And the principle on which Socrates rests the necessity of such an institution does not appear to be established by his arguments. The end which he ascribes

* Or, as Bernays, taking πάντες with σοφίζεσθαι βουλομένων, 'we are anxious to make a sophistical display at any cost.'

b Rep. v. 457 C.
to the state, taken literally, is impossible, and how we are to interpret it is nowhere precisely stated. I am speaking of the premiss from which the argument of Socrates proceeds, 'that the greater the unity of the state the better.' Is it not obvious that a state may at length attain such a degree of unity as to be no longer a state—since the nature of a state is to be a plurality, and in tending to greater unity, from being a state, it becomes a family, and from being a family, an individual; for the family may be said to be more one than the state, and the individual than the family. So that we ought not to attain this greatest unity even if we could, for it would be the destruction of the state. Again, a state is not made up only of so many men, but of different kinds of men; for similars do not constitute a state. It is not like a military alliance, of which the usefulness depends upon its quantity even where there is no difference in quality. For in that mutual protection is the end aimed at; and the question is the same as about the scales of a balance: which is the heavier?

In like manner, a state differs from a nation; for in a nation the people are not *distributed into villages, but live scattered about, like the Arcadians*; whereas in a state the elements out of which the unity is to be formed differ in kind. Wherefore the principle of compensation, as I have already remarked in the Ethics, is the salvation of states. And among freemen and equals this is a principle which must be maintained, for they cannot all rule together, but must change at the end of a year or some other period of time or in some order of succession. The result is that upon this plan they all govern; [but the manner of government is] just as if shoemakers and carpenters were to exchange their occupations, and the same persons did not always continue shoemakers and carpenters. And it is clearly better

---

*a Or, 'dispersed in villages, but are in the condition of the Arcadians.'
*b Or, 'reciprocal proportion.'
*c N. Eth. v. 8, § 6.
that, as in business, so also in politics there should be
continuance of the same persons where this is possible.

But where this is not possible by reason of the natural
equality of the citizens, and it would be unjust that any
one should be excluded from the government (whether
to govern be a good thing or a bad*), then it is better,
instead of all holding power, to adopt a principle of rota-
tion, equals giving place to equals, as the original rulers
gave place to them\(^{b}\). Thus the one party rule and the
others are ruled in turn, as if they were no longer the
same persons. In like manner there is a variety in the
offices held by them. Hence it is evident that a city
is not by nature one in that sense which some persons
affirm; and that what is said to be the greatest good
of cities is in reality their destruction; but surely the
good of things must be that which preserves them\(^{c}\).

Again, in another point of view, this extreme unification
of the state is clearly not good; for a family is more
self-sufficing than an individual, and a city than a family,
and a city only comes into being when the community is
large enough to be self-sufficing. If then self-sufficiency
is to be desired, the lesser degree of unity is more de-
sirable than the greater.

But, even supposing that it were best for the com-
munity to have the greatest degree of unity, this unity
is by no means proved to follow from the fact ‘of all
men saying ‘mine’ and ‘not mine’ at the same instant
of time,’ which, according to Socrates\(^{d}\), is the sign of
perfect unity in a state. For the word ‘all’ is ambiguous.

If the meaning be that every individual says ‘mine’ and
‘not mine’ at the same time, then perhaps the result at
which Socrates aims may be in some degree accom-
plished; each man will call the same person his own son
and his own wife, and so of his property and of all that
belongs to him. This, however, is not the way in which
people would speak who had their wives and children in

\(^{a}\) Cp. Pl. Rep. i. 345–6. \(^{b}\) Cp. i. 12. § 2; iii. 17. § 4.
\(^{c}\) Cp. Pl. Rep. i. 352. \(^{d}\) Pl. Rep. v. 462 C.
common; they would say 'all' but not 'each.' In like manner their property would be described as belonging to them, not severally but collectively. There is an obvious fallacy in the term 'all': like some other words, 'both,' 'odd,' 'even,' it is ambiguous, and in argument becomes a source of logical puzzles. That all persons call the same thing mine in the sense in which each does so may be a fine thing, but it is impracticable; or if the words are taken in the other sense [i.e. the sense which distinguishes 'all' from 'each'], such an unity in no way conduces to harmony. And there is another objection to the proposal. For that which is common to the greatest number has the least care bestowed upon it. Every one thinks chiefly of his own, hardly at all of the common interest; and only when he is himself concerned as an individual. For besides other considerations, everybody is more inclined to neglect the duty which he expects another to fulfil; as in families many attendants are often less useful than a few. Each citizen will have a thousand sons who will not be his sons individually, but anybody will be equally the son of anybody, and will therefore be neglected by all alike. Further, upon this principle, every one will call another 'mine' or 'not mine' according as he is prosperous or the reverse;—however small a fraction he may be of the whole number, he will say of every individual of the thousand, or whatever be the number of the city, 'such an one is mine,' 'such an one his'; and even about this he will not be positive; for it is impossible to know who chanced to have a child, or whether, if one came into existence, it has survived. But which is better—to be able to say 'mine' about every one of the two thousand or the ten thousand citizens, or to use the word 'mine' in the ordinary and more restricted sense? For usually the same person is called by one man his son whom another calls his brother or cousin or kinsman or blood-relation or connexion by marriage either of himself or of some relation of his, and these relationships he distinguishes from the tie which binds
him to his tribe or ward; and how much better is it to be the real cousin of somebody than to be a son after Plato's fashion! Nor is there any way of preventing brothers and children and fathers and mothers from sometimes recognizing one another; for children are born like their parents, and they will necessarily be finding indications of their relationship to one another. Geographers declare such to be the fact; they say that in Upper Libya, where the women are common, nevertheless the children who are born are assigned to their respective fathers on the ground of their likeness. And some women, like the females of other animals—for example mares and cows—have a strong tendency to produce offspring resembling their parents, as was the case with the Pharsalian mare called Dicaea (the Just).

Other evils, against which it is not easy for the authors of such a community to guard, will be assaults and homicides, voluntary as well as involuntary, quarrels and slanders, all which are most unholy acts when committed against fathers and mothers and near relations, but not equally unholy when there is no relationship. Moreover, they are much more likely to occur if the relationship is unknown, and, when they have occurred, the customary expiations of them cannot be made. Again, how strange it is that Socrates, after having made the children common, should hinder lovers from carnal intercourse only, but should permit familiarities between father and son or between brother and brother, than which nothing can be more unseemly, since even without them, love of this sort is improper. How strange, too, to forbid intercourse for no other reason than the violence of the pleasure, as though the relationship of father and son or of brothers with one another made no difference.

This community of wives and children seems better suited to the husbandmen than to the guardians, for if they have wives and children in common, they will be bound to one another by weaker ties, as a subject class

---

should be, and they will remain obedient and not rebel. In a word, the result of such a law would be just the opposite of that which good laws ought to have, and the intention of Socrates in making these regulations about women and children would defeat itself. For friendship we believe to be the greatest good of states and the preservative of them against revolutions; neither is there anything which Socrates so greatly lauds as the unity of the state which he and all the world declare to be created by friendship. But the unity which he commends would be like that of the lovers in the Symposium, who, as Aristophanes says, desire to grow together in the excess of their affection, and from being two to become one, in which case one or both would certainly perish. Whereas [the very opposite will really happen;] in a state having women and children common, love will be watery; and the father will certainly not say 'my son,' or the son 'my father.' As a little sweet wine mingled with a great deal of water is imperceptible in the mixture, so, in this sort of community, the idea of relationship which is based upon these names will be lost; there is no reason why the so-called father should care about the son, or the son about the father, or brothers about one another. Of the two qualities which chiefly inspire regard and affection—that a thing is your own and that you love it—neither can exist in such a state as this.

Again, the transfer of children as soon as they are born from the rank of husbandmen or of artisans to that of guardians, and from the rank of guardians into a lower rank, will be very difficult to arrange; the givers or transferrers cannot but know whom they are giving and transferring, and to whom. And the previously mentioned evils, such as assaults, unlawful loves, homicides, will happen more often amongst those who are transferred to the lower classes, or who have a place assigned to them among the guardians; for they will no longer call

---

* Cp. vii. 10. § 13.  
* Cp. c. 2.  
* Symp. 189-193.  
* Cp. c. 3.  
* Rep. iii. 415.
the members of any other class brothers, and children, and fathers, and mothers, and will not, therefore, be afraid of committing any crimes by reason of consanguinity. Touching the community of wives and children, let this be our conclusion.

Next let us consider what should be our arrangements about property: should the citizens of the perfect state have their possessions in common or not? This question may be discussed separately from the enactments about women and children. Even supposing that the women and children belong to individuals, according to the custom which is at present universal, may there not be an advantage in having and using possessions in common? Three cases are possible: (1) the soil may be appropriated, but the produce may be thrown for consumption into the common stock; and this is the practice of some nations. Or (2), the soil may be common, and may be cultivated in common, but the produce divided among individuals for their private use; this is a form of common property which is said to exist among certain barbarians. Or (3), the soil and the produce may be alike common.

When the husbandmen are not the owners, the case will be different and easier to deal with; but when they till the ground themselves the question of ownership will give a world of trouble. If they do not share equally in enjoyments and toils, those who labour much and get little will necessarily complain of those who labour little and receive or consume much. There is always a difficulty in men living together and having things in common, but especially in their having common property. The partnerships of fellow-travellers are an example to the point; for they generally fall out by the way and quarrel about any trifle which turns up. So with servants: we are most liable to take offence at those with whom we most frequently come into contact in daily life.

These are only some of the disadvantages which attend the community of property; the present arrangement, if improved as it might be by good customs and
II. 5. laws, would be far better, and would have the advantages of both systems. Property should be in a certain sense common, but, as a general rule, private; for, when every one has a distinct interest, men will not complain of one another, and they will make more progress, because every one will be attending to his own business. And yet among the good, and in respect of use, 'Friends,' as the proverb says, 'will have all things common.' Even now there are traces of such a principle, showing that it is not impracticable, but, in well-ordered states, exists already to a certain extent and may be carried further. For, although every man has his own property, some things he will place at the disposal of his friends, while of others he shares the use with them. The Lacedaemonians, for example, use one another's slaves, and horses, and dogs, as if they were their own; and when they happen to be in the country, they appropriate in the fields whatever provisions they want. It is clearly better that property should be private, but the use of it common; and the special business of the legislator is to create in men this benevolent disposition. Again, how immeasurably greater is the pleasure, when a man feels a thing to be his own; for the love of self is a feeling in- implanted by nature and not given in vain, although selfishness is rightly censured; this, however, is not the mere love of self, but the love of self in excess, like the miser's love of money; for all, or almost all, men love money, and other such objects in a measure. And further, there is the greatest pleasure in doing a kindness or service to friends or guests or companions, which can only be rendered when a man has private property. The advantage is lost by the excessive unification of the state. Two virtues are annihilated in such a state: first, temperance towards women (for it is an honourable action to abstain from another's wife for temperance sake); secondly, liberality in the matter of property. No one, when men have all things in common, will any longer set an

b Cp. Rep. iv. 424 A.  
example of liberality or do any liberal action; for liberality consists in the use which is made of property a.

Such legislation may have a specious appearance of benevolence; men readily listen to it, and are easily induced to believe that in some wonderful manner everybody will become everybody's friend, especially when some one b is heard denouncing the evils now existing in states, suits about contracts, convictions for perjury, flatteries of rich men and the like, which are said to arise out of the possession of private property. These evils, however, are due to a very different cause—the wickedness of human nature. Indeed, we see that there is much more quarrelling among those who have all things in common, though there are not many of them when compared with the vast numbers who have private property.

Again, we ought to reckon, not only the evils from which the citizens will be saved, but also the advantages which they will lose. The life which they are to lead appears to be quite impracticable. The error of Socrates must be attributed to the false notion of unity from which he starts. Unity there should be, both of the family and of the state, but in some respects only. For there is a point at which a state may attain such a degree of unity as to be no longer a state, or at which, without actually ceasing to exist, it will become an inferior state, like harmony passing into unison, or rhythm which has been reduced to a single foot. The state, as I was saying, is a plurality c, which should be united and made into a community by education; and it is strange that the author of a system of education which he thinks will make the state virtuous, should expect to improve his citizens by regulations of this sort, and not by philosophy or by customs and laws, like those which prevail at Sparta and Crete respecting common meals, whereby the legislator has [to a certain degree] made property common. Let us remember that we should not dis-

---

a Cp. N. Eth. iv. 1. § 1.  
c Cp. c. 2. § 2.
II. 5. All experience against men.

regard the experience of ages; in the multitude of years these things, if they were good, would certainly not have been unknown; for almost everything has been found out, although sometimes they are not put together; in other cases men do not use the knowledge which they have. Great light would be thrown on this subject if we could see such a form of government in the actual process of construction; for the legislator could not form a state at all without distributing and dividing the citizens into associations for common meals, and into phratries and tribes. But all this legislation ends only in forbidding agriculture to the guardians, a prohibition which the Lacedaemonians try to enforce already.

Difficulties. Again, Socrates has not said, nor is it easy to decide, what in such a community will be the general form of the state. The citizens who are not guardians are the majority, and about them nothing has been determined: are the husbandmen, too, to have their property in common? Or, besides the common land which he tills, is each individual to have his own? and are their wives and children to be individual or common? If, like the guardians, they are to have all things in common, in what do they differ from them, or what will they gain by submitting to their government? Or, upon what principle would they submit, unless indeed the governing class adopt the ingenious policy of the Cretans, who give their slaves the same institutions as their own, but forbid them gymnastic exercises and the possession of arms. If, on the other hand, the inferior classes are to be like other cities in respect of marriage and property, what will be the form of the community? Must it not contain two states in one, each hostile to the other? One class will consist of the guardians, who are a sort of watchmen; another, of the husbandmen, and

a Cp. Rep. iv. 422 E.
b Or (with Bernays), ¹ He makes the guardians into a mere occupying garrison, while the husbandmen and artisans and the rest are the real citizens; ² see note.
there will be the artisans and the other citizens. But [if so] the suits and quarrels, and all the evils which Socrates affirms to exist in other states, will exist equally among them. He says indeed that, having so good an education, the citizens will not need many laws, for example laws about the city or about the markets; but then he confines his education to the guardians.

Again, he makes the husbandmen owners of the land upon condition of their paying a tribute. But in that case they are likely to be much more unmanageable and conceited than the Helots, or Penestae, or slaves in general. And whether community of wives and property be necessary for the lower equally with the higher class or not, and the questions akin to this, what will be the education, form of government, laws of the lower class, Socrates has nowhere determined: neither is it easy, though very important, to discover what should be the character of the inferior classes, if the common life of the guardians is to be maintained.

Again, if Socrates makes the women common, and retains private property, the men will see to the fields, but who will see to the house? And what will happen if the agricultural class have both their property and their wives in common? Once more; it is absurd to argue, from the analogy of the animals, that men and women should follow the same pursuits; for animals have not to manage a household. The government, too, as constituted by Socrates, contains elements of danger; for he makes the same persons always rule. And if this is often a cause of disturbance among the meaner sort, how much more among high-spirited warriors? But that the persons whom he makes rulers must be the same is evident; for the gold which the God minglest in the souls of men is not at one time given to one, at another time to another, but always to the same: as he

b Rep. iv. 425 D.  
c Rep. v. 464 C.  
d Cp. c. 9. § 2.  
* These words are bracketed by Bekker.  
 e Rep. v. 425 D.  
 f Cp. Rep. v. 451 D.
II. 5. says, 'God mingles gold in some, and silver in others, from their very birth; but brass and iron in those who are meant to be artisans and husbandmen.' Again, he 27 deprives the guardians of happiness, and says that the legislator ought to make the whole state happy. But the whole cannot be happy unless most, or all, or some of its parts enjoy happiness. In this respect happiness is not like the even principle in numbers, which may exist only in the whole, but in none of the parts; not so happiness. And if the guardians are not happy, who are? Surely not the artisans, or the common people. The Republic of which Socrates discourses has all these difficulties, and others quite as great.

The same, or nearly the same, objections apply to Plato's later work, the Laws, and therefore we had better examine briefly the constitution which is therein described. In the Republic, Socrates has definitely settled in all a few questions only; such as the community of women and children, the community of property, and the constitution of the state. The population is divided into two classes—one of husbandmen, and the other of warriors; from this latter is taken a third class of counsellors and rulers of the state. But Socrates has not determined whether the husbandmen and artisans are to have a share in the government, and whether they, too, are to carry arms and share in military service, or not. He certainly thinks that the women ought to share in the education of the guardians, and to fight by their side. The remainder of the work is filled up with digressions foreign to the main subject, and with discussions about the education of the guardians. In the Laws there is hardly anything but laws; not much is said about the constitution. This, which he had intended to make more of the ordinary type, he gradually brings round to the other or ideal form. For with the exception of the community of women and property, he supposes everything to be the same in both states; there is to be the

---

* Cp. vii. 9. § 7.
same education; the citizens of both are to live free from servile occupations, and there are to be common meals in both. The only difference is that in the Laws, the common meals are extended to women⁸, and the warriors number about 5000 b, but in the Republic only 1000 e.

6 The discourses of Socrates are never commonplace; they always exhibit grace and originality and thought; but perfection in everything can hardly be expected. We must not overlook the fact that the number of 5000 citizens, just now mentioned, will require a territory as large as Babylonia, or some other huge country, if so many persons are to be supported in idleness, together with their women and attendants, who will be a multitude many times as great. [In framing an ideal] we may assume what we wish, but should avoid impossibilities d.

It is said [in the Laws] that the legislator ought to have his eye directed to two points,—the people and the country e. But neighbouring countries also must not be forgotten by him f, if the state for which he legislates is to have a true political life g. For a state must have such a military force as will be serviceable against her neighbours, and not merely useful at home. Even if the life of action is not admitted to be the best, either for individuals or states h, still a city should be formidable to enemies, whether invading or retreating.

There is another point: Should not the amount of property be defined in some clearer way? For Socrates says that a man should have so much property as will enable him to live temperately i, which is only a way of saying 'to live well'; this would be the higher or more general conception. But a man may live temperately and yet miserably. A better definition would be that a man must have so much property as will enable him to live not only temperately but liberally j; if the

---

II. 6. begins with a more ordinary type of constitution, but soon reverts to the ideal.

Plato, with all his genius, has sinned against probability in creating so large a state.

Foreign relations neglected.

How much property should a citizen hold?

So much as will enable a man to live temperately and

---

⁸ Laws, vi. 781.
⁹ Rep. iv. 423 A (but see note on this passage).
two are parted, liberality will combine with luxury; toil will be associated with temperance. For liberality and temperance are the only virtues which have to do with the use of property. A man cannot use property with mildness or courage, but temperately and liberally he may; and therefore the practice of these virtues is inseparable from property. There is an in-10 consistency, too, in equalizing the property and not regulating the number of the citizens; the population is to remain unlimited, and he thinks that it will be sufficiently equalized by a certain number of marriages being unfruitful, however many are born to others, because he finds this to be the case in existing states. But [in Plato's imaginary state] greater care will be required than now; for among ourselves, whatever may be the number of citizens, the property is always distributed among them, and therefore no one is in want; but, if the property were incapable of division [as in the Laws], the supernumeraries, whether few or many, would get nothing. One would have thought that it was even12 more necessary to limit population than property; and that the limit should be fixed by calculating the chances of mortality in the children, and of sterility in married persons. The neglect of this subject, which in existing13 states is so common, is a never-failing cause of poverty among the citizens; and poverty is the parent of revolution and crime. Pheidon the Corinthian, who was one of the most ancient legislators, thought that the families and the number of citizens ought to remain the same, although originally all the lots may have been of different sizes; but in the Laws, the opposite principle is maintained. What in our opinion is the right arrange-14 ment will have to be explained hereafter.

There is another omission in the Laws; Socrates does

---

* Omitting ἄξιος and reading ἀξιά with the MSS., or, reading with Bekk. ἄξιος ἀξιά, 'eligible qualities.'

b But see Laws, v. 740.

c Cp. vii. 5. § 1; 10. § 11; 16. § 15; but the promise is hardly fulfilled.
not tell us how the rulers differ from their subjects; he only says that they should be related as the warp and woof, which are made out of different wools. He allows that a man's whole property may be increased five-fold, but why should not his land also increase to a certain extent? Again, will the good management of a household be promoted by his arrangement of homesteads? for he assigns to each individual two homesteads in separate places, and it is difficult to live in two houses.

The whole system of government tends to be neither democracy nor oligarchy, but something in a mean between them, which is usually called a polity, and is composed of the heavy armed soldiers. Now, if he intended to frame a constitution which would suit the greatest number of states, he was very likely right, but not if he meant to say that this constitutional form came nearest to his first or ideal state; for many would prefer the Lacedaemonian, or, possibly, some other more aristocratic government. Some, indeed, say that the best constitution is a combination of all existing forms, and they praise the Lacedaemonian because it is made up of oligarchy, monarchy, and democracy, the king forming the monarchy, and the council of elders the oligarchy, while the democratic element is represented by the Ephors; for the Ephors are selected from the people. Others, however, declare the Ephorality to be a tyranny, and find the element of democracy in the common meals and in the habits of daily life. In the Laws, it is maintained that the best state is made up of democracy and tyranny, which are either not constitutions at all, or are the worst of all. But they are nearer the truth who combine many forms; for the state is better which is made up of more numerous elements. The constitution proposed in the Laws has no element of monarchy at all; it is nothing but oligarchy and democracy, leaning

II. 6. How do the rulers differ from their subjects?
The two households.
The constitution a mixture of democracy and oligarchy.

Spartal also a mixture, is praised and blamed.

The best constitution is said to be that which includes most elements.

---

*a* Laws, v. 734 E, 735 A.
*b* Laws, v. 744 E.
*d* cp. iv. § 7; 7. § 4; 9. § 7-9.  
*vi.* 756 E; cp. iv. 710.
II. 6. rather to oligarchy. This is seen in the mode of appointing magistrates; for although the appointment of them by lot from among those who have been already selected combines both elements, the way in which the rich are compelled by law to attend the assembly and vote for magistrates or discharge other political duties, while the rest may do as they like, and the endeavour to have the greater number of the magistrates appointed out of the richest classes and the highest officers selected from those who have the greatest incomes, both these are oligarchical features. The oligarchical principle prevails also in the choice of the council; for all are compelled to choose, but the compulsion extends only to the choice out of the first class, and of an equal number out of the second class and out of the third class, but not in this latter case to all the voters of the third and fourth class; and the selection of candidates out of the fourth class is only compulsory on the first and second. Then, he says that there ought to be an equal number of each class selected. Thus a preponderance will be given to the better sort of people, who have the larger incomes, because many of the lower classes, not being compelled, will not vote. These considerations, and others which will be adduced when the time comes for examining similar polities, tend to show that states like Plato’s should not be composed of democracy and monarchy. There is also a danger in electing the magistrates out of a body who are themselves elected; for, if but a small number choose to combine, the elections will always go as they desire. Such is the constitution which is described in the Laws.

Other constitutions have been proposed; some by private persons, others by philosophers and statesmen, which all come nearer to established or existing ones than either of Plato’s. No one else has introduced such novelties as the community of women and children, or

---

*b Laws, vi. 764 A; and Pol. iv. 9. § 2; 14. § 12.
*c Laws, vi. 756 B-E.
*d Omitting either του τετάρπου or του τετάρπου.
public tables for women: other legislators begin with what is necessary. In the opinion of some, the regulation of property is the chief point of all, that being the question upon which all revolutions turn. This danger was recognized by Phaleas of Chalcedon, who was the first to affirm that the citizens of a state ought to have equal possessions. He thought that in a new colony the equalization might be accomplished without difficulty, not so easily when a state was already established; and that then the shortest way of compassing the desired end would be for the rich to give and not to receive marriage portions, and for the poor not to give but to receive them.

Plato in the Laws was of opinion that, to a certain extent, accumulation should be allowed, forbidding, as I have already observed, any citizen to possess more than five times the minimum qualification. But those who make such laws should remember what they are apt to forget,—that the legislator who fixes the amount of property should also fix the number of children; for, if the children are too many for the property, the law must be broken. And, besides the violation of the law, it is a bad thing that many from being rich should become poor; for men of ruined fortunes are sure to stir up revolutions. That the equalization of property exercises an influence on political society was clearly understood even by some of the old legislators. Laws were made by Solon and others prohibiting an individual from possessing as much land as he pleased; and there are other laws in states which forbid the sale of property: among the Locrians, for example, there is a law that a man is not to sell his property unless he can prove unmistakably that some misfortune has befallen him. Again, there have been laws which enjoin the preservation of the original lots. Such a law existed in the island of Leucas, and the abrogation of it made the constitution too democratic, for the rulers no longer had the

* c. 6. § 15.
II. 7. prescribed qualification. Again, where there is equality of property, the amount may be either too large or too small, and the possessor may be living either in luxury or penury. Clearly, then, the legislator ought not only to aim at the equalization of properties, but at moderation in their amount. And yet, if he prescribe this moderate amount equally to all, he will be no nearer the mark; for it is not the possessions but the desires of mankind which require to be equalized, and this is impossible, unless a sufficient education is provided by the state. But Phaleas will probably reply that this is precisely what he means; and that, in his opinion, there ought to be in states, not only equal property, but equal education. Still he should tell us what will be the character of his education; there is no use in having one and the same for all, if it is of a sort that predisposes men to avarice, or ambition, or both. Moreover, civil troubles arise, not only out of the inequality of property, but out of the inequality of honour, though in opposite ways. For the common people quarrel about the inequality of property,1267a. the higher class about the equality of honour; as the poet says,—

‘The bad and good alike in honour share.’

There are crimes of which the motive is want; and for these Phaleas expects to find a cure in the equalization of property, which will take away from a man the temptation to be a highwayman, because he is hungry or cold. But want is not the sole incentive to crime; men desire to gratify some passion which preys upon them, or they are eager to enjoy the pleasures which are unaccompanied with pain, and therefore they commit crimes.

Now what is the cure of these three disorders? Of the first, moderate possessions and occupation; of the second, habits of temperance; as to the third, if any desire pleasures which depend on themselves, they will find the satisfaction of their desires nowhere but in philosophy; for all other pleasures we are dependent

a Cp. c. 5. § 12. b II. ix. 319.
on others. The fact is that the greatest crimes are caused by excess and not by necessity. Men do not become tyrants in order that they may not suffer cold; and hence great is the honour bestowed, not on him who kills a thief, but on him who kills a tyrant. Thus we see that the institutions of Phaleas avail only against petty crimes.

There is another objection to them. They are chiefly designed to promote the internal welfare of the state. But the legislator should consider also its relation to neighbouring nations, and to all who are outside of it. The government must be organized with a view to military strength; and of this he has said not a word.

And so with respect to property: there should not only be enough to supply the internal wants of the state, but also to meet dangers coming from without. The property of the state should not be so large that more powerful neighbours may be tempted by it, while the owners are unable to repel the invaders; nor yet so small that the state is unable to maintain a war even against states of equal power, and of the same character. Phaleas has not laid down any rule; and we should bear in mind that a certain amount of wealth is an advantage. The best limit will probably be, not so much as will tempt a more powerful neighbour, or make it his interest to go to war with you. There is a story that Eubulus, when Autophradas was going to besiege Atarneus, told him to consider how long the operation would take, and then reckon up the cost which would be incurred in the time. ‘For,’ said he, ‘I am willing for a smaller sum than that to leave Atarneus at once.’ These words of Eubulus made an impression on Autophradas, and he desisted from the siege.

One advantage gained by the equalization of property is that it prevents the citizens from quarrelling. Not that the gain in this direction is very great. For the nobles will be dissatisfied because they do not receive

---

*a* Cp. c. 6. § 7.  
*b* Or reading ἵνα, 'what amount of wealth.'
II. 7. the honours which they think their due; and this is often found to be a cause of sedition and revolution. And the avarice of mankind is insatiable; at one time two obols was pay enough; but now, when this sum has become customary, men always want more and more without end; for it is of the nature of desire not to be satisfied, and most men live only for the gratification of it. The beginning of reform is not so much to equalize property as to train the nobler sort of natures not to desire more, and to prevent the lower from getting more; that is to say, they must be kept down, but not ill-treated. Besides, the equalization proposed by Phaleas is imperfect; for he only equalizes land, whereas a man may be rich also in slaves, and cattle, and money, and in the abundance of what are called his moveables. Now either all these things must be equalized, or some limit must be imposed on them, or they must all be let alone. It would appear that Phaleas is legislating for a small city only, if, as he supposes, all the artisans are to be public slaves and not to form a part of the population of the city. But if there is a law that artisans are to be public slaves, it should only apply to those engaged on public works, as at Epidamnus, or at Athens on the plan which Diophantus once introduced.

From these observations any one may judge how far Phaleas was wrong or right in his ideas.

Hippodamus, the son of Euryphon, a native of Miletus, the same who invented the art of planning cities, and who also laid out the Piraeus,—a strange man, whose fondness for distinction led him into a general eccentricity of life, which made some think him affected (for he would wear flowing hair and expensive ornaments; and yet he dressed himself in the same cheap warm garment both in winter and summer); he, besides

---

*a* Cp. § 10.

*b* Or, reading with Bernays ἀντών, 'the remedy for such evils.'

*c* Putting a comma after ἄνω and removing the comma after Ἰπποδάμου.
aspiring to be an adept in the knowledge of nature, was the first person not a statesman who made enquiries about the best form of government.

2 The city of Hippodamus was composed of 10,000 citizens divided into three parts,—one of artisans, one of husbandmen, and a third of armed defenders of the state. He also divided the land into three parts, one sacred, one public, the third private:—the first was set apart to maintain the customary worship of the gods, the second was to support the warriors, the third was the property of the husbandmen. He also divided his laws into three classes, and no more, for he maintained that there are three subjects of lawsuits,—insult, injury, and homicide. He likewise instituted a single final court of appeal, to which all causes seeming to have been improperly decided might be referred; this court he formed of elders chosen for the purpose. He was further of opinion that the decisions of the courts ought not to be given by the use of a voting pebble, but that every one should have a tablet on which he might not only write a simple condemnation, or leave the tablet blank for a simple acquittal; but, if he partly acquitted and partly condemned, he was to distinguish accordingly. To the existing law he objected that it obliged the judges to be guilty of perjury, whichever way they voted. He also enacted that those who discovered anything for the good of the state should be rewarded; and he provided that the children of citizens who died in battle should be maintained at the public expense, as if such an enactment had never been heard of before, yet it actually exists at Athens and in other places. As to the magistrates, he would have them all elected by the people, that is, by the three classes already mentioned, and those who were elected were to watch over the interests of the public, of strangers, and of orphans. These are the most striking points in the constitution of Hippodamus. There is not much else.

II. 8. His three-fold division of the citizens, of the land, and of the laws. Court of appeal.

Verdicts not to be limited to a simple ‘guilty’ or ‘not guilty.’ Rewards for inventions. Maintenance of children of citizens slain in battle. Magistrates, how to be elected.

* Cp. Thuc. ii. c. 46.
II. 8.  The first of these proposals to which objection may
be taken, is the threefold division of the citizens. The 8
artisans, and the husbandmen, and the warriors, all
have a share in the government. But the husbandmen
have no arms, and the artisans neither arms nor land,
and therefore they become all but slaves of the warrior
class. That they should share in all the offices is an im-
possibility; for generals and guardians of the citizens,
and nearly all the principal magistrates, must be taken
from the class of those who carry arms. Yet, if the two
other classes have no share in the government, how can
they be loyal citizens? It may be said that those who
have arms must necessarily be masters of both the
other classes, but this is not so easily accomplished unless
they are numerous; and if they are, why should the 10
other classes share in the government at all, or have
power to appoint magistrates? Artisans there must be,
for these are wanted in every city, and they can live by
their craft, as elsewhere; and the husbandmen, too, if
they really provided the warriors with food, might fairly
have a share in the government. But in the republic of
Hippodamus they are supposed to have land of their own,
which they cultivate for their private benefit. Again, as 21
to this common land out of which the soldiers are main-
tained, if they are themselves to be the cultivators of it,
the warrior class will be identical with the husband-
men, although the legislator intended to make a dis-
tinction between them. If, again, there are to be other
cultivators distinct both from the husbandmen, who have
land of their own, and from the warriors, they will make
a fourth class, which has no place in the state and no
share in anything. Or, if the same persons are to cul-
tivate their own lands and those of the public as well,
they will have a difficulty in supplying the quantity of
produce which will maintain two households: and why, 23
in this case, should there be any division, for they might
find food themselves and give to the warriors from the
same lots? There is surely a great confusion in all this.
Neither is the law to be commended which says that the judges, when a simple issue is laid before them, should distinguish in their judgment; for the judge is thus converted into an arbitrator. Now, in an arbitration, although the arbitrators are many, they confer with one another about the decision, and therefore they can distinguish; but in courts of law this is impossible, and, indeed, most legislators take pains to prevent the judges from holding any communication with one another.

Again, will there not be confusion if the judge thinks that damages should be given, but not so much as the suitor demands? He asks, say, for twenty minae, and the judge allows him ten minae, or one judge more and another less; one five, another four minae. In this way they will go on apportioning the damages, and some will grant the whole and others nothing: how is the final reckoning to be taken? Again, no one who votes for a simple acquittal or condemnation is compelled to perjure himself, if the indictment is quite simple and in right form; for the judge who acquits does not decide that the defendant owes nothing, but that he does not owe the twenty minae. He only is guilty of perjury who thinks that the defendant ought not to pay twenty minae, and yet condemns him.

To reward those who discover anything which is useful to the state is a proposal which has a specious sound, but cannot safely be enacted by law, for it may encourage informers, and perhaps even lead to political commotions. This question involves another. It has been doubted whether it is or is not expedient to make any changes in the laws of a country, even if another law be better. Now, if all changes are inexpedient, we can hardly assent to the proposal of Hippodamus; for, under pretence of doing a public service, a man may introduce measures which are really destructive to the laws or to the constitution. But, since we have touched upon this subject, perhaps we had better go a little into detail, for, as I was saying, there is a difference of opinion, and it may sometimes seem de-
sirable to make changes. Such changes in the other arts and sciences have certainly been beneficial; medicine, for example, and gymnastic, and every other art and science have departed from traditional usage. And, if politics be an art, change must be necessary in this as in any other art. The need of improvement is shown by the fact that old customs are exceedingly simple and barbarous. For the ancient Hellenes went about armed and bought their wives of each other. The remains of ancient laws which have come down to us are quite absurd; for example, at Cumae there is a law about murder, to the effect that if the accuser produce a certain number of witnesses from among his own kinsmen, the accused shall be held guilty. Again, men in general desire the good, and not merely what their fathers had. But the primeval inhabitants, whether they were born of the earth or were the survivors of some destruction, may be supposed to have been no better than ordinary foolish people among ourselves (such is certainly the tradition concerning the earth-born men); and it would be ridiculous to rest contented with their notions. Even when laws have been written down, they ought not always to remain unaltered. As in other sciences, so in politics, it is impossible that all things should be precisely set down in writing; for enactments must be universal, but actions are concerned with particulars. Hence we infer that sometimes and in certain cases laws may be changed; but when we look at the matter from another point of view, great caution would seem to be required. For the habit of lightly changing the laws is an evil, and, when the advantage is small, some errors both of law-givers and rulers had better be left; the citizen will not

a Cp. Thucyd. i. c. 5 and 6.

b Or, referring ὑμοῖος to γενεσίς, 'whether they were born of the earth or were the survivors of some destruction, who were no better (ὑμοῖοι) than earth-born men, may be supposed to have been ordinary foolish people.'

c Cp. Plato, Laws, iii. 677 A; Polit. 271 A; Tim. 22 C.

d Cp. Plato, Polit. 295 A.
gain so much by the change as he will lose by the habit of disobedience. The analogy of the arts is false; a change in a law is a very different thing from a change in an art. For the law has no power to command obedience except that of habit, which can only be given by time, so that a readiness to change from old to new laws enfeebles the power of the law. Even if we admit that the laws are to be changed, are they all to be changed, and in every state? And are they to be changed by anybody who likes, or only by certain persons? These are very important questions; and therefore we had better reserve the discussion of them to a more suitable occasion.

In the governments of Lacedaemon and Crete, and indeed in all governments, two points have to be considered; first, whether any particular law is good or bad, when compared with the perfect state; secondly, whether it is or is not consistent with the idea and character which the lawgiver has set before his citizens. That in a well-ordered state the citizens should have leisure and not have to provide for their daily wants is generally acknowledged, but there is a difficulty in seeing how this leisure is to be attained. [For, if you employ slaves, they are liable to rebel.] The Thessalian Penestae have often risen against their masters, and the Helots in like manner against the Lacedaemonians, for whose misfortunes they are always lying in wait. Nothing, however, of this kind has as yet happened to the Cretans; the reason probably is that the neighbouring cities, even when at war with one another, never form an alliance with rebellious serfs, rebellions not being for their interest, since they themselves have a dependent population. Whereas all the neighbours of the Lacedaemonians, whether Argives, Messenians, or Arcadians, are their enemies [and the Helots are always revolting to them]. In Thessaly, again, the original revolt of the slaves occurred at a time when the Thessalians were still at war with the neighbouring Achaeans, Perrhaebians, and

---

Two questions to be asked about governments: (1) Is the end which they propose good? and (2) do they fulfill it?

Defects of Lacedaemonian state.

(1) The Helots a constant trouble.

---

* Or 'himself' (Bernays).

b Cp. c. 10. § 5.
Magnesians. Besides, if there were no other difficulty, the treatment or management of slaves is a troublesome affair; for, if not kept in hand, they are insolent, and think that they are as good as their masters, and, if harshly treated, they hate and conspire against them. Now it is clear that when these are the results the citizens of a state have not found out the secret of managing their subject population.

Again, the licence of the Lacedaemonian women defeats the intention of the Spartan constitution, and is adverse to the good order of the state. For a husband and a wife, being each a part of every family, the state may be considered as about equally divided into men and women; and, therefore, in those states in which the condition of the women is bad, half the city may be regarded as having no laws. And this is what has actually happened at Sparta; the legislator wanted to make the whole state hardy and temperate, and he has carried out his intention in the case of the men, but he has neglected the women, who live in every sort of intemperance and luxury. The consequence is that in such a state wealth is too highly valued, especially if the citizens fall under the dominion of their wives, after the manner of all warlike races, except the Celts and a few others who openly approve of male loves. The old mythologer would seem to have been right in uniting Ares and Aphrodite, for all warlike races are prone to the love either of men or of women. This was exemplified among the Spartans in the days of their greatness; many things were managed by their women. But what difference does it make whether women rule, or the rulers are ruled by women? The result is the same. Even in regard to courage, which is of no use in daily life, and is needed only in war, the influence of the Lacedaemonian women has been most mischievous. The evil showed itself in the Theban invasion, when, unlike the women in

* Cp. i. 13. § 16.
other cities, they were utterly useless and caused more confusion than the enemy. This licence of the Lacedaemonian women existed from the earliest times, and was only what might be expected. For, during the wars of the Lacedaemonians, first against the Argives, and afterwards against the Arcadians and Messenians, the men were long away from home, and, on the return of peace, they gave themselves into the legislator’s hand, already prepared by the discipline of a soldier’s life (in which there are many elements of virtue), to receive his enactments. But, when Lycurgus, as tradition says, wanted to bring the women under his laws, they resisted, and he gave up the attempt. They, and not he, are to blame for what then happened, and this defect in the constitution is clearly to be attributed to them. We are not, however, considering what is or is not to be excused, but what is right or wrong, and the disorder of the women, as I have already said, not only of itself gives an air of indecorum to the state, but tends in a measure to foster avarice.

The mention of avarice naturally suggests a criticism on the inequality of property. While some of the Spartan citizens have quite small properties, others have very large ones; hence the land has passed into the hands of a few. And here is another fault in their laws; for, although the legislator rightly holds up to shame the sale or purchase of an inheritance, he allows any body who likes to give and bequeath it. Yet both practices lead to the same result. And nearly two-fifths of the whole country are held by women; this is owing to the number of heiresses and to the large dowries which are customary. It would surely have been better to have given no dowries at all, or, if any, but small or moderate ones. As the law now stands, a man may bestow his heiress on any one whom he pleases, and, if he die intestate, the privilege of giving her away descends to his heir. Hence, although the country is able to maintain 1500 cavalry and 30,000 hoplites, the whole number of Spartan citizens [at the time of the Theban
II. 9. invasion] fell below 1000. The result proves the faulty nature of their laws respecting property; for the city sank under a single defeat; the want of men was their ruin. There is a tradition that, in the days of their ancient kings, they were in the habit of giving the rights of citizenship to strangers, and therefore, in spite of their long wars, no lack of population was experienced by them; indeed, at one time Sparta is said to have numbered not less than 10,000 citizens. Whether this statement is true or not, it would certainly have been better to have maintained their numbers by the equalization of property. Again, the law which relates to the procreation of children is adverse to the correction of this inequality. For the legislator, wanting to have as many Spartans as he could, encouraged the citizens to have large families; and there is a law at Sparta that the father of three sons shall be exempt from military service, and he who has four from all the burdens of the state. Yet it is obvious that, if there were many children, the land being distributed as it is, many of them must necessarily fall into poverty.

The Lacedaemonian constitution is defective in another point; I mean the Ephorality. This magistracy has authority in the highest matters, but the Ephors are all chosen from the people, and so the office is apt to fall into the hands of very poor men, who, being badly off, are open to bribes. There have been many examples at Sparta of this evil in former times; and quite recently, in the matter of the Andrians, certain of the Ephors who were bribed did their best to ruin the state. And so great and tyrannical is their power, that even the kings have been compelled to court them; through their influence the constitution has deteriorated, and from being an aristocracy has turned into a democracy. The Ephorality certainly does keep the state together; for the people are contented when they have a share in the highest office, and the result, whether due to the legislator or to chance, has been advantageous. For if a constitution is to be permanent, all the parts of the state
must wish that it should exist and be maintained. This is the case at Sparta, where the kings desire permanence because they have due honour in their own persons; the nobles are represented in the council of elders (for the office of elder is a reward of virtue); and the people in the Ephoralty, for all are eligible to it. The election of Ephors out of the whole people is perfectly right, but ought not to be carried on in the present fashion, which is too childish. Again, they have the decision of great causes, although they are quite ordinary men, and therefore they should not determine them merely on their own judgment, but according to written rules, and to the laws.

Their way of life, too, is not in accordance with the spirit of the constitution—they have a deal too much licence; whereas, in the case of the other citizens, the excess of strictness is so intolerable that they run away from the law into the secret indulgence of sensual pleasures.

Again, the council of elders is not free from defects. It may be said that the elders are good men and well trained in manly virtue; and that, therefore, there is an advantage to the state in having them. But that judges of important causes should hold office for life is not a good thing, for the mind grows old as well as the body. And when men have been educated in such a manner that even the legislator himself cannot trust them, there is real danger. Many of the elders are well known to have taken bribes and to have been guilty of partiality in public affairs. And therefore they ought not to be irresponsible; yet at Sparta they are so. But (it may be replied), 'All magistracies are accountable to the Ephors.' Yes, but this prerogative is too great for them, and we maintain that the control should be exercised in some other manner. Further, the mode in which the Spartans elect their elders is childish; and it is improper that the person to be elected should canvass...

---

* Cp. iv. 9. § 10 ; v. 9. § 5.

* Reading 'ονοντι, not τοντι, as Bekker, 2nd edit., apparently by a misprint.
II. 9. for the office; the worthiest should be appointed, whether
he chooses or not. And here the legislator clearly in-
dicates the same intention which appears in other parts
of his constitution; he would have his citizens ambitious,
and he has reckoned upon this quality in the election of
the elders; for no one would ask to be elected if he were
not. Yet ambition and avarice, almost more than any
other passions, are the motives of crime.

Whether kings are or are not an advantage to states, I
will consider at another time; they should at any rate
be chosen, not as they are now, but with regard to their
personal life and conduct. The legislator himself obvi-
ously did not suppose that he could make them really
good men; at least he shows a great distrust of their
virtue. For this reason the Spartans used to join
enemies in the same embassy, and the quarrels between
the kings were held to be conservative of the state.

Neither did the first introducer of the common meals,
called 'phidia,' regulate them well. The entertainment
ought to have been provided at the public cost, as in
Crete; but among the Lacedaemonians every one is ex-
pected to contribute, and some of them are too poor to
afford the expense; thus the intention of the legislator is
frustrated. The common meals were meant to be a popu-
lar institution, but the existing manner of regulating
them is the reverse of popular. For the very poor can
scarcely take part in them; and, according to an cient
custom, those who cannot contribute are not allowed to
retain their rights of citizenship.

The law about the Spartan admirals has often been
condemned, and with justice; it is a source of dissension,
for the kings are perpetual generals, and this office of
admiral is but the setting up of another king.

The charge which Plato brings, in the Laws, against the
intention of the legislator, is likewise justified; the
whole constitution has regard to one part of virtue only,

*a* Cp. iii. 14 foll.  
*b* Cp. c. 10. §§ 7, 8.  
*c* Reading *dilectos.*  
*d* Laws, i. 630.
—the virtue of the soldier, which gives victory in war. And so long as they were at war, their power was preserved, but when they had attained empire they fell, for of the arts of peace they knew nothing, and had never engaged in any employment higher than war. There is another error, equally great, into which they have fallen. Although they truly think that the goods for which they contend are to be acquired by virtue rather than by vice, they err in supposing that these goods are to be preferred to the virtue which gains them.

36 Once more: the revenues of the state are ill-managed; there is no money in the treasury, although they are obliged to carry on great wars, and they are unwilling to pay taxes. The greater part of the land being in the hands of the Spartans, they do not look closely into one another's contributions. The result which the legislator has produced is the reverse of beneficial; for he has made his city poor, and his citizens greedy.

Enough respecting the Spartan constitution, of which these are the principal defects.

The Cretan constitution nearly resembles the Spartan, and in some few points is quite as good; but for the most part less perfect in form. The older constitutions are generally less elaborate than the later, and the Lacedaemonian is said to be, and probably is, in a very great measure, a copy of the Cretan. According to tradition, Lycurgus, when he ceased to be the guardian of King Charilaus, went abroad and spent a long time in Crete. For the two countries are nearly connected; the Lycians are a colony of the Lacedaemonians, and the colonists, when they came to Crete, adopted the constitution which they found existing among the inhabitants. Even to this day the Perioeci, or subject population of Crete, are governed by the original laws which Minos enacted. The island seems to be intended by nature for dominion in Hellas, and to be well situated; it extends right across

\[ \text{Cp. vii. 14. § 22.} \]
the sea, around which nearly all the Hellenes are settled; and while one end is not far from the Peloponnese, the other almost reaches to the region of Asia about Triopium and Rhodes. Hence Minos acquired the empire of the sea, subduing some of the islands and colonizing others; at last he invaded Sicily, where he died near Camicus.

The Cretan institutions resemble the Lacedaemonian. The Helots are the husbandmen of the one, the Perioeci of the other, and both Cretans and Lacedaemonians have common meals, which were anciently called by the Lacedaemonians not 'phiditia' but 'andria'; and the Cretans have the same word, the use of which proves that the common meals [or syssitia] originally came from Crete. Further, the two constitutions are similar [in many particulars]; for the office of the Ephors is the same as that of the Cretan Cosmi, the only difference being that whereas the Ephors are five, the Cosmi are ten in number. The elders, too, answer to the elders in Crete, who are termed by the Cretans the council. And the kingly office once existed in Crete, but was abolished, and the Cosmi have now the duty of leading them in war. All classes share in the ecclesia, but it can only ratify the decrees of the elders and the Cosmi.

The common meals of Crete are certainly better managed than the Lacedaemonian; for in Lacedaemon every one pays so much per head, or, if he fails, the law, as I have already explained, forbids him to exercise the rights of citizenship. But in Crete they are of a more popular character. There, of all the fruits of the earth, of cattle, of the public revenues, and of the tribute which is paid by the Perioeci, one portion is assigned to the gods and to the service of the state, and another to the common meals, so that men, women, and children are all supported out of a common stock*. The legislator has many ingenious ways of securing moderation in eating which he conceives to be a gain; he likewise encourages

* Cp. vii. 10. § 10.
the separation of men from women, lest they should have too many children, and the companionship of men with one another—whether this is a good or bad thing I shall have an opportunity of considering at another time. But that the Cretan common meals are better ordered than the Lacedaemonian there can be no doubt.

On the other hand, the Cosmi are even a worse institution than the Ephors, of which they have all the evils without the good. Like the Ephors, they are any chance persons, but in Crete this is not counterbalanced by a corresponding political advantage. At Sparta every one is eligible, and the body of the people, having a share in the highest office, want the state to be permanent. But in Crete the Cosmi are elected out of certain families, and not out of the whole people, and the elders out of those who have been Cosmi.

The same criticism may be made about the Cretan, which has been already made about the Lacedaemonian elders. Their irresponsibility and life tenure is too great a privilege, and their arbitrary power of acting upon their own judgment, and dispensing with written law, is dangerous. It is no proof of the goodness of the institution that the people are not discontented at being excluded from it. For there is no profit to be made out of the office; and, unlike the Ephors, the Cosmi, being in an island, are removed from temptation.

The remedy by which they correct the evil of this institution is an extraordinary one, suited rather to a close oligarchy than to a constitutional state. For the Cosmi are often expelled by a conspiracy of their own colleagues, or of private individuals; and they are allowed also to resign before their term of office has expired. Surely all matters of this kind are better regulated by law than by the will of man, which is a very unsafe rule. Worst of all is the suspension of the office of Cosmi, a device to which the nobles often have recourse when they will not submit to justice. This shows that the Cretan

---

But the Cosmi a worse institution than the Ephors.

---

a vii. 16 (?).

b Cp. supra, c. 9. § 21.
II. 10. government, although possessing some of the characteristics of a constitutional state, is really a close oligarchy.

The Cretans have a habit, too, of setting up a chief; they get together a party among the common people and gather their friends and then quarrel and fight with one another. What is this but the temporary destruction of the state and dissolution of society? A city is in a dangerous condition when those who are willing are also able to attack her. But, as I have already said, the island of Crete is saved by her situation; distance has the same effect as the Lacedaemonian prohibition of strangers; and the Cretans have no foreign dominions. This is the reason why the Perioeci are contented in Crete, whereas the Helots are perpetually revolting. But when lately foreign invaders found their way into the island, the weakness of the Cretan constitution was revealed. Enough of the government of Crete.

The Carthaginians are also considered to have an excellent form of government, which differs from that of any other state in several respects, though it is in some very like the Lacedaemonian. Indeed, all three states—the Lacedaemonian, the Cretan, and the Carthaginian—nearly resemble one another, and are very different from any others. Many of the Carthaginian institutions are excellent. The superiority of their constitution is proved by the fact that, although containing an element of democracy, it has been lasting; the Carthaginians have never had any rebellion worth speaking of, and have never been under the rule of a tyrant.

Among the points in which the Carthaginian constitution resembles the Lacedaemonian are the following:—The common tables of the clubs answer to the Spartan phidia, and their magistracy of the 104 to the Ephors; but, whereas the Ephors are any chance persons, the magistrates of the Carthaginians are elected according to merit—this is an improvement. They have also their kings and their gerusia, or council of elders, who correspond to the kings and elders of Sparta. Their kings, unlike the 4
DEFECTS OF THE CONSTITUTION.

Spartan, are not always of the same family, whatever that may happen to be, but if there is some distinguished family they are selected out of it and not appointed by seniority—this is far better. Such officers have great power, and therefore, if they are persons of little worth, do a great deal of harm, and they have already done harm at Lacedaemon.

Most of the defects or deviations from the perfect state, for which the Carthaginian constitution would be censured, apply equally to all the forms of government which we have mentioned. But of the deflections from aristocracy and constitutional government, some incline more to democracy and some to oligarchy. The kings and elders, if unanimous, may determine whether they will or will not bring a matter before the people, but when they are not unanimous, the people may decide whether or not the matter shall be brought forward. And whatever the kings and elders bring before the people is not only heard but also determined by them, and any one who likes may oppose it; now this is not permitted in Sparta and Crete. That the magistracies of five who have under them many important matters should be co-opted, that they should choose the supreme council of 100, and should hold office longer than other magistrates (for they are virtually rulers both before and after they hold office)—these are oligarchical features; their being without salary and not elected by lot, and any similar points, such as the practice of having all suits tried by the magistrates, and not some by one class of judges or jurors and some by another, as at Lacedaemon, are characteristic of aristocracy. The Carthaginian constitution deviates from aristocracy and inclines to oligarchy, chiefly on a point where popular opinion is on their side. For men in general think that magistrates should be chosen not only for their merit, but for their wealth: a man, they say, who is poor cannot rule well,—he has not the leisure. If, then, election of magistrates for their wealth

* Cp. iii. 1. §§ 10. 11; and see note at end.
II. 11. be characteristic of oligarchy, and election for merit of aristocracy, there will be a third form under which the constitution of Carthage is comprehended; for the Carthaginians choose their magistrates, and particularly the highest of them—their kings and generals—with an eye both to merit and to wealth.

But we must acknowledge that, in thus deviating from aristocracy, the legislator has committed an error. Nothing is more absolutely necessary than to provide that the highest class, not only when in office, but when out of office, should have leisure and not demean themselves in any way; and to this his attention should be first directed. Even if you must have regard to wealth, in order to secure leisure, yet it is surely a bad thing that the greatest offices, such as those of kings and generals, should be bought. The law which allows this abuse makes wealth of more account than virtue, and the whole state becomes avaricious. For, whenever the chiefs of the state deem anything honourable, the other citizens are sure to follow their example; and, where virtue has not the first place, there aristocracy cannot be firmly established. Those who have been at the expense of purchasing their places will be in the habit of repaying themselves; and it is absurd to suppose that a poor and honest man will be wanting to make gains, and that a lower stamp of man who has incurred a great expense will not. Wherefore they should rule who are able to rule best [δικταγχυσία]. And even if the legislator does not care to protect the good from poverty, he should at any rate secure leisure for those in office.

It would seem also to be a bad principle that the same person should hold many offices, which is a favourite practice among the Carthaginians, for one business is better done by one man. The legislator should see to this and should not appoint the same person to be a flute-player and a shoemaker. Hence, where the state

* Cp. c. 9. § 2.  
* Cp. Plato, Rep. ii. 374 A.
is large, it is more in accordance both with constitutional and with democratic principles that the offices of state should be distributed among many persons. For, as I was saying, this arrangement is more popular, and any action familiarised by repetition is better and sooner performed. We have a proof in military and naval matters; the duties of command and of obedience in both these services extend to all.

The government of the Carthaginians is oligarchical, but they successfully escape the evils of oligarchy by their wealth, which enables them from time to time to send out some portion of the people to their colonies. This is their panacea and the means by which they give stability to the state. Accident favours them, but the legislator should be able to provide against revolution without trusting to accidents. As things are, if any misfortune occurred, and the people revolted from their rulers, there would be no way of restoring peace by legal methods.

Such is the character of the Lacedaemonian, Cretan, and Carthaginian constitutions, which are justly celebrated.

Of those who have treated of governments, some have never taken any part at all in public affairs, but have passed their lives in a private station; about most of them, what was worth telling has been already told. Others have been lawgivers, either in their own or in foreign cities, whose affairs they have administered; and of these some have only made laws, others have framed constitutions; for example, Lycurgus and Solon did both. Of the Lacedaemonian constitution I have already spoken. As to Solon, he is thought by some to have been a good legislator, who put an end to the exclusiveness of the oligarchy, emancipated the people,

* Or, removing the comma after πλουτεῖα, and adding one after μίρος, 'by enriching one portion of the people after another whom they send to their colonies.' Cp. vi. § 9, which tends to confirm this way of taking the words.
II. 12. established the ancient Athenian democracy, and harmonized the different elements of the state. According to their view, the council of Areopagus was an oligarchical element, the elected magistracy, aristocratical, and the courts of law, democratical. The truth seems to be that the council and the elected magistracy existed before the time of Solon, and were retained by him, but that he formed the courts of law out of all the citizens, thus creating the democracy, which is the very reason why he is sometimes blamed. For in giving the supreme power to the law courts, which are elected by lot, he is thought to have destroyed the non-democratic element. When the law courts grew powerful, to please the people, who were now playing the tyrant, the old constitution was changed into the existing democracy. Ephialtes and Pericles curtailed the power of the Areopagus; they also instituted the payment of the juries, and thus every demagogue in turn increased the power of the democracy until it became what we now see. All this is true; it seems however to be the result of circumstances, and not to have been intended by Solon. For the people having been instrumental in gaining the empire of the sea in the Persian War, began to get a notion of itself, and followed worthless demagogues, whom the better class opposed. Solon, himself, appears to have given the Athenians only that power of electing to offices and calling to account the magistrates, which was absolutely necessary; for without it they would have been in a state of slavery and enmity to the government. All the magistrates he appointed from the notables and the men of wealth, that is to say, from the pentacosio-medimni, or from the class called zeugitae (because they kept a yoke of oxen), or from a third class of so-called knights or cavalry. The fourth class were labourers who had no share in any magistracy.

Merc legislators were Zaleucus, who gave laws to the

---

\[a\] Cp. v. 4. § 8 ; viii. 6. § 11.  
\[b\] Cp. iii. 11. § 8.
Epizephyrian Locrians, and Charondas, who legislated for his own city of Catana, and for the other Chalcidian cities in Italy and Sicily. Some persons attempt to make out that Onomacritus was the first person who had any special skill in legislation, and that he, although a Locrian by birth, was trained in Crete, where he lived in the exercise of his prophetic art; that Thales was his companion, and that Lycurgus and Zaleucus were disciples of Thales, as Charondas was of Zaleucus. But their account is quite inconsistent with chronology.

There was also a Theban legislator, whose name was Philolaus, the Corinthian. This Philolaus was one of the family of the Bacchiadae, and a lover of Diocles, the Olympic victor, who left Corinth in horror of the incestuous passion which his mother Halcyone had conceived for him, and retired to Thebes, where the two friends together ended their days. The inhabitants still point out their tombs, which are in full view of one another, but one looks towards Corinth, the other not. Tradition says that the two friends arranged them in this way, Diocles out of horror at his misfortunes, so that the land of Corinth might not be visible from his tomb; Philolaus that it might. This is the reason why they settled at Thebes, and so Philolaus legislated for the Thebans, and, besides some other enactments, gave them laws about the procreation of children, which they call the ‘Laws of Adoption.’ These laws were peculiar to him, and were intended to preserve the number of the lots.

In the legislation of Charondas there is nothing remarkable, except the laws about false witnesses. He is the first who instituted actions for perjury. His laws are more exact and more precisely expressed than even those of our modern legislators.

Characteristic of Phalæas is the equalization of property; of Plato, the community of women, children, and property, the common meals of women, and the law

* Or (with Bernays), ‘to make out an unbroken series of great legislators, Onomacritus being considered the first.’
II. 12. about drinking, that the sober shall be masters of the feast⁴; also the training of soldiers to acquire by practice equal skill with both hands, so that one should be as useful as the other⁵.

Draco. Draco has left laws, but he adapted them to a constitution which already existed, and there is no peculiarity in them which is worth mentioning, except the greatness and severity of the punishments.

Pittacus. Pittacus, too, was only a lawgiver, and not the author of a constitution; he has a law which is peculiar to him, that, if a drunken man strike another, he shall be more heavily punished than if he were sober⁶; he looked not to the excuse which might be offered for the drunkard, but only to expediency, for drunken more often than sober people commit acts of violence.

Androdamas of Rhegium gave laws to the Chalci-dians of Thrace. Some of them relate to homicide, and to heiresses; but there is nothing remarkable in them.

And here let us conclude our enquiry into the various constitutions which either actually exist, or have been devised by theorists.

BOOK III.

He who would enquire into the nature and various kinds of government must first of all determine 'What is a state?' At present this is a disputed question. Some say that the state has done a certain act; others, no, not the state, but the oligarchy or the tyrant. And the legislator or statesman is concerned entirely with the state; a constitution or government being an arrangement of the inhabitants of a state. But a state is composite, and, like any other whole, made up of many parts;—these are the citizens, who compose it. It is evident, therefore, that we must begin by asking, Who is the citizen, and what is the meaning of the term? For here again there may be a difference of opinion. He who is a citizen in a democracy will often not be a citizen in an oligarchy.

Leaving out of consideration those who have been made citizens, or who have obtained the name of citizen in any other accidental manner, we may say, first, that a citizen is not a citizen because he lives in a certain place for resident aliens and slaves share in the place; nor is he a citizen who has no legal right except that of suing and being sued; for this right may be enjoyed under the provisions of a treaty. Even resident aliens in many places possess such rights, although in an imperfect form; for they are obliged to have a patron. Hence they do but imperfectly participate in citizenship, and we call them citizens only in a qualified sense, as we might apply the term to children who are too young to be on the register, or to old men who have been relieved from state duties. Of these we do not say simply that they are citizens, but add in the one case that they are

\[\text{Cp. c. 3. § 1.}\]

\[\text{F 2}\]
III. 1. not of age, and in the other, that they are past the age, or something of that sort; the precise expression is immaterial, for our meaning is clear. Similar difficulties to those which I have mentioned may be raised and answered about deprived citizens and about exiles. But the citizen, whom we are seeking to define, is a citizen in the strictest sense, against whom no such exception can be taken, and his special characteristic is that he shares in the administration of justice, and in offices. Now of offices some have a limit of time, and the same persons are not allowed to hold them twice, or can only hold them after a fixed interval; others have no limit of time, —for example, the office of dicast or ecclesiast\textsuperscript{a}. It may, indeed, be argued that these are not magistrates at all, and that their functions give them no share in the government. But surely it is ridiculous to say that those who have the supreme power do not govern. Not to dwell further upon this, which is a purely verbal question, what we want is a common term including both dicast and ecclesiast. Let us, for the sake of distinction, call it 'indefinite office;' and we will assume that those who share in such office are citizens. This is the most comprehensive definition of a citizen, and best suits all those who are generally so called.

But we must not forget that things of which the underlying notions differ in kind, one of them being first, another second, another third, have, when regarded in this relation, nothing, or hardly anything, worth mentioning in common. Now we see that governments differ in kind, and that some of them are prior and that others are posterior; those which are faulty or perverted\textsuperscript{1275b.} are necessarily posterior to those which are perfect. (What we mean by perversion will be hereafter explained\textsuperscript{b.}) The citizen then of necessity differs under each form of government; and our definition is best adapted to the citizen of a democracy; but not necess-

\textsuperscript{a} 'Dicast' = juryman and judge in one; 'ecclesiast' = member of the ecclesia or assembly of the citizens.

\textsuperscript{b} Cp. c. 6. § 11.
sarily to other states. For in some states the people are not acknowledged, nor have they any regular assembly, but only extraordinary ones; and suits are distributed in turn among the magistrates. At Lacedaemon, for instance, the Ephors determine suits about contracts, which they distribute among themselves, while the elders are judges of homicide, and other causes are decided by other magistrates. A similar principle prevails at Carthage; there certain magistrates decide all causes. We may, indeed, modify our definition of the citizen so as to include these states. [But strictly taken it only applies in democracies.] In other states it is the holder of a definite, not of an indefinite office, who legislates and judges, and to some or all such holders of definite offices is reserved the right of deliberating or judging about some things or about all things. The conception of the citizen now begins to clear up.

He who has the power to take part in the deliberative or judicial administration of any state is said by us to be a citizen of that state; and speaking generally, a state is a body of citizens sufficing for the purposes of life.

But in practice a citizen is defined to be one of whom both the parents are citizens; others insist on going further back; say to two or three or more grandparents. This is a short and practical definition; but there are some who raise the further question: How this third or fourth ancestor came to be a citizen? Gorgias of Leon-tini, partly because he was in a difficulty, partly in irony, said—'Mortars are made by the mortar-makers, and the citizens of Larissa are also a manufactured article, made, like the kettles which bear their name [λαρίσαιοι], by the magistrates.' Yet the question is really simple, for, if according to the definition just given they shared in the government, they were citizens. [This is a better definition than the other.] For the words, 'born of a

---

* Cp. ii. 11. § 7.

b An untranslateable play upon the word διημερισθη, which means either 'a magistrate' or 'an artisan.'

c Cp. c. 1. § 12.
father or mother, who is a citizen, cannot possibly apply to the first inhabitants or founders of a state.

There is a greater difficulty in the case of those who have been made citizens after a revolution, as by Cleisthenes at Athens after the expulsion of the tyrants, for he enrolled in tribes a number of strangers and slaves and resident aliens. The doubt in these cases is, not who is, but whether he, who is, ought to be a citizen; and there will still be a further doubt, whether he who ought not to be a citizen, is one in fact, for what ought not to be is what is false and is not. Now, there are some who hold office, and yet ought not to hold office, whom we call rulers, although they rule unjustly. And the citizen was defined by the fact of his holding some kind of rule or office,—he who holds a judicial or legislative office fulfils our definition of a citizen. It is evident, therefore, that the citizens about whom the doubt has arisen must be called citizens; whether they ought to be so or not is a question which is bound up with the previous enquiry.

A parallel question is raised respecting the state whether a certain act is or is not an act of the state; for example, in the transition from an oligarchy or a tyranny to a democracy. In such cases persons refuse to fulfil their contracts or any other obligations, on the ground that the tyrant, and not the state, contracted them; they argue that some constitutions are established by force, and not for the sake of the common good. But this would apply equally to democracies, for they too may be founded on violence, and then the acts of the democracy will be neither more nor less legitimate than those of an oligarchy or of a tyranny. This question runs up into another:—when shall we say that the state is the

---

*a* Inserting *et* before *μετολαυτε* with Bekker in his second edition. If *et* is omitted, as in all the MSS, we must translate—'he enrolled in tribes many metics, both strangers and slaves:' or, 'he enrolled in tribes many strangers, and metics who had been slaves.'

*b* Cp. c. i. § 1.
same, and when different? It would be a very superficial view which considered only the place and the inhabitants; for the soil and the population may be separated, and some of the inhabitants may live in one place and some in another. This, however, is not a very serious difficulty; we need only remark that the word 'state' is ambiguous, meaning both state and city.

It is further asked: When are men, living in the same place, to be regarded as a single city—what is the limit? Certainly not the wall of the city, for you might surround all Peloponnesus with a wall. But a city, having such vast circuit, would contain a nation rather than a state, like Babylon*, which, as they say, had been taken for three days before some part of the inhabitants became aware of the fact. This difficulty may, however, with advantage be deferred to another occasion; the statesman has to consider the size of the state, and whether it should consist of more than one nation or not.

Again, shall we say that while the race of inhabitants, as well as their place of abode, remain the same, the city is also the same, although the citizens are always dying and being born, as we call rivers and fountains the same, although the water is always flowing away and coming again? Or shall we say that the generations of men, like the rivers, are the same, but that the state changes? For, since the state is a community and a community is made up of citizens, when the form of the government changes and becomes different, then it may be supposed that the state is no longer the same, just as a tragic differs from a comic chorus, although the members of both may be identical. And in this manner we speak of every union or composition of elements, when the form of their composition alters; for example, harmony of the same sounds is said to be different, accordingly as the Dorian or the Phrygian mode is employed. And if this is true it is evident that the sameness of the state consists chiefly in the sameness of the constitution, and may be called or

---

*a* Cp. ii. 6. § 6.

*b* Cp. vii. c. 4 and c. 5.

---

III. 3. The identity and the unity of a state depend not so much on place,

nor yet on race.
III. 3. not called by the same name, whether the inhabitants are the same or entirely different. It is quite another question, whether a state ought or ought not to fulfil engagements when the form of government changes.

There is a point nearly allied to the preceding: Whether the virtue of a good man and a good citizen is the same or not. But, before entering on this discussion, we must first obtain some general notion of the virtue of the citizen. Like the sailor, the citizen is a member of a community. Now, sailors have different functions, for one of them is a rower, another a pilot, and a third a look-out-man, a fourth is described by some similar term; and while the precise definition of each individual's virtue applies exclusively to him, there is, at the same time, a common definition applicable to them all. For they have all of them a common object, which is safety in navigation. Similarly, one citizen differs from another, but the salvation of the community is the common business of them all. This community is the state; the virtue of the citizen must therefore be relative to the constitution of which he is a member. If, then, there are many forms of government, it is evident that the virtue of the good citizen cannot be the one perfect virtue. But we say that the good man is he who has perfect virtue. Hence it is evident that the good citizen need not of necessity possess the virtue which makes a good man.

The same question may also be approached by another road, from a consideration of the perfect state. If the state cannot be entirely composed of good men, and each citizen is expected to do his own business well, and must therefore have virtue, inasmuch as all the citizens cannot be alike, the virtue of the citizen and of the good man cannot coincide. All must have the virtue of the good citizen —thus, and thus only, can the state be perfect; but they will not have the virtue of a good man, unless we assume that in the good state all the citizens must be good.

---

* Cp. N. Eth. v. 2. § 11.
6 Again, the state may be compared to the living being: as the first elements into which the living being is resolved are soul and body, as the soul is made up of reason and appetite, the family of husband and wife, property of master and slave, so out of all these, as well as other dissimilar elements, the state is composed; and, therefore, the virtue of all the citizens cannot possibly be the same, any more than the excellence of the leader of a chorus is the same as that of the performer who stands by his side. I have said enough to show why the two kinds of virtue cannot be absolutely and always the same.

But will there then be no case in which the virtue of the good citizen and the virtue of the good man coincide? To this we answer [not that the good citizen, but] that the good ruler is a good and wise man, and that he who would be a statesman must be a wise man.

8 And some persons say that even the education of the ruler should be of a special kind; for are not the children of kings instructed in riding and military exercises? As Euripides says:

‘No subtle arts for me, but what the state requires.’

As though there were a special education needed by a ruler. If then the virtue of a good ruler is the same as that of a good man, and we assume further that the subject is a citizen as well as the ruler, the virtue of the good citizen and the virtue of the good man cannot be always the same, although in some cases [i.e. in the perfect state] they may; for the virtue of a ruler differs from that of a citizen. It was the sense of this difference which made Jason say that ‘he felt hungry when he was not a tyrant,’ meaning that he could not endure to live in a private station. But, on the other hand, it may be argued that men are praised for knowing both how to rule and how to obey, and he is said to be a citizen of approved virtue who is able to do both. Now if we suppose the virtue of a good man to be that which rules,

---

* Fragment from the Aeolus, quoted in Stobaeus, 45. 13.
III. 4. and the virtue of the citizen to include ruling and obeying, it cannot be said that they are equally worthy of praise. Seeing, then, that according to common opinion the ruler and the ruled must at some time or other learn the duties of both, but that what they learn is different, and that the citizen must know and share in them both; the inference is obvious. There is, indeed, the rule of a master which is concerned with menial offices,—the master need not know how to perform these, but may employ others in the execution of them: anything else would be degrading; and by anything else I mean the menial duties which vary much in character and are executed by various classes of slaves, such, for example, as handicraftsmen, who, as their name signifies, live by the labour of their hands:—under these the mechanic is included. Hence in ancient times, and among some nations, the working classes had no share in the government—a privilege which they only acquired under the extreme democracy. Certainly the good man and the statesman and the good citizen ought not to learn the crafts of inferiors except for their own occasional use; if they habitually practise them, there will cease to be a distinction between master and slave.

This is not the rule of which we are speaking; but there is a rule of another kind, which is exercised over freemen and equals by birth—a constitutional rule, which the ruler must learn by obeying, as he would learn the duties of a general of cavalry by being under the orders of a general of cavalry, or the duties of a general of infantry by being under the orders of a general of infantry, or by having had the command of a company or brigade. It has been well said that 'he who has never learned to obey cannot be a good commander.' The two are not the same, but the good citizen ought to be capable of both; he should know how to govern like a

—Viz. that some kind of previous subjection is an advantage to the ruler. Cp. infra, § 14.

b Cp. i. 7. §§ 2-5.

• Cp. viii. 2. § 5.
frieman, and how to obey like a freeman—these are the virtues of a citizen. And, although the temperance and justice of a ruler are distinct from those of a subject, the virtue of a good man will include both; for the good man, who is free and also a subject, will not have one virtue only, say justice,—but he will have distinct kinds of virtue, the one qualifying him to rule, the other to obey, and differing as the temperance and courage of men and women differ*. For a man would be thought a coward if he had no more courage than a courageous woman, and a woman would be thought loquacious if she imposed no more restraint on her conversation than the good man; and indeed their part in the management of the household is different, for the duty of the one is to acquire, and of the other to preserve. Practical wisdom only is characteristic of the ruler: it would seem that all other virtues must equally belong to ruler and subject. The virtue of the subject is certainly not wisdom, but only true opinion; he may be compared to the maker of the flute, while his master is like the flute-player or user of the flute.

From these considerations may be gathered the answer to the question, whether the virtue of the good man is the same as that of the good citizen, or different, and how far the same, and how far different.

There still remains one more question about the citizen: Is he only a true citizen who has a share of office, or is the mechanic to be included? If they who hold no office are to be deemed citizens, not every citizen can have this virtue of ruling and obeying which makes a citizen. And if none of the lower class are citizens, in which part of the state are they to be placed? For they are not resident aliens, and they are not foreigners.

* Or, 'for this man (i.e. the meaner sort of man) is a citizen and does not exercise rule' (see below, § 3, εἰ δὲ εἰσὶ ὁδὸς πολίτης). According to the way of taking the passage which is followed in the text, ὁδὸς = ὃς ἐκ νησί τῆς τοιαύτης ἡμετέρῳ: according to the second way, it refers to βαμμανός.
III. 5. To this objection may we not reply, that there is no more absurdity in excluding them than in excluding slaves and freedmen from any of the above-mentioned classes? It must be admitted that we cannot consider all those to be citizens who are necessary to the existence of the state; for example, children are not citizens equally with grown up men, who are citizens absolutely, but children, not being grown up, are only citizens in a qualified sense. Doubtless in ancient times, and among some nations, the artisan class were slaves or foreigners, and therefore the majority of them are so now. The best form of state will not admit them to citizenship; but if they are admitted, then our definition of the virtue of a citizen will apply to some citizens and freedmen only, and not to those who work for their living. The latter class, to whom toil is a necessity, are either slaves who minister to the wants of individuals, or mechanics and labourers who are the servants of the community. These reflections carried a little further will explain their position; and indeed what has been said already is of itself explanation enough.

Since there are many forms of government there must be many varieties of citizens, and especially of citizens who are subjects; so that under some governments the mechanic and the labourer will be citizens, but not in others, as, for example, in aristocracy or the so-called government of the best (if there be such an one), in which honours are given according to virtue and merit; for no man can practise virtue who is living the life of a mechanic or labourer. In oligarchies the qualification for office is high, and therefore no labourer can ever be a citizen; but a mechanic may, for many of them are rich. At Thebes there was a law that no man could hold office who had not retired from business for ten years. In many states the law goes to the length of admitting aliens; for in some democracies a man is a citizen though his mother only be a citizen [and his

\* Cp. vi. 7. § 4.
father an alien]; and a similar principle is applied to 8 illegitimate children; the law is relaxed when there is a dearth of population. But when the number of citizens increases, first the children of a male or a female slave are excluded; then those whose mothers only are citizens; and at last the right of citizenship is confined to those whose fathers and mothers are both citizens.

Hence, as is evident, there are different kinds of citizens; and he is a citizen in the highest sense who shares in the honours of the state. In the poems of Homer [Achilles complains of Agamemnon treating him] 'like some dishonoured stranger,' for he who is excluded from the honours of the state is no better than an alien. But when this exclusion is concealed, then the object is to deceive the inhabitants. As to the question whether the virtue of the good man is the same as that of the good citizen, the considerations already adduced prove that in some states the two are the same, and in others different. When they are the same it is not the virtue of every citizen which is the same as that of the good man, but only the virtue of the statesman and of those who have or may have, alone or in conjunction with others, the conduct of public affairs.

Having determined these questions, we have next to consider whether there is only one form of government or many, and if many, what they are, and how many, and what are the differences between them.

A constitution is the arrangement of magistracies in a state, especially of the highest of all. The government is everywhere sovereign in the state, and the constitution is in fact the government. For example, in democracies the people are supreme, but in oligarchies, the few; and, therefore, we say that these two forms of government are different: and so in other cases.

First, let us consider what is the purpose of a state, and how many forms of government there are by which human society is regulated. We have already said, in

III. 5.

The true citizen shares in the honours of state.

6.

Constitutions vary with the governing power and in relation to the end.

What is the end of the state?
III. 6. the former part of this treatise*, when drawing a distinction between household-management and the rule of a master, that man is by nature a political animal. And therefore, men, even when they do not require one another's help, desire to live together all the same, and are in fact brought together by their common interests in proportion as they severally attain to any measure of well-being. This is certainly the chief end, both of individuals and of states. And also for the sake of mere life (in which there is possibly some noble element) mankind meet together and maintain the political community, so long as the evils of existence do not greatly overbalance the good*. And we all see that men cling to life even in the midst of misfortune, seeming to find in it a natural sweetness and happiness.

There is no difficulty in distinguishing the various kinds of authority; they have been often defined already in popular works*. The rule of a master, although the slave by nature and the master by nature have in reality the same interests, is nevertheless exercised primarily with a view to the interest of the master, but accidentally considers the slave, since, if the slave perish, the rule of the master perishes with him. On the other hand, the government of a wife and children and of a household, which we have called household-management, is exercised in the first instance for the good of the governed or for the common good of both parties, but essentially for the good of the governed, as we see to be the case in medicine, gymnastic, and the arts in general, which are only accidentally concerned with the good of the artists themselves*. (For there is no reason why the trainer may not sometimes practise gymnastics, and the pilot is always one of the crew.) The trainer or the pilot considers the good of those committed to his care. But, when he is one of the persons taken care of, he accidentally participates in the ad-

* Cp. i. 2. §§ 9, 10.
* Or, 'in our popular works.'
vantage, for the pilot is also a sailor, and the trainer becomes one of those in training. And so in politics: when the state is framed upon the principle of equality and likeness, the citizens think that they ought to hold office by turns. In the order of nature every one would take his turn of service; and then again, somebody else would look after his interest, just as he, while in office, had looked after theirs. [That was originally the way.] But now-a-days, for the sake of the advantage which is to be gained from the public revenues and from office, men want to be always in office. One might imagine that the rulers, being sickly, were only kept in health while they continued in office; in that case we may be sure that they would be hunting after places.

The conclusion is evident: that governments, which have a regard to the common interest, are constituted in accordance with strict principles of justice, and are therefore true forms; but those which regard only the interest of the rulers are all defective and perverted forms, for they are despotic, whereas a state is a community of freemen.

Having determined these points, we have next to consider how many forms of government there are, and what they are; and in the first place what are the true forms, for when they are determined the perversions of them will at once be apparent. The words constitution and government have the same meaning, and the government, which is the supreme authority in states, must be in the hands of one, or of a few, or of many. The true forms of government, therefore, are those in which the one, or the few, or the many, govern with a view to the common interest; but governments which rule with a view to the private interest, whether of the one, or of the few, or of the many, are perversions. For citizens, if they are truly citizens, ought to participate in the advantages of a state. Of forms of government in which one rules, we call that which regards the common interests,

---

* Cp. ii. 2. §§ 6, 7.

* Cp. Eth. viii. 10.
III. 7. kingship or royalty; that in which more than one, but not many, rule, aristocracy [the rule of the best]; and it is so called, either because the rulers are the best men, or because they have at heart the best interests of the state and of the citizens. But when the citizens at large administer the state for the common interest, the government is called by the generic name,—a constitution [\(\pi\sigma\lambda\iota\tau\varepsilon\lambda\alpha\)]. And there is a reason for this use of language. One man or a few may excel in virtue; but of virtue 4 there are many kinds: and as the number increases it becomes more difficult for them to attain perfection in\(^{\text{1279b.}}\) every kind, though they may in military virtue, for this is found in the masses. Hence, in a constitutional government the fighting-men have the supreme power, and those who possess arms are the citizens.

Of the above-mentioned forms, the perversions are as follows:—of royalty, tyranny; of aristocracy, oligarchy; of constitutional government, democracy. For tyranny is a kind of monarchy which has in view the interest of the monarch only; oligarchy has in view the interest of the wealthy; democracy, of the needy: none of them the common good of all.

But there are difficulties about these forms of government, and it will therefore be necessary to state a little more at length the nature of each of them. For he who would make a philosophical study of the various sciences, and does not regard practice only, ought not to overlook or omit anything, but to set forth the truth in every particular. Tyranny, as I was saying, is monarchy exercising the rule of a master over political society; oligarchy is when men of property have the government in their hands; democracy, the opposite, when the indigent, and not the men of property, are the rulers. And here arises the first of our difficulties, and it relates to the definition just given. For democracy is said to be the government of the many. But what if the many are men of property and have the power in their hands? In like manner oligarchy is said to be the government
OLIGARCHY AND DEMOCRACY DEFINED.

III. 8. of the few; but what if the poor are fewer than the rich, and have the power in their hands because they are stronger? In these cases the distinction which we have drawn between these different forms of government would no longer hold good.

4 Suppose, once more, that we add wealth to the few and poverty to the many, and name the governments accordingly—an oligarchy is said to be that in which the few and the wealthy, and a democracy that in which the many and the poor are the rulers—there will still be a difficulty. For, if the only forms of government are the ones already mentioned, how shall we describe those other governments also just mentioned by us, in which the rich are the more numerous and the poor are the fewer, and both govern in their respective states?

5 The argument seems to show that, whether in oligarchies or in democracies, the number of the governing body, whether the greater number, as in a democracy, or the smaller number, as in an oligarchy, is an accident due to the fact that the rich everywhere are few, and the poor numerous. But if so, there is a misapprehension of the causes of the difference between them. For the real difference between democracy and oligarchy is

1280a. poverty and wealth. Wherever men rule by reason of their wealth, whether they be few or many, that is an oligarchy, and where the poor rule, that is a democracy. But as a fact the rich are few and the poor many: for few are well-to-do, whereas freedom is enjoyed by all, and wealth and freedom are the grounds on which the oligarchical and democratical parties respectively claim power in the state.

Let us begin by considering the common definitions of oligarchy and democracy, and what is justice oligarchical and democratical. For all men cling to justice of some kind, but their conceptions are imperfect and they do not express the whole idea. For example, justice is thought by them to be, and is, equality, not, however, for all, but only for equals. And inequality is

VOL. I. G
III. 9. thought to be, and is, justice; neither is this for all, but only for unequals. When the persons are omitted, then men judge erroneously. The reason is that they are passing judgment on themselves, and most people are bad judges in their own case. And whereas justice implies a relation to persons as well as to things, and a just distribution, as I have already said in the Ethics*, embraces alike persons and things, they acknowledge the equality of the things, but dispute about the merit of the persons, chiefly for the reason which I have just given,—because they are bad judges in their own affairs; and secondly, because both the parties to the argument are speaking of a limited and partial justice, but imagine themselves to be speaking of absolute justice. For those who are unequal in one respect, for example wealth, consider themselves to be unequal in all; and any who are equal in one respect, for example freedom, consider themselves to be equal in all. But they leave out the capital point. For if men met and associated out of regard to wealth only, their share in the state would be proportioned to their property, and the oligarchical doctrine would then seem to carry the day. It would not be just that he who paid one mina should have the same share of a hundred minae, whether of the principal or of the profitsb, as he who paid the remaining ninety-nine. But a state exists for the sake of a good life, and not for the sake of life only: if life only were the object, slaves and brute animals might form a state, but they cannot, for they have no share in happiness or in a life of free choice. Nor does a state exist for the sake of alliance and security from injusticec, nor yet for the sake of exchange and mutual intercourse; for then the Tyrrenrians and the Carthaginians, and all who have commercial treaties with one another, would be the citizens of one state. True, they have agreements about

* Or, with Bernays, 'either in the case of the original contributors or their successors.'
* Cp. c. 1. § 4.
imports, and engagements that they will do no wrong to one another, and written articles of alliance. But 1280b. there are no magistracies common to the contracting parties who will enforce their engagements; different states have each their own magistracies. Nor does one state take care that the citizens of the other are such as they ought to be, nor see that those who come under the terms of the treaty do no wrong or wickedness at all, but only that they do no injustice to one another.

Whereas, those who care for good government take into consideration [the larger question of] virtue and vice in states. Whence it may be further inferred that virtue must be the serious care of a state which truly deserves the name: for [without this ethical end] the community becomes a mere alliance which differs only in place from alliances of which the members live apart; and law is only a convention, 'a surety to one another of justice,' as the sophist Lycophron says, and has no real power to make the citizens good and just.

This is obvious; for suppose distinct places, such as Corinth and Megara, to be united by a wall, still they would not be one city, not even if the citizens had the right to intermarry, which is one of the rights peculiarly characteristic of states. Again, if men dwelt at a distance from one another, but not so far off as to have no intercourse, and there were laws among them that they should not wrong each other in their exchanges, neither would this be a state. Let us suppose that one man is a carpenter, another a husbandman, another a shoemaker, and so on, and that their number is ten thousand: nevertheless, if they have nothing in common but exchange, alliance, and the like, that would not constitute a state. Why is this? Surely not because they are at a distance from one another: for even supposing that such a community were to meet in one place, and that each man had a house of his own, which was

* Or, 'virtue must be the care of a state which is truly so called, and not merely in name.'
III. 9. in a manner his state, and that they made alliance with one another, but only against evil-doers; still an accurate thinker would not deem this to be a state, if their intercourse with one another was of the same character after as before their union. It is clear then that a state is not a mere society, having a common place, established for the prevention of crime and for the sake of exchange. These are conditions without which a state cannot exist; but all of them together do not constitute a state, which is a community of well-being in families and aggregations of families, for the sake of a perfect and self-sufficing life. Such a community can only be established among those who live in the same place and intermarry. Hence arise in cities family connections, brotherhoods, common sacrifices, amusements which draw men together. They are created by friendship, for friendship is the motive of society. The end is the good life, and these are the means towards it. And the state is the union of families and villages having for an end a perfect and self-sufficing life, by which we mean a happy and honourable life.

Our conclusion, then, is that political society exists for the sake of noble actions, and not of mere companionship. And they who contribute most to such a society have a greater share in it than those who have the same or a greater freedom or nobility of birth but are inferior to them in political virtue; or than those who exceed them in wealth but are surpassed by them in virtue.

From what has been said it will be clearly seen that all the partisans of different forms of government speak of a part of justice only.

There is also a doubt as to what is to be the supreme power in the state:—Is it the multitude? Or the wealthy? Or the good? Or the one best man? Or a tyrant? Any of these alternatives seems to involve disagreeable consequences. If the poor, for example,

---

* Cp. i. 2. § 8 ; N. Eth. i. 7. § 6.
because they are more in number, divide among themselves the property of the rich,—is not this unjust? No, by heaven (will be the reply), for the lawful authority [i.e. the people] willed it. But if this is not injustice, pray what is? Again, when [in the first division] all has been taken, and the majority divide anew the property of the minority, is it not evident, if this goes on, that they will ruin the state? Yet surely, virtue is not the ruin of those who possess her, nor is justice destructive of a state; and therefore this law of confiscation clearly cannot be just. If it were, all the acts of a tyrant must of necessity be just; for he only coerces other men by superior power, just as the multitude coerce the rich. But is it just then that the few and the wealthy should be the rulers? And what if they, in like manner, rob and plunder the people,—is this just? If so, the other case [i.e. the case of the majority plundering the minority] will likewise be just. But there can be no doubt that all these things are wrong and unjust.

Then ought the good to rule and have supreme power? But in that case everybody else, being excluded from power, will be dishonoured. For the offices of a state are posts of honour; and if one set of men always hold them, the rest must be deprived of them. Then will it be well that the one best man should rule? Nay, that is still more oligarchical, for the number of those who are dishonoured is thereby increased. Some one may say that it is bad for a man, subject as he is to all the accidents of human passion, to have the supreme power, rather than the law. But what if the law itself be democratical or oligarchical, how will that help us out of our difficulties? Not at all; the same consequences will follow.

Most of these questions may be reserved for another occasion. The principle that the multitude ought to be supreme rather than the few best is capable of a satis-

---

b Cp. c. 11. § 20.
III. 11. factory explanation, and, though not free from difficulty, yet seems to contain an element of truth. For the many, of whom each individual is but an ordinary person, when they meet together may very likely be better than the few good, if regarded not individually but collectively, just as a feast to which many contribute is better than a dinner provided out of a single purse. For each individual among the many has a share of virtue and prudence, and when they meet together they become in a manner one man, who has many feet, and hands, and senses; that is a figure of their mind and disposition. Hence the many are better judges than a single man of music and poetry; for some understand one part, and some another, and among them, they understand the whole. There is a similar combination of qualities in good men, who differ from any individual of the many, as the beautiful are said to differ from those who are not beautiful, and works of art from realities, because in them the scattered elements are combined, although, if taken separately, the eye of one person or some other feature in another person would be fairer than in the picture. Whether this principle can apply to every democracy, and to all bodies of men, is not clear. Or rather, by heaven, in some cases it is impossible of application; for the argument would equally hold about brutes; and wherein, it will be asked, do some men differ from brutes? But there may be bodies of men about whom our statement is nevertheless true. And if so, the difficulty which has been already raised, and also another which is akin to it—viz. what power should be assigned to the mass of freemen and citizens, who are not rich and have no personal merit—are both solved. There is still a danger in allowing them to share the great offices of state, for their folly will lead them into error, and their dishonesty into crime. But there is a danger also in not letting them share, for a state in which many poor men are excluded from office will necessarily be full of enemies. The only way of escape is to assign to them
some deliberative and judicial functions. For this reason Solon* and certain other legislators give them the power of electing to offices, and of calling the magistrates to account, but they do not allow them to hold office singly. When they meet together their perceptions are quite good enough, and combined with the better class they are useful to the state (just as impure food when mixed with what is pure sometimes makes the entire mass more wholesome than a small quantity of the pure would be), but each individual, left to himself, forms an imperfect judgment. On the other hand, the popular form of government involves certain difficulties. In the first place, it might be objected that he who can judge of the healing of a sick man would be one who could himself heal his disease, and make him whole—

that is, in other words, the physician; and so in all professions and arts. As, then, the physician ought to be called to account by physicians, so ought men in general to be called to account by their peers. But physicians are of three kinds:—there is the apothecary, and there is the physician of the higher class, and thirdly the intelligent man who has studied the art: in all arts there is such a class; and we attribute the power of judging to them quite as much as to professors of the art. Now, does not the same principle apply to elections? For a right election can only be made by those who have knowledge; a geometrical, for example, will choose rightly in matters of geometry, or a pilot in matters of steering; and, even if there be some occupations and arts with which private persons are familiar, they certainly cannot judge better than those who know. So that, according to this argument, neither the election of magistrates, nor the calling of them to account, should be intrusted to the many. Yet possibly these objections are to a great extent met by our old answer, that if the people are not utterly degraded, although individually they may be worse

* Cp. ii. 12. § 5.
III. 11. judges than those who have special knowledge—as a
body they are as good or better. Moreover, there are
some artists whose works are judged of solely, or in the
best manner, not by themselves, but by those who do
not possess the art; for example, the knowledge of the
house is not limited to the builder only; the user, or, in
other words, the master, of the house will even be a
better judge than the builder, just as the pilot will judge
better of a rudder than the carpenter, and the guest will
judge better of a feast than the cook.

This difficulty seems now to be sufficiently answered, 15
but there is another akin to it. That inferior persons
should have authority in greater matters than the good
would appear to be a strange thing, yet the election and
calling to account of the magistrates is the greatest of
all. And these, as I was saying, are functions which in
some states are assigned to the people, for the assembly
is supreme in all such matters. Yet persons of any age, 16
and having but a small property qualification, sit in the
assembly and deliberate and judge, although for the
great officers of state, such as controllers and generals,
a high qualification is required. This difficulty may be
solved in the same manner as the preceding, and the
present practice of democracies may be really defensible. 17
For the power does not reside in the dicast, or senator,
or ecclesiast, but in the court and the senate, and the
assembly, of which individual senators, or ecclesiasts,
or dicasts, are only parts or members. And for this 18
reason the many may claim to have a higher autho-
"rity than the few; for the people, and the senate, and
the courts consist of many persons, and their property
collectively is greater than the property of one or of a few
individuals holding great offices. But enough of this.

The discussion of the first question 19 shows nothing so
clearly as that laws, when good, should be supreme; and
that the magistrate or magistrates should regulate those
matters only on which the laws are unable to speak with

* Cp. c. 10. § 1.
precision owing to the difficulty of any general principle embracing all particulars. But what are good laws has not yet been clearly explained; the old difficulty remains. The goodness or badness, justice or injustice, of laws is of necessity relative to the constitutions of states. But if so, true forms of government will of necessity have just laws, and perverted forms of government will have unjust laws.

In all sciences and arts the end is a good, and especially and above all in the highest of all—is this the political science of which the good is justice, in other words, the common interest. All men think justice to be a sort of equality; and to a certain extent they agree in the philosophical distinctions which have been laid down by us about Ethics. For they admit that justice is a thing having relation to persons, and that equals ought to have equality. But there still remains a question; equality or inequality of what? here is a difficulty which the political philosopher has to resolve. For very likely some persons will say that offices of state ought to be unequally distributed according to superior excellence, in whatever respect, of the citizen, although there is no other difference between him and the rest of the community; for that those who differ in any one respect have different rights and claims. But, surely, if this is true, the complexion or height of a man, or any other advantage, will be a reason for his obtaining a greater share of political rights. The error here lies upon the surface, and may be illustrated from the other arts and sciences. When a number of flute-players are equal in their art, there is no reason why those of them who are better born should have better flutes given to them; for they will not play any better on the flute, and the superior instrument should be reserved for him who is the superior artist. If what I am saying is still obscure, it will be made clearer as we proceed. For if there were

---

*a* Cp. N. Eth. v. 10. § 4.  
*b* Cp. c. 10. § 5.  
*c* Cp. i. 1. § 1; N. Eth. i. 1. § 1.  
*d* Cp. c. 9. § 1.  
*e* Cp. N. Eth. v. 3.
III. 12. a superior flute-player who was far inferior in birth and beauty, although either of these may be a greater good than the art of flute-playing, and persons gifted with these qualities may excel the flute-player in a greater ratio than he excels them in his art, still he ought to have the best flutes given to him, unless the advantages of wealth and birth contribute to excellence in flute-playing, which they do not. Moreover upon this principle any good may be compared with any other. For if a given height, then height in general may be measured either against height or against freedom. Thus if A excels in height more than B in virtue, and height in general is more excellent than virtue, all things will be commensurable [which is absurd]; for if a certain magnitude is greater than some other, it is clear that some other will be equal. But since no such comparison can be made, it is evident that there is good reason why in politics men do not ground their claim to office on every sort of inequality any more than in the arts. For if some be slow, and others swift, that is no reason why the one should have little and the others much; it is in gymnastic contests that such excellence is rewarded. Whereas the rival claims of candidates for office can only be based on the possession of elements which enter into the composition of a state, [such as wealth, virtue, etc.] And therefore the noble, or free-born, or rich, may with good reason claim office; for holders of offices must be freemen and tax-payers: a state can be no more composed entirely of poor men than entirely of slaves. But if wealth and freedom are necessary elements, justice and valour are equally so; for without the former a state cannot exist at all, without the latter not well.

13. If the existence of the state is alone to be considered, then it would seem that all, or some at least, of these claims are just; but, if we take into account a good life, as I have already said, education and virtue have

a Cp. iv. §§ 12-16.  
b Cp. c. 9. §§ 14, 15.
TO SOVEREIGN POWER. 91

superior claims. As, however, those who are equal in III. 13.

one thing ought not to be equal in all, nor those who

are unequal in one thing to be unequal in all, it is
certain that all forms of government which rest on either

of these principles are perversions. All men have a claim

in a certain sense, as I have already admitted, but they

have not an absolute claim. The rich claim because they

have a greater share in the land, and land is the common

element of the state; also they are generally more

trustworthy in contracts. The free claim under the same of birth,
title as the noble; for they are nearly akin. And the

noble are citizens in a truer sense than the ignoble,
since good birth is always valued in a man's own home.

and country*. Another reason is, that those who are

sprung from better ancestors are likely to be better

men, for nobility is excellence of race. Virtue, too, may of virtue,
be truly said to have a claim, for justice has been ac-

knowledged by us to be a social b virtue, and it implies

all others c. Again, the many may urge their claim of numbers.

against the few; for, when taken collectively, and com-
pared with the few, they are stronger and richer and

better. But, what if the good, the rich, the noble, and the other classes who make up a state, are all living together in the same city, will there, or will there

not, be any doubt who shall rule?—No doubt at all in determining who ought to rule in each of the above-
mentioned forms of government. For states are char-

acterized by differences in their governing bodies—one of them has a government of the rich, another of the

virtuous, and so on. But a difficulty arises when all these

elements coexist. How are we to decide? Suppose the virtuous to be very few in number: may we consider their numbers in relation to their duties, and ask whether they are enough to administer the state, or must they be so many as will make up a state? Objections may be

urged against all the aspirants to political power. For

those who found their claims on wealth or family have

* Cp. i. 6. § 7.  b Cp. i. 2. § 16.  c Cp. N. Eth. v. i. § 15.
III. 13. no basis of justice; on this principle, if any one person
were richer than all the rest, it is clear that he ought to
be the ruler of them. In like manner he who is very
distinguished by his birth ought to have the superiority
over all those who claim on the ground that they are
freeborn. In an aristocracy, or government of the best, a
like difficulty occurs about virtue; for if one citizen be
better than the other members of the government, how-
ever good they may be, he too, upon the same principle
of justice, should rule over them. And if the people are
to be supreme because they are stronger than the few,
them if one man, or more than one, but not a majority, is
stronger than the many, they ought to rule, and not the
many.

All these considerations appear to show that none of
the principles on which men claim to rule, and hold all
other men in subjection to them, are strictly right. To
those who claim to be masters of the state on the ground
of their virtue or their wealth, the many might fairly
answer that they themselves are often better and richer
than the few—I do not say individually, but collectively.
And another ingenious objection which is sometimes put
forward may be met in a similar manner. Some persons
doubt whether the legislator who desires to make the
justest laws ought to legislate with a view to the good of
the higher classes or of the many, when the case which
we have mentioned occurs [i.e. when all the elements
cocxist$. Now what is just or right is to be inter-
pred in the sense of ‘what is equal;‘ and that which is
right in the sense of being equal is to be considered with
reference to the advantage of the state, and the common
good of the citizens. And a citizen is one who shares in
governing and being governed. He differs under different
forms of government, but in the best state he is one
who is able and willing to be governed and to govern
with a view to the life of virtue.

$ Cp. § 4.
If, however, there be some one person, or more than one, although not enough to make up the full complement of a state, whose virtue is so preeminent that the virtues or the political power of all the rest admit of no comparison with his or theirs, he or they can be no longer regarded as part of a state; for justice will not be done to the superior, if he is reckoned only as the equal of those who are so far inferior to him in virtue and in political power. Such an one may truly be deemed a God among men. Hence we see that legislation is necessarily concerned only with those who are equal in birth and in power; and that for men of preeminent virtue there is no law—they are themselves a law. Any one would be ridiculous who attempted to make laws for them: they would probably retort what, in the fable of Antisthenes, the lions said to the hares ["where are your claws?"], when in the council of the beasts the latter began haranguing and claiming equality for all. And for this reason democratic states have instituted ostracism; equality is above all things their aim, and therefore they ostracise and banish from the city for a time those who seem to predominate too much through their wealth, or the number of their friends, or through any other political influence. Mythology tells us that the Argonauts left Heracles behind for a similar reason; the ship Argo would not take him because she feared that he would have been too much for the rest of the crew. Wherefore those who denounce tyranny and blame the counsel which Periander gave to Thrasybulus cannot be held altogether just in their censure. The story is that Periander, when the herald was sent to ask counsel of him, said nothing, but only cut off the tallest ears of corn till he had brought the field to a level. The herald did not know the meaning of the action, but came and reported what he had seen to Thrasybulus, who understood that he was to cut off the principal men in the state*; and this is a policy not only expedient for

* Cp. v. 10. § 13.
III. 13. tyrants or in practice confined to them, but equally necessary in oligarchies and democracies. Ostracism* is a measure of the same kind, which acts by disabling and banishing the most prominent citizens. Great powers do the same to whole cities and nations, as the Athenians did to the Samians. Chians, and Lesbians; no sooner had they obtained a firm grasp of the empire, than they humbled their allies contrary to treaty; and the Persian king has repeatedly crushed the Medes, Babylonians, and other nations, when their spirit has been stirred by the recollection of their former greatness.

The problem is a universal one, and equally concerns all forms of government, true as well as false; for, although perverted forms with a view to their own interests may adopt this policy, those which seek the common interest do so likewise. The same thing may be observed in the arts and sciences; for the painter will not allow the figure to have a foot which, however beautiful, is not in proportion, nor will the ship-builder allow the stern or any other part of the vessel to be unduly large, any more than the chorus-master will allow any one who sings louder or better than all the rest to sing in the choir. *Monarchs, too, may practise compulsion and still live in harmony with their cities, if their government is for the interest of the state. Hence where there is an acknowledged superiority the argument in favour of ostracism is based upon a kind of political justice. It would certainly be better that the legislator should from the first so order his state as to have no need of such a remedy. But if the need arises, the next best thing is that he should endeavour to correct the evil by this or some similar measure. The principle, however, has not been fairly applied in states; for, instead of looking to the public good, they have used ostracism for

* Cp. v. 3. § 3.
† Cp. v. 3. § 6; 9. § 7; vii. 4. 10; Rep. iv. 420.
* Or, 'Monarchies do not differ in this respect (i.e. the employment of compulsion) from free states, but their government must be,' etc.
factious purposes. It is true that under perverted forms of government, and from their special point of view, such a measure is just and expedient, but it is also clear that it is not absolutely just. In the perfect state there would be great doubts about the use of it, not when applied to excess in strength, wealth, popularity, or the like, but when used against some one who is preeminent in virtue,—what is to be done with him? Mankind will not say that such an one is to be expelled and exiled; on the other hand, he ought not to be a subject—that would be as if in the division of the empire of the Gods the other Gods should claim to rule over Zeus. The only alternative is that all should joyfully obey such a ruler, according to what seems to be the order of nature, and that men like him should be kings in their state for life.

The preceding discussion, by a natural transition, leads to the consideration of royalty, which we admit to be one of the true forms of government. Let us see whether in order to be well governed a state or country should be under the rule of a king or under some other form of government; and whether monarchy, although good for some, may not be bad for others. But first we must determine whether there is one species of royalty or many. It is easy to see that there are many, and that the manner of government is not the same in all of them.

Of royalties according to law, the Lacedaemonian is thought to answer best to the true pattern; but there the royal power is not absolute, except when the kings go on an expedition, and then they take the command. Matters of religion are likewise committed to them.

The kingly office is in truth a kind of generalship, irresponsible and perpetual. The king has not the power of life and death, except when upon a campaign and in

---

* Or, 'as if in the division of offices among the citizens, mankind,' etc. Or, with Bernays, 'as if in accordance with the principle of rotation in succession to offices, mankind,' etc.  
** ii. 9. § 29. 
---

* Omitting ἐν τιν βασιλείᾳ, which is bracketed by Bekker in his 2nd edit.
III. 14. the field; after the manner of the ancients which is described in Homer. For Agamemnon is patient when he is attacked in the assembly, but when the army goes out to battle he has the power even of life and death. Does he not say?—

'When I find a man skulking apart from the battle, nothing shall save him from the dogs and vultures, for in my hands is death.'

This, then, is one form of royalty—a generalship for life: and of such royalties some are hereditary and others elective.

(2) There is another sort of monarchy not uncommon among the barbarians, which nearly resembles tyranny. But even this is legal and hereditary. For barbarians, being more servile in character than Hellenes, and Asiatics than Europeans, do not rebel against a despotic government. Such royalties have the nature of tyrannies because the people are by nature slaves; but there is no danger of their being overthrown, for they are hereditary and legal. Wherefore also their guards are such as a king and not such as a tyrant would employ, that is to say, they are composed of citizens, whereas the guards of tyrants are mercenaries. For kings rule according to law over voluntary subjects, but tyrants over involuntary; and the one are guarded by their fellow-citizens, the others are guarded against them.

These are two forms of monarchy, and there was a third (3) which existed in ancient Hellas, called an Aesymnetia or dictatorship. This may be defined generally as an elective tyranny, which, like the barbarian monarchy, is legal, but differs from it in not being hereditary. Sometimes the office is held for life, sometimes for a term of years, or until certain duties have been performed. For example, the Mitylenaeans elected Pittacus leader against the exiles, who were headed by Antimenes and Alcaeus the poet. And Alcaeus himself says:

---

* 11. ii. 391–393. The last clause is not found in our Homer.

b Cp. i. 2. § 4.

c Cp. v. 10. § 10.
in one of his *irregular songs*, 'They chose Pittacus III. 14. tyrant,' and he reproaches his fellow-citizens for 'having made the low-born Pittacus tyrant of the spiritless and ill-fated city, with one voice shouting his praises.'

11 These forms of government have always had the character of despotism, because they possess tyrannical power; but inasmuch as they are elective and acquiesced in by their subjects, they are kingy.

(4) There is a fourth species of kingly rule—that of the heroic times—which was hereditary and legal, and was exercised over willing subjects. For the first chiefs were benefactors of the people in arts or arms; they either gathered them into a community, or procured land for them; and thus they became kings of voluntary subjects, and their power was inherited by their descendants. They took the command in war and presided over the sacrifices, except those which required a priest. They also decided causes either with or without an oath; and when they swore, the form of the oath was the stretching out of their sceptre. In ancient times their power extended to all things whatsoever, in city and country, as well as in foreign parts; but at a later date they relinquished several of these privileges, and others the people took from them, until in some states nothing was left to them but the sacrifices; and where they retained more of the reality they had only the right of leadership in war beyond the border.

13 These, then, are the four kinds of royalty. First the monarchy of the heroic ages; this was exercised over voluntary subjects, but limited to certain functions; the king was a general and a judge, and had the control of religion. The second is that of the barbarians, which is an hereditary despotic government in accordance with law. A third is the power of the so-called Aesymnete or Dictator; this is an elective tyranny. The fourth is the Lacedaemonian, which is in fact a generalship,

* Or, 'banquet-odes,' σαλία.

VOL. I. 11

Cp. v. c. 10. § 3.
III. 14. hereditary and perpetual. These four forms differ from one another in the manner which I have described.

There is a fifth form of kingly rule in which one has the disposal of all, just as each tribe or each state has the disposal of the public property; this form corresponds to the control of a household. For as household management is the kingly rule of a house, so kingly rule is the household management of a city, or of a nation, or of many nations.

Of these forms we need only consider two, the Lacedaemonian and the absolute royalty; for most of the others lie in a region between them, having less power than the last, and more than the first. Thus the enquiry is reduced to two points: first, is it advantageous to the state that there should be a perpetual general, and if so, should the office be confined to one family, or open to the citizens in turn? Secondly, is it well that a single man should have the supreme power in all things?

The first question falls under the head of laws rather than of constitutions; for perpetual generalship might equally exist under any form of government, so that this matter may be dismissed for the present. The other kind of royalty is a sort of constitution; this we have now to consider, and briefly to run over the difficulties involved in it. We will begin by enquiring whether it is more advantageous to be ruled by the best man or by the best laws.

The advocates of royalty maintain that the laws speak only in general terms, and cannot provide for circumstances; and that for any science to abide by written rules is absurd. Even in Egypt the physician is allowed to alter his treatment after the fourth day, but if sooner, he takes the risk. Hence it is argued that a government acting according to written laws is plainly not the best. Yet surely the ruler cannot dispense with the general principle which exists in law; and he is a better

ruler who is free from passion than he who is passionate. III. 15.
Whereas the law is passionless, passion must ever sway the heart of man.

6 Yes, some one will answer, but then on the other hand an individual will be better able to advise in particular cases. [To whom we in turn make reply:] A king must legislate, and laws must be passed, but these laws will have no authority when they miss the mark, though in all other cases retaining their authority. [Yet a further question remains behind:] When the law cannot determine a point at all, or not well, should the one best man or should all decide? According to our present practice assemblies meet, sit in judgment, deliberate and decide, and their judgments all relate to individual cases. Now any member of the assembly, taken separately, is certainly inferior to the wise man. But the state is made up of many individuals. And as a feast to which all the guests contribute is better than a banquet furnished by a single man, so a multitude is a better judge of many things than any individual.

7 Again, the many are more incorruptible than the few; they are like the greater quantity of water which is less easily corrupted than a little. The individual is liable to be overcome by anger or by some other passion, and then his judgment is necessarily perverted; but it is hardly to be supposed that a great number of persons would all get into a passion and go wrong at the same moment.

8 Let us assume that they are freemen, never acting in violation of the law, but filling up the gaps which the law is obliged to leave. Or, if such virtue is scarcely attainable by the multitude, we need only suppose that the majority are good men and good citizens, and ask which will be the more incorruptible, the one good ruler, or the many who are all good? Will not the many?

But, you will say, there may be parties among them, whereas the one man is not divided against himself. To

* Cp. supra, c. 11. § 2.
III. 15. which we may answer that their character is as good as his. If we call the rule of many men, who are all of them good, aristocracy, and the rule of one man royalty, then aristocracy will be better for states than royalty, whether the government is supported by force or not, provided only that a number of men equal in virtue can be found.

The first governments were kingships, probably for this reason, because of old, when cities were small, men of eminent virtue were few. They were made kings because they were benefactors, and benefits can only be bestowed by good men. But when many persons equal in merit arose, no longer enduring the pre-eminence of one, they desired to have a commonwealth, and set up a constitution. The ruling class soon deteriorated and enriched themselves out of the public treasury; riches became the path to honour, and so oligarchies naturally grew up. These passed into tyrannies and tyrannies into democracies; for love of gain in the ruling classes was always tending to diminish their number, and so to strengthen the masses, who in the end set upon their masters and established democracies. Since cities have increased in size, no other form of government appears to be any longer possible.

Even supposing the principle to be maintained that kingly power is the best thing for states, how about the family of the king? Are his children to succeed him? If they are no better than anybody else, that will be mischievous. But [says the lover of royalty] the king, though he might, will not hand on his power to his children. That, however, is hardly to be expected, and is too much to ask of human nature. There is also a difficulty about the force which he is to employ; should a king have guards about him by whose aid he may be able to coerce the refractory? but if not, how will he administer his kingdom? Even if he be the lawful

\footnote{a} Cp. infra, § 15.  \footnote{b} Cp. c. 14. § 12.  \footnote{c} Cp. iv. 6. § 5; 13. § 10.
sovereign who does nothing arbitrarily or contrary to law, still he must have some force wherewith to maintain the law. In the case of a limited monarchy there is not much difficulty in answering this question; the king must have such force as will be more than a match for one or more individuals, but not so great as that of the people. The ancients observed this principle when they gave the guards to any one whom they appointed dictator or tyrant. Thus, when Dionysius asked the Syracusans to allow him guards, somebody advised that they should give him only a certain number.

At this place in the discussion naturally follows the enquiry respecting the king who acts solely according to his own will; he has now to be considered. The so-called limited monarchy, or kingship according to law, as I have already remarked, is not a distinct form of government, for under all governments, as, for example, in a democracy or aristocracy, there may be a general holding office for life, and one person is often made supreme over the administration of a state. A magistracy of this kind exists at Epidamnus, and also at Opus, but in the latter city has a more limited power. Now, absolute monarchy, or the arbitrary rule of a sovereign over all the citizens, in a city which consists of equals, is thought by some to be quite contrary to nature; it is argued that those who are by nature equals must have the same natural right and worth, and that for unequals to have an equal share, or for equals to have an unequal share, in the offices of state, is as bad as for different bodily constitutions to have the same food and clothing or the same different. Wherefore it is thought to be just that among equals every one be ruled as well as rule, and that all should have their turn. We thus arrive at law; for an order of succession implies law. And the rule of the law is preferable to that of any individual. On the same principle, even if it be better for certain individuals to govern, they should be made only guardians and ministers.

Yes; but be must not be too powerful.

The royalty of Sparta is only a life general-ship, which may be found in any kind of state.

But absolute monarchy is often thought to be contrary to nature.

Equals should be under the impersonal rule of law.

---

*a* Cp. c. 15. § 2.  
*b* Cp. v. 1. §§ 10, 11; 4. § 7.
III. 16. of the law. For magistrates there must be,—this is admitted; but then men say that to give authority to any one man when all are equal is unjust. There may indeed be cases which the law seems unable to determine, but in such cases can a man? Nay, it will be replied, 5 the law trains officers for this express purpose, and appoints them to determine matters which are left undecided by it to the best of their judgment. Further it permits them to make any amendment of the existing laws which experience suggests. [But still they are only the ministers of the law.] He who bids the law rule, may be deemed to bid God and Reason alone rule, but he who bids man rule adds an element of the beast; for desire is a wild beast, and passion perverts the minds of rulers, even when they are the best of men. The law is reason unaffected by desire. We are 6 told that a patient should call in a physician; he will not get better if he is doctored out of a book. But the 7 parallel of the arts is clearly not in point; for the physician does nothing contrary to reason from motives of friendship; he only cures a patient and takes a fee; whereas magistrates do many things from spite and partiality. And, indeed, if a man suspected the physician of being in league with his enemies to destroy him for a bribe, he would rather have recourse to the book. Even physicians when they are sick, call in other physicians, and training-masters when they are in training, other training-masters, as if they could not judge truly about their own case and might be influenced by their feelings. Hence it is evident that in seeking for justice men seek for the mean or neutral, and the law is the mean. Again, customary laws have more weight; and relate to more important matters, than written laws, and a man may be a safer ruler than the written law, but not safer than the customary law.

Again, it is by no means easy for one man to super-

* Cp. N. Eth. v. 4. § 7.
intend many things; he will have to appoint a number of subordinates, and what difference does it make whether these subordinates always existed or were appointed by him because he needed them? If, as I said before, the good man has a right to rule because he is better, then two good men are better than one: this is the old saying,—

\[\text{two going together};\]

and the prayer of Agamemnon,—

\[\text{would that I had ten such counsellors!}\]

And at this day there are some magistrates, for example judges, who have authority to decide matters which the law is unable to determine, since no one doubts that the law would command and decide in the best manner whatever it could. But some things can, and other things cannot, be comprehended under the law, and this is the origin of the vexed question whether the best law or the best man should rule. For matters of detail about which men deliberate cannot be included in legislation. Nor does any one deny that the decision of such matters must be left to man, but it is argued that there should be many judges, and not one only. For every ruler who has been trained by the law judges well; and it would surely seem strange that a person should see better with two eyes, or hear better with two ears, or act better with two hands or feet, than many with many; indeed, it is already the practice of kings to make to themselves many eyes and ears and hands and feet. For they make colleagues of those who are the friends of themselves and their governments. They must be friends of the monarch and of his government; if not his friends, they will not do what he wants; but friendship implies likeness and equality; and, therefore, if he thinks that friends ought to rule, he must think that those who are equal to himself and

\[\text{Cp. c. 13. § 25.} \quad \text{II. x. 224.} \quad \text{II. ii. 372.} \quad \text{δ ἔνσαντι.} \quad \text{Cp. for similar arguments c. 15. § 9.}\]
III. 16. like himself ought to rule. These are the principal controversies relating to monarchy.

But may not all this be true in some cases and not in others? for there is a natural justice and expediency in the relation of a master to his servants, or, again, of a king to his subjects, as also in the relation of free citizens to one another; whereas there is no such justice or expediency in a tyranny, or in any other perverted form of government, which comes into being contrary to nature. Now, from what has been said, it is manifest that, where men are alike and equal, it is neither expedient nor just that one man should be lord of all, whether there are laws, or whether there are no laws, but he himself is in the place of law. Neither should a good man be lord over good men, or a bad man over bad; nor, even if he excels in virtue, should he have a right to rule, unless in a particular case, which I have already mentioned, and to which I will once more recur. But first of all, I must determine what natures are suited for royalties, and what for an aristocracy, and what for a constitutional government.

A people who are by nature capable of producing a race superior in virtue and political talent are fitted for kingly government; and a people submitting to be ruled as freemen by men whose virtue renders them capable of political command are adapted for an aristocracy: while the people who are suited for constitutional freedom, are those among whom there naturally exists a warlike multitude able to rule and to obey in turn by a law which gives office to the well-to-do according to their

---

*a* Or: 'for there are men who are by nature fitted to be ruled by a master, others to be ruled by a king, others to live under a constitutional government, and for whom these several relations are just and expedient; but there are no men naturally fitted to be ruled by a tyrant,' etc.

*b* C. 13. § 25, and § 5, infra.

*c* Omitting the words πληθυς δ ἐφυκε διψαντων, which appear to be a repetition from the previous clause.

*d* Omitting καὶ ἐν.

---
5 desert. But when a whole family, or some individual, happens to be so pre-eminent in virtue as to surpass all others, then it is just that they should be the royal family and supreme over all, or that this one citizen should be king of the whole nation. For, as I said before, to give them authority is not only agreeable to that ground of right which the founders of all states, whether aristocratical, or oligarchical, or again democratical, are accustomed to put forward; (for these all recognize the claim of excellence, although not the same excellence), but accords with the principle already laid down. For it would not be right to kill, or ostracise, or exile such a person, or require that he should take his turn in being governed. The whole is naturally superior to the part, and he who has this pre-eminence is in the relation of a whole to a part. But if so, the only alternative is that he should have the supreme power, and that mankind should obey him, not in turn, but always. These are the conclusions at which we arrive respecting royalty and its various forms, and this is the answer to the question, whether it is or is not advantageous to states, and to whom, and how.

We maintain that the true forms of government are three, and that the best must be that which is administered by the best, and in which there is one man, or a whole family, or many persons, excelling in virtue, and both rulers and subjects are fitted, the one to rule, the others to be ruled, in such a manner as to attain the most eligible life. We showed at the commencement of our enquiry that the virtue of the good man is necessarily the same as the virtue of the citizen of the perfect state. Clearly then in the same manner, and by the same means through which a man becomes truly good, he will frame a state [which will be truly good] whether aristocratical,

---

*a* Cp. c. 9. § 15.
*Or:* 'but differing in the manner already laid down.'
*e* Omitting ιαί δημοσίου, which is inserted, without MS. authority, in Bekker's 2nd edit.
*d* Cp. c. 4.
III. 18. or under kingly rule, and the same education and the same habits will be found to make a good man and a good statesman and king.

Having arrived at these conclusions, we must proceed to speak of the perfect state, and describe how it comes into being and is established. He who would proceed with the enquiry in due manner. . . . .

* Retaining the words of the MSS, Ἀνέγγι τὴν μελλοντα περί αυτῆς ποιήσασθαι τὴν προσήκοντα σκέψιν, which are omitted by Bekker in his 2nd edit.
BOOK IV.

In all arts and sciences which embrace the whole of any subject, and are not restricted to a part only, it is the province of a single art or science to consider all that appertains to a single subject. For example, the art of gymnastic considers not only the suitableness of different modes of training to different bodies (2), but what sort is absolutely the best (1); (for the absolutely best must suit that which is by nature best and best furnished with the means of life), and also what common form of training is adapted to the great majority of men (4). And if a man does not desire the best habit of body or the greatest skill in gymnastics, which might be attained by him, still the trainer or the teacher of gymnastic should be able to impart any lower degree of either (3). The same principle equally holds in medicine and ship-building, and the making of clothes, and in the arts generally.

Hence it is obvious that government too is the subject of a single science, which has to consider what kind of government would be best and most in accordance with our aspirations, if there were no external impediment, and also what kind of government is adapted to particular states. For the best is often unattainable, and therefore the true legislator and statesman ought to be acquainted, not only with (1) that which is best in the abstract, but also with (2) that which is best relatively to circumstances. We should be able further to say how a state may be constituted under any given conditions (3); both how it is originally formed and, when formed, how it may be longest preserved; the supposed state being so far from the very best that it is unprovided even with the conditions necessary for the very best; neither is it the best under the circumstances, but of an inferior type.

* The numbers in this paragraph are made to correspond with the numbers in the next.
IV. 1. He ought, moreover, to know (4) the form of government which is best suited to states in general; for political writers, although they have excellent ideas, are often unpractical. We should consider, not only what form of government is best, but also what is possible and what is easily attainable by all. There are some who would have none but the most perfect; for this many natural advantages are required. Others, again, speak of a more attainable form, and, although they reject the constitution under which they are living, they extol some one in particular, for example the Lacedaemonian. Any change of government which has to be introduced should be one which men will be both willing and able to adopt, since there is quite as much trouble in the reformation of an old constitution as in the establishment of a new one, just as to unlearn is as hard as to learn. And therefore, in addition to the qualifications of the statesman already mentioned, he should be able to find remedies for the defects of existing constitutions. This he cannot do unless he knows how many forms of government there are. It is often supposed that there is only one kind of democracy and one of oligarchy. But this is a mistake; and, in order to avoid such mistakes, we must ascertain what differences there are in the constitutions of states, and in how many ways they are combined. The same political insight will enable a man to know which laws are the best, and which are suited to different constitutions; for the laws are, and ought to be, relative to the constitution, and not the constitution to the laws. A constitution is the organization of offices in a state, and determines what is to be the governing body, and what is the end of each community. But laws are not to be confounded with the principles of the constitution: they are the rules according to which the magistrates should administer the state, and proceed

\[a\] Cp. ii. 6. § 16.

\[b\] Cp. § 4.

\[c\] Or: 'laws, though in themselves distinct, show the character of the constitution.'
against offenders. So that we must know the number and varieties of the several forms of government, if only with a view to making laws. For the same laws cannot be equally suited to all oligarchies and to all democracies, and there is certainly more than one form both of democracy and of oligarchy.

In our original discussion about governments we divided them into three true forms: kingly rule, aristocracy, and constitutional government, and three corresponding perversions—tyranny, oligarchy, and democracy. Of kingly rule and of aristocracy we have already spoken, for the enquiry into the perfect state is the same thing with the discussion of the two forms thus named, since both imply a principle of virtue provided with external means. We have already determined in what aristocracy and kingly rule differ from one another, and when the latter should be established. In what follows we have to describe the so-called constitutional government, which bears the common name of all constitutions, and the other forms, tyranny, oligarchy, and democracy.

It is obvious which of the three perversions is the worst, and which is the next in badness. That which is the perversion of the first and most divine is necessarily the worst. And just as a royal rule, if not a mere name, must exist by virtue of some great personal superiority in the king, so tyranny, which is the worst of governments, is necessarily the farthest removed from a well-constituted form; oligarchy is a little better, but a long way from aristocracy, and democracy is the most tolerable of the three.

A writer who preceded me has already made these distinctions, but his point of view is not the same as mine. For he lays down the principle that of all good constitutions (under which he would include a virtuous oligarchy and the like) democracy is the worst, but the best of bad ones. Whereas we maintain that they are

\[ \text{Corruptio optimi pessima.} \]

* Book iii. 7; N. Eth. viii. 10.  
* Cp. iii. 17. § 8.  
* Plato Polit. 303 A.
IV. 2. all defective, and that one oligarchy is not to be accounted better than another, but only less bad.

Not to pursue this question further at present, let us begin by determining (1) how many varieties of states there are (since of democracy and oligarchy there are several); (2) what constitution is the most generally acceptable, and what is eligible in the next degree after the perfect or any other aristocratical and well-constituted form of government—if any other there be—which is at the same time adapted to states in general; (3) of the other forms of government to whom is each suited. For democracy may meet the needs of some better than oligarchy, and conversely. In the next place (4) we have to consider in what manner a man ought to proceed who desires to establish some one among these various forms, whether of democracy or of oligarchy; and lastly, (5) having briefly discussed these subjects to the best of our power, we will endeavour to ascertain whence arise the ruin and preservation of states, both generally and in individual cases, and to what causes they are to be attributed.

The reason why there are many forms of government is that every state contains many elements. In the first place we see that all states are made up of families, and in the multitude of citizens there must be some rich and some poor, and some in a middle condition; the rich are heavy-armed, and the poor not. Of the common people, some are husbandmen, and some traders, and some artisans. There are also among the notable differences of wealth and property—for example, in the number of horses which they keep, for they cannot afford to keep them unless they are rich. And therefore in old times the cities whose strength lay in their cavalry

---

*a C. 4-6.  
*b C. 7-9 and 11.  
*c Or: ‘after the perfect state; and besides this what other there is which is aristocratical and well constituted, and at the same time adapted to states in general.’  
*d C. 12.  
*e Book vi.  
*f Book v.  
*g Or: ‘and again both of rich and poor some are armed and some are unarmed.’
were oligarchies, and they used cavalry in wars* against their neighbours; as was the practice of the Eretrians and Chalcidians, and also of the Magnesians on the river Maeander, and of other peoples in Asia. Besides differences of wealth there are differences of rank and merit, and there are some other elements which were mentioned by us when in treating of aristocracy we enumerated the essentials of a stateb. Of these elements, sometimes all, sometimes the lesser and sometimes the greater number, have a share in the government. It is evident then that there must be many forms of government, differing in kind, since the parts of which they are composed differ from each other in kind. For a constitution is an organization of offices which all the citizens distribute among themselves, according to the power which different classes possess, for example the rich or the poor, or according to some principle of compensation which includes both. There must therefore be as many forms of government as there are modes of arranging the offices, according to the superiorities and other inequalities of the different parts of the state.

There are generally thought to be two principal forms: as men say of the winds that there are but two—north and south, and that the rest of them are only variations of these, so of governments there are said to be only two forms—democracy and oligarchy. For aristocracy is considered to be a kind of oligarchy, as being the rule of a few, and the so-called constitutional government to be really a democracy, just as among the winds we make the west a variation of the north, and the east of the south wind. Similarly of harmonies there are said to be two kinds, the Dorian and the Phrygian; the other arrangements of the scale are comprehended under one of these two. About forms of government this is a very favourite notion. But in either case the better and more

* Reading either πολίμοιοι with v. tr. (Moerbek) and Bekk. 2nd edit., or πολεμίοι with the Greek MSS; cp. c. 13. § 10; vi. c. 7. § 1.

b Not in what has preceded, but cp. vii. 8.
exact way is to distinguish, as I have done, the one or
two which are true forms, and to regard the others as per-
versions, whether of the most perfectly attempered har-
mony or of the best form of government: we may com-
pare the oligarchical forms to the severer and more over-
powering modes, and the democratic to the more relaxed
and gentler ones.

It must not be assumed, as some are fond of saying,
that democracy is simply that form of government in
which the greater number are sovereign*, for in oligar-
chies, and indeed in every government, the majority rules;
nor again is oligarchy that form of government in which
a few are sovereign. Suppose the whole population of a
city to be 1300, and that of these 1000 are rich, and do
not allow the remaining 300 who are poor, but free, and
in all other respects their equals, a share of the govern-
ment—no one will say that this is a democracy. In like
manner, if the poor were few and the masters of the rich
who outnumber them, no one would ever call such a
government, in which the rich majority have no share of
office, an oligarchy. Therefore we should rather say1290b.
that democracy is the form of government in which the
free are rulers, and oligarchy in which the rich; it is
only an accident that the free are the many and the rich
are the few. Otherwise a government in which the
offices were given according to stature, as is said to be
the case in Ethiopia, or according to beauty, would be
an oligarchy; for the number of tall or good-looking
men is small. And yet oligarchy and democracy are
not sufficiently distinguished merely by these two cha-
ristics of wealth and freedom. Both of them con-
tain many other elements, and therefore we must carry
our analysis further, and say that the government is not
a democracy in which the freemen, being few in number,
rule over the many who are not free, as at Apollonia, on
the Ionian Gulf, and at Thera; (for in each of these
states the nobles, who were also the earliest settlers,
were held in chief honour, although they were but a few

* Cp. iii. 8. §§ 3-7.
out of many). Neither is it a democracy when the rich have the government, because they exceed in number; as was the case formerly at Colophon, where the bulk of the inhabitants were possessed of large property before the Lydian War. But the form of government is a democracy when the free, who are also poor and the majority, govern, and oligarchy when the rich and the noble govern, they being at the same time few in number.

I have said that there are many forms of government, and have explained to what causes the variety is due. Why there are more than those already mentioned, and what they are, and whence they arise, I will now proceed to consider, starting from the principle already admitted, which is that every state consists, not of one, but of many parts. If we were going to speak of the different species of animals, we should first of all determine the organs which are indispensable to every animal, as for example some organs of sense and instruments of receiving and digesting food, such as the mouth and the stomach, besides organs of locomotion. Assuming now that there are only so many kinds of organs, but that there may be differences in them—I mean different kinds of mouths, and stomachs, and perceptive and locomotive organs—the possible combinations of these differences will necessarily furnish many varieties of animals. (For animals cannot be the same which have different kinds of mouths or of ears.) And when all the combinations are exhausted, there will be as many sorts of animals as there are combinations of the necessary organs. In like manner the forms of government which have been described, as I have repeatedly said, are composed, not of one, but of many elements. One element is the food-producing class, who are called husbandmen; a second, the class of mechanics, who practise the arts without which a city cannot exist;—of these arts some are absolutely necessary, others contribute to luxury or to the grace of life. The third class (2) mechanics, (3) traders.

* Cp. c. 3. § 1.
IV. 4.
is that of traders, and by traders I mean those who are engaged in buying and selling, whether in commerce or in retail trade. A fourth class is that of the serfs or labourers. The warriors make up the fifth class, and they are as necessary as any of the others, if the country is not to be the slave of every invader. For how can a state which has any title to the name be of a slavish nature? The state is independent and self-sufficing, but a slave is the reverse of independent. Hence we see that this subject, though ingeniously, has not been satisfactorily treated in the Republic. Socrates says that a state is made up of four sorts of people who are absolutely necessary; these are a weaver, a husbandman, a shoemaker, and a builder; afterwards, finding that they are not enough, he adds a smith, and again a herdsman, to look after the necessary animals; then a merchant, and then a retail trader. All these together form the complement of the first state, as if a state were established merely to supply the necessaries of life, rather than for the sake of the good, or stood equally in need of shoemakers and of husbandmen. But he does not admit into the state a military class until the country has increased in size, and is beginning to encroach on its neighbour's land, whereupon they go to war. Yet even amongst his four original citizens, or whatever be the number of those whom he associates in the state, there must be some one who will dispense justice and determine what is just. And as the soul may be said to be more truly part of an animal than the body, so the higher parts of states, that is to say, the warrior class, the class engaged in the administration of justice, and in deliberation, which is the special business of political common sense,—these are more essential to the state than the parts which minister to the necessaries of life. Whether their several functions are the functions of different citizens, or of the same,—for it may often happen that the same persons are both warriors and husbandmen,—is im-

* Rep. ii. 369.
material to the argument. The higher as well as the lower elements are to be equally considered parts of the state, and if so, the military element must be included. There are also the wealthy who minister to the state with their property; these form the seventh class. The eighth class is that of magistrates and of officers; for the state cannot exist without rulers. And therefore some must be able to take office and to serve the state, either always or in turn. There only remains the class of those who deliberate and who judge between disputants; we were just now distinguishing them. If the fair and equitable organization of all these elements is necessary to states, then there must also be persons who have the ability of statesmen. *Many are of opinion that different functions can be combined in the same individual*; for example, the warrior may also be a husbandman, or an artisan; or again, the counsellor a judge. And all claim to possess political ability, and think that they are quite competent to fill most offices. But the same persons cannot be rich and poor at the same time. For this reason the rich and the poor are regarded in an especial sense as parts of a state. Again, because the rich are generally few in number, while the poor are many, they appear to be antagonistic, and as the one or the other prevails they form the government. Hence arises the common opinion that there are two kinds of government—democracy and oligarchy.

I have already explained that there are many differences of constitutions, and to what causes the variety is due. Let me now show that there are different forms both of democracy and oligarchy, as will indeed be evident from what has preceded. For both in the common people and in the notables various classes are included; of the common people, one class are husbandmen, another artisans; another traders, who are employed in buying and selling; another are the sea-

*a Or, 'Different functions appear to be often combined,' etc.*
*b Cp. iii. c. 6.*
IV. 4. faring class, whether engaged in war or in trade, as ferrymen or as fishermen. (In many places any one of these classes forms quite a large population; for example, fishermen at Tarentum and Byzantium, crews of triremes at Athens, merchant seamen at Aegina and Chios, ferrymen at Tenedos.) To the classes already mentioned may be added day-labourers, and those who, owing to their needy circumstances, have no leisure, or those who are not of free birth on both sides; and there may be other classes as well. The notables again may 22 be divided according to their wealth, birth, virtue, education, and similar differences.

Of forms of democracy first comes that which is said to be based strictly on equality. In such a democracy the law says that it is just for nobody to be poor, and for nobody to be rich; and that neither should be masters, but both equal. For if liberty and equality, as is 23 thought by some, are chiefly to be found in democracy, they will be best attained when all persons alike share in the government to the utmost. And since the people are the majority, and the opinion of the majority is decisive, such a government must necessarily be a democracy. Here then is one sort of democracy. There is another, 24 in which the magistrates are elected according to a certain property qualification, but a low one; he who has the required amount of property has a share in the government, but he who loses his property loses his rights. Another kind is that in which all the citizens 1289a. who are under no disqualification share in the government, but still the law is supreme. In another, everybody, 25 if he be only a citizen, is admitted to the government, but the law is supreme as before. A fifth form of democracy, in other respects the same, is that in which, not

* Or, reading ἄρχειν with Victorius, 'that the poor should no more govern than the rich.' The emendation is not absolutely necessary, though supported by vi. 2. § 9, ἰσον γὰρ τὸ μηδὲν μᾶλλον ἁρχεῖν τοὺς ἀντίστοις ἡ τοὺς εὐπόρους μηδὲ κυρίους εἰναι μᾶκνοι ἀλλὰ πάντας ἐξ ἰσον κατ' ἀριθμὸν.
the law, but the multitude, have the supreme power, and
26 supersede the law by their decrees. This is a state of
affairs brought about by the demagogues. For in de-
mocracies which are subject to the law the best citizens
hold the first place, and there are no demagogues; but
where the laws are not supreme, there demagogues spring
up. For the people becomes a monarch, and is many in
one; and the many have the power in their hands, not
27 as individuals, but collectively. Homer says that 'it is
not good to have a rule of many', but whether he means
this corporate rule, or the rule of many individuals, is
uncertain. And the people, who is now a monarch, and
no longer under the control of law, seeks to exercise
monarchical sway, and grows into a despot; the flatterer
is held in honour; this sort of democracy being relatively
to other democracies what tyranny is to other forms of
monarchy. The spirit of both is the same, and they
alike exercise a despotic rule over the better citizens.
The decrees of the demos correspond to the edicts of
the tyrant; and the demagogue is to the one what the
flatterer is to the other. Both have great power;—the
flatterer with the tyrant, the demagogue with democracies
29 of the kind which we are describing. The demagogues
make the decrees of the people override the laws, and
refer all things to the popular assembly. And therefore
they grow great, because the people have all things in
their hands, and they hold in their hands the votes of
30 the people, who are too ready to listen to them. Further,
those who have any complaint to bring against the ma-
gistrates say, 'let the people be judges'; the people are
too happy to accept the invitation; and so the authority
of every office is undermined. Such a democracy is fairly
open to the objection that it is not a constitution at all;
for where the laws have no authority, there is no con-
stitution. The law ought to be supreme over all, and
the magistracies and the government should judge of

* II. 2. 204.
IV. 4. particulars. So that if democracy be a real form of government, the sort of constitution in which all things are regulated by decrees is clearly not a democracy in the true sense of the word, for decrees relate only to particulars.

5. These then are the different kinds of democracy. Of oligarchies, too, there are different kinds:—one where the property qualification for office is so high that the poor, although they form the majority, have no share in the government, yet he who acquires a qualification may obtain a share. Another sort is when there is a qualification for office, but a high one, and the vacancies in the governing body are filled by co-optation. If the election is made out of all the qualified persons, a constitution of this kind inclines to an aristocracy, if out of a privileged class, to an oligarchy. Another sort of oligarchy is when the son succeeds the father. There is a fourth form, likewise hereditary, in which the magistrates are supreme and not the law. Among oligarchies this is what tyranny is among monarchies, and the last-mentioned form of democracy among democracies; and in fact this sort of oligarchy receives the name of a dynasty (or rule of powerful families).

These are the different sorts of oligarchies and democracies. It should however be remembered that in many states the constitution which is established by law, although not democratic, owing to the character and habits of the people, may be administered democratically, and conversely in other states the established constitution may incline to democracy, but may be administered in an oligarchical spirit. This most often happens after a revolution: for governments do not change at once; at first the dominant party are content with encroaching a little upon their opponents. The laws which existed previously continue in force, but the authors of the revolution have the power in their hands.

6. From what has been already said we may safely infer


b Cp. v. 1, § 8.
that there are so many different kinds of democracies and of oligarchies. For it is evident that either all the classes whom we mentioned must share in the government, or some only and not others. When the class of husbandmen and of those who possess moderate fortunes have the supreme power, the government is administered according to law. For the citizens being compelled to live by their labour have no leisure; and so they set up the authority of the law, and attend assemblies only when necessary. Since they all obtain a share in the government when they have acquired the qualification which is fixed by the law, nobody is excluded—the absolute exclusion of any class would be a step towards oligarchy. But leisure cannot be provided for them unless there are revenues to support them. This is one sort of democracy, and these are the causes which give birth to it. Another kind is based on the mode of election, which naturally comes next in order; in this, every one to whose birth there is no objection is eligible, and may share in the government if he can find leisure. And in such a democracy the supreme power is vested in the laws, because the state has no means of paying the citizens. A third kind is when all freemen have a right to share in the government, but do not actually share, for the reason which has been already given; so that in this form again the law must rule. A fourth kind of democracy is that which comes latest in the history of states. In our own day, when cities have far outgrown their original size, and their revenues have increased, all the citizens have a place in the government, through the great preponderance of their numbers; and they all, including the poor who receive pay, and therefore have leisure to exercise their rights, share in the administration. Indeed, when they are paid, the common people have the most leisure, for they are not hindered by the care of their property, which often fetters the
IV. 6. rich, who are thereby prevented from taking part in
the assembly or in the courts, and so the state is
governed by the poor, who are a majority, and not by
the laws. So many kinds of democracies there are, and 7
they grow out of these necessary causes.

Of oligarchies, one form is that in which the majority
of the citizens have some property, but not very much;
and this is the first form, which allows to any one who
obtains the required amount the right of sharing in
the government. The sharers in the government being 8
a numerous body, it follows that the law must govern,
and not individuals. For in proportion as they are
further removed from a monarchical form of government,
and in respect of property have neither so much as to be
able to live without attending to business, nor so little
as to need state support, they must admit the rule of
law and not claim to rule themselves. But if the men 9
of property in the state are fewer than in the former
case, and own more property, there arises a second form
of oligarchy. For the stronger they are, the more power
they claim, and having this object in view, they them-
selves select those of the other classes who are to be ad-
mitted to the government; but, not being as yet strong
enough to rule without the law, they make the law
represent their wishes. When this power is intensified 10
by a further diminution of their numbers and increase of
their property, there arises a third and further stage of
oligarchy, in which the governing class keep the offices in
their own hands, and the law ordains that the son shall
succeed the father. When, again, the rulers have great 11
wealth and numerous friends, this sort of dynastia or
family despotism approaches a monarchy; individuals
rule and not the law. This is the fourth sort of oli-
garchy, and is analogous to the last sort of democracy.

There are still two forms besides democracy and
oligarchy; one of them is universally recognized and
included among the four principal forms of govern-
ment which are said to be (1) monarchy, (2) oligarchy,
(3) democracy, and (4) the so-called aristocracy or government of the best. But there is also a fifth, which retains the generic name of polity or constitutional government; this is not common, and therefore has not been noticed by writers who attempt to enumerate the different kinds of government; like Plato in his books about the state, they recognize four only. The term ‘aristocracy’ is rightly applied to the form of government which is described in the first part of our treatise; for that only can be rightly called aristocracy [the government of the best] which is a government formed of the best men absolutely, and not merely of men who are good when tried by any given standard. In the perfect state the good man is absolutely the same as the good citizen; whereas in other states the good citizen is only good relatively to his own form of government. But there are some states differing from oligarchies and also differing from the so-called polity or constitutional government; these are termed aristocracies, and in them magistrates are certainly chosen, both according to their wealth and according to their merit. Such a form of government is not the same with the two just now mentioned, and is termed an aristocracy. For indeed in states which do not make virtue the aim of the community, men of merit and reputation for virtue may be found. And so where a government has regard to wealth, virtue, and numbers, as at Carthage\(^*\), that is aristocracy; and also where it has regard only to two out of the three, as at Lacedaemon, to virtue and numbers, and the two principles of democracy and virtue temper each other. There are these two forms of aristocracy in addition to the first and perfect state, and there is a third form, viz. the polities which incline towards oligarchy.

I have yet to speak of the so-called polity and of tyranny. I put them in this order, not because a polity or constitutional government is to be regarded as a

\(^*\) Cp. ii. 11. §§ 5–10.
perversion any more than the above-mentioned aristocracies. The truth is, that they all fall short of the most perfect form of government, and so they are reckoned among perversions, and other forms (sc. the really perverted forms) are perversions of these, as I said before. Last of all I will speak of tyranny, which I place last in the series because I am enquiring into the constitutions of states, and this is the very reverse of a constitution.

Having explained why I have adopted this order, I will proceed to consider constitutional government; of which the nature will be clearer now that oligarchy and democracy have been defined. For polity or constitutional government may be described generally as a fusion of oligarchy and democracy; but the term is usually applied to those forms of government which incline towards democracy, and the term aristocracy to those which incline towards oligarchy, because birth and education are commonly the accompaniments of wealth. Moreover, the rich already possess the external advantages the want of which is a temptation to crime, and hence they are called noblemen and gentlemen. And inasmuch as aristocracy seeks to give predominance to the best of the citizens, people say also of oligarchies that they are composed of noblemen and gentlemen. Now it appears to be an impossible thing that the state which is governed by the best citizens should be ill-governed, and equally impossible that the state which is ill-governed should be governed by the best. But we must remember that good laws, if they are not obeyed, do not constitute good government. For there are two parts of good government; one is the actual obedience of citizens to the laws, the other part is the goodness of the laws which they obey; they may obey bad laws as well as good. And there may be a further subdivision; they may obey either the best laws which are attainable to them, or the best absolutely.

* Cp. iii. 7.  

b Omitting ἀλλὰ πονηροκρατοῦμην.
7 The distribution of offices according to merit is a special characteristic of aristocracy, for the principle of an aristocracy is virtue, as wealth is of an oligarchy, and freedom of a democracy. In all of them there of course exists the right of the majority, and whatever seems good to the majority of those who share in the govern-ment has authority. Generally, however, a state of this kind is called a constitutional government [not an aristocracy], for the fusion goes no further than the attempt to unite the freedom of the poor and the wealth of the rich, who commonly take the place of the noble. And as there are three grounds on which men claim an equal share in the government, freedom, wealth, and virtue (for the fourth or good birth is the result of the two last, being only ancient wealth and virtue), it is clear that the admixture of the two elements, that is to say, of the rich and poor, is to be called a polity or constitutional government; and the union of the three is to be called aristocracy or the government of the best, and more than any other form of government, except the true and ideal, has a right to this name.

8 Thus far I have described the different forms of states which exist besides monarchy, democracy, and oligarchy, and what they are, and in what aristocracies differ from one another, and polities from aristocracies—that the two latter are not very unlike is obvious.

Next we have to consider how by the side of oligarchy and democracy the so-called polity or constitutional government springs up, and how it should be organized. The nature of it will be at once understood from a comparison of oligarchy and democracy; we must ascertain their different characteristics, and taking a portion from each, put the two together, like the parts of an indenture.

9 Now there are three modes in which fusions of government may be effected. The nature of the fusion will be made intelligible by an example of the manner in which different governments legislate, say concerning the administration of justice. In oligarchies they impose a fine on
IV. 9. the rich if they do not serve as judges, and to the poor they give no pay; but in democracies they give pay to the poor and do not fine the rich. Now (1) the union of these two modes* is a common or middle term between them, and is therefore characteristic of a constitutional government, for it is a combination of both. This is one mode of uniting the two elements. Or (2) a mean may be taken between the enactments of the two: thus democracies require no property qualification, or only a small one, from members of the assembly, oligarchies a high one; here neither of these is the common term, but a mean between them. (3) There is a third mode, in which something is borrowed from the oligarchical and something from the democratical principle. For example, the appointment of magistrates by lot is democratical, and the election of them oligarchical; democratical again when there is no property qualification, oligarchical when there is. In the aristocratical or constitutional state, one element will be taken from each—from oligarchy the mode of electing to offices, from democracy the disregard of qualification. Such are the various modes of combination.

There is a true union of oligarchy and democracy when the same state may be termed either a democracy or an oligarchy; those who use both names evidently feel that the fusion is complete. Such a fusion there is also in the mean; for both extremes appear in it. The Lacedaemonian constitution, for example, is often described as a democracy, because it has many democratical features. In the first place the youth receive a democratical education. For the sons of the poor are brought up with the sons of the rich, who are educated in such a manner as to make it possible for the sons of the poor to be educated like them. A similar equality prevails in the following period of life, and when the citizens are grown up to manhood the same rule is observed; there is no distinction between the rich and poor. In like

manner they all have the same food at their public
9 tables, and the rich wear only such clothing as any poor
9 man can afford. Again, the people elect to one of the
two greatest offices of state, and in the other they share;
for they elect the Senators and share in the Ephoralty.
By others the Spartan constitution is said to be an
oligarchy, because it has many oligarchical elements.
That all offices are filled by election and none by lot, is
one of these oligarchical characteristics; that the power
of inflicting death or banishment rests with a few persons
is another; and there are others. In a well attempered
polity there should appear to be both elements and
yet neither; also the government should rely on itself,
and not on foreign aid, nor on the good will of a
majority of foreign states—they might be equally well-
disposed when there is a vicious form of government—
but on the general willingness of all classes in the state
to maintain the constitution.
Enough of the manner in which a constitutional
government, and in which the so-called aristocracies
ought to be framed.

1295a. Of the nature of tyranny I have still to speak, in order
that it may have its place in our enquiry, since even Tyrany.
tyranny is reckoned by us to be a form of government,
although there is not much to be said about it. I have
already in the former part of this treatise discussed
royalty or kingship according to the most usual meaning
of the term, and considered whether it is or is not advan-
tageous to states, and what kind of royalty should be
established, and whence, and how it arises.

When speaking of royalty we also spoke of two forms
of tyranny, which are both according to law, and there-
fore easily pass into royalty. Among Barbarians there
are elected monarchs who exercise a despotic power; despot
Despotic rulers were also elected in ancient Hellas, called
despotic rulers were also elected in ancient Hellas, called
Aesymnetes or dictators. These monarchies, when com-
pared with one another, exhibit certain differences. And

a Cp. ii. 9. § 21.

b iii. 14-17.
IV. 10. they are, as I said before, royal, in so far as the monarch rules according to law and over willing subjects; but they are tyrannical in so far as he is despotic and rules according to his own fancy. There is also a third kind of tyranny, which is the most typical form, and is the counterpart of the perfect monarchy. This tyranny is just that arbitrary power of an individual which is responsible to no one, and governs all alike, whether equals or betters, with a view to its own advantage, not to that of its subjects, and therefore against their will. No freeman, if he can escape from it, will endure such a government.

The kinds of tyranny are such and so many, and for the reasons which I have given.

We have now to enquire what is the best constitution for most states, and the best life for most men, neither assuming a standard of virtue which is above ordinary persons, nor an education which is exceptionally favoured by nature and circumstances, nor yet an ideal state which is an aspiration only, but having regard to the life in which the majority are able to share, and to the form of government which states in general can attain. As to those aristocracies, as they are called, of which we were just now speaking, they either lie beyond the possibilities of the greater number of states, or they approximate to the so-called constitutional government, and therefore need no separate discussion. And in fact the conclusion at which we arrive respecting all these forms rests upon the same grounds. For if it has been truly said in the Ethics that the happy life is the life according to unimpeded virtue, and that virtue is a mean, then the life which is in a mean, and in a mean attainable by every one, must be the best. And the same principles of virtue and vice are characteristic of cities and of constitutions; for the constitution is in a figure the life of the city.

Now in all states there are three elements; one class is very rich, another very poor, and a third in a mean. It

* N. Eth. vii. 13. § 2.  
* Cp. iii. 3. §§ 7, 8.
is admitted that moderation and the mean are best, and therefore it will clearly be best to possess the gifts of fortune in moderation; for in that condition of life men are most ready to listen to reason. But he who greatly excels in beauty, strength, birth or wealth, or on the other hand who is very poor, or very weak, or very much disgraced, finds it difficult to follow reason. Of these two the one sort grow into violent and great criminals, the others into rogues and petty rascals. And two sorts of offences correspond to them, the one committed from violence, the other from roguery. The petty rogues are disinclined to hold office, whether military or civil, and their aversion to these two duties is as great an injury to the state as their tendency to crime. Again, those who have too much of the goods of fortune, strength, wealth, friends, and the like, are neither willing nor able to submit to authority. The evil begins at home: for when they are boys, by reason of the luxury in which they are brought up, they never learn, even at school, the habit of obedience. On the other hand, the very poor, who are in the opposite extreme, are too degraded. So that the one class cannot obey, and can only rule despotically; the other knows not how to command and must be ruled like slaves. Thus arises a city, not of freemen, but of masters and slaves, the one despising, the other envying; and nothing can be more fatal to friendship and good fellowship in states than this: for good fellowship tends to friendship; when men are at enmity with one another, they would rather not even share the same path. But a city ought to be composed, as far as possible, of equals and similars; and these are generally the middle classes. Wherefore the city which is composed of middle-class citizens is necessarily best governed; they are, as we say, the natural elements of a state. And this is the class of citizens which is most secure in a state, for they do not, like the poor, covet their neighbours' possessions.

---

* Laws viii. 831 E.  
* Cp. v. 9. § 13.
IV. 11. goods; nor do others covet theirs, as the poor covet the
goods of the rich; and as they neither plot against
others, nor are themselves plotted against, they pass
through life safely. Wisely then did Phocylides pray,—

'Many things are best in the mean; I desire to be of a middle
condition in my city.'

Thus it is manifest that the best political community 10
is formed by citizens of the middle class, and that those
states are likely to be well-administered, in which the
middle class is large, and larger if possible than both the
other classes, or at any rate than either singly; for the
addition of the middle class turns the scale, and prevents
either of the extremes from being dominant. Great then 11
is the good fortune of a state in which the citizens have
a moderate and sufficient property; for where some1296a.
possess much, and the others nothing, there may arise an
extreme democracy, or a pure oligarchy; or a tyranny
may grow out of either extreme,—either out of the most
rampant democracy, or out of an oligarchy; but it is not
so likely to arise out of a middle and nearly equal con-
dition. I will explain the reason of this hereafter, when 12
I speak of the revolutions of states*. The mean con-
dition of states is clearly best, for no other is free from
faction; and where the middle class is large, there are
least likely to be factions and dissensions. For a similar 13
reason large states are less liable to faction than small
ones, because in them the middle class is large; whereas
in small states it is easy to divide all the citizens into two
classes who are either rich or poor, and to leave nothing
in the middle. And democracies are safer b and more 14
permanent than oligarchies, because they have a middle
class which is more numerous and has a greater share in
the government; for when there is no middle class, and
the poor greatly exceed in number, troubles arise, and
the state soon comes to an end. A proof of the su-
periority of the middle class is that the best legislators
have been of a middle condition; for example, Solon, as

a Cp. Bk. v.  

b Cp. v. 1. § 15; 7. § 6.
THOUGH VERY DESIRABLE IS RARE. 129

his own verses testify; and Lycurgus, for he was not a king; and Charondas, and almost all legislators.

16 These considerations will help us to understand why most governments are either democratical or oligarchical. The reason is that the middle class is seldom numerous in them, and whichever party, whether the rich or the common people, transgresses the mean and predominates, draws the government to itself, and thus arises either oligarchy or democracy. There is another reason—the poor and the rich quarrel with one another, and whichever side gets the better, instead of establishing a just or popular government, regards political supremacy as the prize of victory, and the one party sets up a democracy and the other an oligarchy. Both the parties which had the supremacy in Hellas looked only to the interest of their own form of government, and established in states, the one, democracies, and the other, oligarchies; they thought of their own advantage, of the public not at all. For these reasons the middle form of government has rarely, if ever, existed, and among a very few only. One man alone of all who ever ruled in Hellas was induced to give this middle constitution to states. But it has now become a habit among the citizens of states, not even to care about equality; all men are seeking for dominion, or, if conquered, are willing to submit.

20 What then is the best form of government, and what makes it the best is evident; and of other states, since we say that there are many kinds of democracy and many of oligarchy, it is not difficult to see which has the first and which the second or any other place in the order of excellence, now that we have determined which is the best.

21 For that which is nearest to the best must of necessity be better, and that which is furthest from it worse, if we are judging absolutely and not relatively to given conditions: I say 'relatively to given conditions,' since a particular government may be preferable for some, but another form may be better for others.

We have now to consider what and what kind of
IV. 12. government is suitable to what and what kind of men.
I may begin by assuming, as a general principle common
to all governments, that the portion of the state which
desires permanence ought to be stronger than that which
desires the reverse. Now every city is composed of
quality and quantity. By quality I mean freedom, wealth,
education, good birth, and by quantity, superiority of
numbers. Quality may exist in one of the classes which
make up the state, and quantity in the other. For
example, the meanly-born may be more in number than
the well-born, or the poor than the rich, yet they may
not so much exceed in quantity as they fall short in
quality; and therefore there must be a comparison of
quantity and quality. Where the number of the poor is
more than proportioned to the wealth of the rich, there
will naturally be a democracy, varying in form with the
sort of people who compose it in each case. If, for
example, the husbandmen exceed in number, the first
form of democracy will then arise; if the artisans and
labouring class, the last; and so with the intermediate
forms. But where the rich and the notables exceed in
quality more than they fall short in quantity, there oli-
garchy arises, similarly assuming various forms according
to the kind of superiority possessed by the oligarchs.

The legislator should always include the middle class
in his government; if he makes his laws oligarchical, to
the middle class let him look; if he makes them democ-
ratical, he should equally by his laws try to attach this
class to the state. There only can the government ever
be stable where the middle class exceeds one or both of
the others, and in that case there will be no fear that
the rich will unite with the poor against the rulers. For
neither of them will ever be willing to serve the other,
and if they look for some form of government more
suitable to both, they will find none better than this, for
the rich and the poor will never consent to rule in turn,

* Or, if προσέγγισαν can govern τοῖς φόνοις, 'to win this class over
to his laws.'
because they mistrust one another. The arbiter is always the one trusted, and he who is in the middle is an arbiter. The more perfect the admixture of the political elements, the more lasting will be the state. Many even of those who desire to form aristocratical governments make a mistake, not only in giving too much power to the rich, but in attempting to overreach the people. There comes a time when out of a false good there arises a true evil, since the encroachments of the rich are more destructive to the state than those of the people.

The devices by which oligarchies deceive the people are five in number; they relate to (1) the assembly; (2) the magistracies; (3) the courts of law; (4) the use of arms; (5) gymnastic exercises. (1) The assemblies are thrown open to all, but either the rich only are fined for non-attendance, or a much larger fine is inflicted upon them. (2) As to the magistracies, those who are qualified by property cannot decline office upon oath, but the poor may. (3) In the law-courts the rich, and the rich only, are fined if they do not serve, the poor are let off with impunity, or, as in the laws of Charondas, a large fine is inflicted on the rich, and a smaller one on the poor. In some states all citizens who have registered themselves are allowed to attend the assembly and to try causes; but if after registration they do not attend in the assembly or at the courts, heavy fines are imposed upon them. The intention is that through fear of the fines they may avoid registering themselves, and then they cannot sit in the law-courts or in the assembly.

(4) Concerning the possession of arms, and (5) gymnastic exercises, they legislate in a similar spirit. For the poor are not obliged to have arms, but the rich are fined for not having them; and in like manner no penalty is inflicted on the poor for non-attendance at the gymnasium, and consequently, having nothing to fear, they do not attend, whereas the rich are liable to a fine, and therefore they take care to attend.
IV. 13. These are the devices of oligarchical legislators, and in democracies they have counter devices. They pay the poor for attending the assemblies and the law-courts, and they inflict no penalty on the rich for non-attendance. It is obvious that he who would duly mix the two principles should combine the practice of both, and provide that the poor should be paid to attend, and the rich fined if they do not attend, for then all will take part; if there is no such combination, power will be in the hands of one party only. The government should be confined to those who carry arms. As to the property qualification, no absolute rule can be laid down, but we must see what is the highest qualification sufficiently comprehensive to secure that the number of those who have the rights of citizens exceeds the number of those excluded. Even if they have no share in office, the poor, provided only that they are not outraged or deprived of their property, will be quiet enough.

But to secure gentle treatment for the poor is not an easy thing, since a ruling class is not always humane. And in time of war the poor are apt to hesitate unless they are fed; when fed, they are willing enough to fight. In some states the government is vested, not only in those who are actually serving, but also in those who have served; among the Malians, for example, the governing body consisted of the latter, while the magistrates were chosen from those actually on service. And in the earliest government which existed among the Hellenes, after the overthrow of the kingly power, grew up out of the warrior class, and was originally taken from the knights (for strength and superiority in war at that time depended on cavalry*); indeed, without discipline, infantry are useless, and in ancient times there was no military knowledge or tactics, and therefore the strength of armies lay in their cavalry. But when cities increased and the heavy armed grew in strength, more had a share in the government; and this is the reason why

* Cp. c. 3. § 3; vi. 7. § 1.
the states, which we call constitutional governments, have been hitherto called democracies. Ancient constitutions, as might be expected, were oligarchical and royal; their population being small they had no considerable middle class; the people were weak in numbers and organization, and were therefore more contented to be governed.

I have explained why there are various forms of government, and why there are more than is generally supposed; for democracy, as well as other constitutions, has more than one form: also what their differences are, and whence they arise, and what is the best form of government, speaking generally, and to whom the various forms of government are best suited; all this has now been explained.

Having thus gained an appropriate basis of discussion we will proceed to speak of the points which follow next in order. We will consider the subject not only in general but with reference to particular states. All states have three elements, and the good law-giver has to regard what is expedient for each state. When they are well-ordered, the state is well-ordered, and as they differ from one another, constitutions differ. What is the element first (1) which deliberates about public affairs; secondly (2) which is concerned with the magistrates and determines what they should be, over whom they should exercise authority, and what should be the mode of electing them; and thirdly (3) which has judicial power?

The deliberative element has authority in matters of war and peace, in making and unmaking alliances; it passes laws, inflicts death, exile, confiscation, audits the accounts of magistrates. All these powers must be assigned either to all the citizens or to some of them, for example, to one or more magistracies; or different causes to different magistracies, or some of them to all, and others of them only to some. That all things should be decided by all is characteristic of democracy; this is the sort of equality which the people desire. But there are various ways in
IV. 14. which all may share in the government; they may de-
liberate, not all in one body, but by turns, as in the con-
stitution of Telecles the Milesian. There are other states
in which the boards of magistrates meet and deliberate,
but come into office by turns, and are elected out of the
tribes and the very smallest divisions of the state, until
every one has obtained office in his turn. The citizens,
on the other hand, are assembled only for the purposes
of legislation, and to consult about the constitution, and
to hear the edicts of the magistrates. In another variety
of democracy the citizens form one assembly, but meet
only to elect magistrates, to pass laws, to advise about war
and peace, and to make scrutinies. Other matters are re-
ferred severally to special magistrates, who are elected by
vote or by lot out of all the citizens. Or again, the citizens
meet about election to offices and about scrutinies, and
deliberate concerning war or alliances, while other matters
are administered by the magistrates, who, as far as is
possible, are elected by vote*. I am speaking of those
magistracies in which special knowledge is required. A
fourth form of democracy is when all the citizens meet
to deliberate about everything, and the magistrates
decide nothing, but only make the preliminary enquiries;
and that is the way in which the last and worst form of
democracy, corresponding, as we maintain, to the close
family oligarchy and to tyranny, is at present administered.
All these modes are democratic.

On the other hand, that some should deliberate about
all is oligarchical. This again is a mode which, like the
democratical, has many forms. When the deliberative
class being elected out of those who have a moderate
qualification are numerous and they respect and obey the
law without altering it, and any one who has the required
qualification shares in the government, then, just because
of this moderation, the oligarchy inclines towards polity.

But when only selected individuals and not the whole
people share in the deliberations of the state, then,

* Cp. vi. 2. § 5.
although, as in the former case, they observe the law, the government is a pure oligarchy. Or, again, when those who have the power of deliberation are self-elected, and son succeeds father, and they and not the laws are supreme—the government is of necessity oligarchical.

Where, again, particular persons have authority in particular matters;—for example, when the whole people decide about peace and war and hold scrutinies, but the magistrates regulate everything else, and they are elected either by vote or by lot—there the form of government is an aristocracy or polity*. And if some questions are decided by magistrates elected by vote; and others by magistrates elected by lot, either absolutely or out of select candidates, or elected both by vote and by lot—the practices are partly characteristic of an aristocratical government, and partly of a pure constitutional government.

These are the various forms of the deliberative body; they correspond to the various forms of government. And the government of each state is administered according to one or other of the principles which have been laid down. Now it is for the interest of democracy, according to the most prevalent notion of it (I am speaking of that extreme form of democracy, in which the people are supreme even over the laws), with a view to better deliberation to adopt the custom of oligarchies respecting courts of law. For in oligarchies the rich who are wanted to be judges are compelled to attend under pain of a fine, whereas in democracies the poor are paid to attend. And this practice of oligarchies should be adopted by democracies in their public assemblies, for they will advise better if they all deliberate together,—the people with the notables and the notables with the people. It is also a good plan that those who deliberate should be elected by vote or by lot in equal numbers out

* Reading with several of the MSS ἀριστοκρατία ἡ πολιτεία, and omitting μία. Or, with Bekker's text, ἀριστοκρατία μία ἡ πολιτεία, 'the government is an aristocracy.'
of the different classes; and that if the people greatly exceed in number those who have political training, pay should not be given to all, but only to as many as would balance the number of the notables, or that the number in excess should be eliminated by lot. But in oligarchies either certain persons should be chosen out of the mass, or a class of officers should be appointed such as exist in some states, who are termed probuli and guardians of the law; and the citizens should occupy themselves exclusively with matters on which these have previously deliberated; for so the people will have a share in the deliberations of the state, but will not be able to disturb the principles of the constitution. Again, in oligarchies either the people ought to accept the measures of the government, or not to pass anything contrary to them; or, if all are allowed to share in counsel, the decision should rest with the magistrates. The opposite of what is done in constitutional governments should be the rule in oligarchies; the veto of the majority should be final, their assent not final, but the proposal should be referred back to the magistrates. Whereas in constitutional governments they take the contrary course; the few have the negative not the affirmative power; the affirmation of everything rests with the multitude.

These, then, are our conclusions respecting the deliberative, that is, the supreme element in states.

Next we will proceed to consider the distribution of offices; this, too, being a part of politics concerning which many questions arise:—What shall their number be? Over what shall they preside, and what shall be their duration? Sometimes they last for six months, sometimes for less; sometimes they are annual, whilst in other cases offices are held for still longer periods. Shall they be for life or for a long term of years; or, if for a short term only, shall the same persons hold them over and over again, or once only? Also about the appointment to them,—from whom are they to be chosen, by whom, and how? We should first be in a position to say what are
the possible varieties of them, and then we may proceed to determine which are suited to different forms of government. But what are to be included under the term 'offices'? That is a question not quite so easily answered. For a political community requires many officers; and not every one who is chosen by vote or by lot is to be regarded as a ruler. In the first place there are the priests, who must be distinguished from political officers; masters of choruses and heralds, even ambassadors, are elected by vote [but still they are not political officers]. Some duties of superintendence again are political, extending either to all the citizens in a single sphere of action, like the office of the general who superintends them when they are in the field, or to a section of them only, like the inspectorships of women or of youth. Other offices are concerned with household management, like that of the corn measurers who exist in many states and are elected officers. There are also menial offices which the rich have executed by their slaves. Speaking generally, they are to be called offices to which the duties are assigned of deliberating about certain measures and of judging and commanding, especially the last; for to command is the especial duty of a magistrate. But the question is not of any importance in practice; no one has ever brought into court the meaning of the word, although such problems have a speculative interest.

What kinds of offices, and how many, are necessary to the existence of a state, and which, if not necessary, yet conduce to its well-being, are much more important considerations, affecting all states, but more especially small ones. For in great states it is possible, and indeed necessary, that every office should have a special function; where the citizens are numerous, many may hold office. And so it happens that vacancies occur in some offices only after long intervals, or the office is held once only; and certainly every work is better done which receives the sole*, and not the divided attention of the

* Cp. ii. 2. § 6.
IV. 15. worker. But in small states it is necessary to combine many offices in a few hands, since the small number of citizens does not admit of many holding office:—for who will there be to succeed them? And yet small states at times require the same offices and laws as large ones; the difference is that the one want them often, the others only after long intervals. Hence there is no reason why the care of many offices should not be imposed on the same person, for they will not interfere with each other. When the population is small, offices should be like the spits which also serve to hold a lamp. We must first ascertain how many magistrates are necessary in every state, and also how many are not exactly necessary, but are nevertheless useful, and then there will be no difficulty in judging what offices can be combined in one. We should also know when local tribunals are to have jurisdiction over many different matters, and when authority should be centralized: for example, should one person keep order in the market and another in some other place, or should the same person be responsible everywhere? Again, should offices be divided according to the subjects with which they deal, or according to the persons with whom they deal: I mean to say, should one person see to good order in general, or one look after the boys, another after the women, and so on? Further, under different constitutions, should the magistrates be the same or different? For example, in democracy, oligarchy, aristocracy, monarchy, should there be the same magistrates, although they are elected, not out of equal or similar classes of citizens, but differently under different constitutions—in aristocracies, for example, they are chosen from the educated, in oligarchies from the wealthy, and in democracies from the free,—or are there different offices proper to different constitutions, and may the same be suitable to some, but unsuitable to others? For in some states it may be convenient that the same office

* Cp. vi. 8.  
* Cp. Note on i. 2. § 3.  
* See note.
should have a more extensive, in other states a narrower sphere. Special offices are peculiar to certain forms of government:—for example [to oligarchies] that of probuli, which is not a democratic office, although a bule or council is. There must be some body of men whose duty is to prepare measures for the people in order that they may not be diverted from their business; when these are few in number, the state inclines to an oligarchy: or rather the probuli must always be few, and are therefore an oligarchical element. But when both institutions exist in a state, the probuli are a check on the council; for the counsellor is a democratic element, but the probuli are oligarchical. Even the power of the council disappears when democracy has taken that extreme form, in which the people themselves are always meeting and deliberating about everything.

This is the case when the members of the assembly are wealthy or receive pay; for they have nothing to do and are always holding assemblies and deciding everything for themselves. A magistracy which controls the boys or the women, or any similar office, is suited to an aristocracy rather than to a democracy; for how can the magistrates prevent the wives of the poor from going out of doors? Neither is it an oligarchical office; for the wives of the oligarchs are too fine to be controlled.

Enough of these matters. I will now enquire into the appointment of offices. There are three questions to be answered, and the combinations of answers give all possible differences: first, who appoints? secondly, from whom? and thirdly, how? Each of these three may further differ in three ways: (1) All the citizens, or only some, appoint; (2) Either the magistrates are chosen out of all or out of some who are distinguished either by a property qualification, or by birth, or merit, or for some special reason, as at Megara only those were eligible who had returned from exile and fought together against the democracy; (3) They may be appointed either by vote or by lot. Again, these several modes may be

IV. 15.

E. g. the probuli and oligarchic office, the bule and democratic,
IV. 15. combined, I mean that some officers may be elected by some, others by all, and some again out of some, and others out of all, and some by vote and others by lot. Each of these differences admits of four variations. 17 (1) Either all may elect out of all by vote, or all out of all by lot; and either out of all collectively or by sections, as, for example, by tribes, and wards, and phratries, until all the citizens have been gone through; or the citizens may be in all cases eligible indiscriminately, and in some cases they may be elected by vote, and in some by lot. Again (2), if only some appoint, they may appoint out of all by vote, or out of all by lot; or out of some by vote, out of some by lot, and some offices may be appointed in one way and some in another, I mean if they are appointed by all they may be appointed partly by vote and partly by lot. Thus there will be twelve forms of appointment without including the two combinations in the mode of election.

Of these varieties two are democratic forms, namely, 19 when the choice is made by all the people out of all by vote or by lot, or by both, that is to say, some by lot and some by vote. The cases in which they do not all appoint at one time, but some appoint out of all or out of some by vote or by lot or by both, (I mean some by lot and some by vote,) or some out of all and others out of some both by lot and vote, are characteristic of a polity or constitutional government. That some should be appointed out of all by vote or by lot or by both, is oligarchical, and still more oligarchical when some are elected from all and some from some. That some should be elected out of all and some out of some, or again some by vote and others by lot, is characteristic of a constitutional government, which inclines to an aristocracy. That some should be chosen out of some, and some taken by lot out of some, is oligarchical though not equally oligarchical;

a i.e. partly out of all and partly out of some, and partly by vote and partly by lot (see infra c. 16. § 6).
b These words are bracketed by Bekker in both editions.
THE JUDICIAL ELEMENT.

IV. 15.

oligarchical, too, is the appointment of some out of some in both ways, and of some out of all. But that all should elect by vote out of some is aristocratical.

22 These are the different ways of constituting magistrates, and in this manner officers correspond to different forms of government:—which are proper to which, or how they ought to be established, will be evident when we determine the nature of their powers*. By powers I mean such power as a magistrate exercises over the revenue or in defence of the country; for there are various kinds of power: the power of the general, for example, is not the same with that which regulates contracts in the market.

Of the three parts of government, the judicial remains to be considered, and this we shall divide on the same principle. There are three points on which the varieties of law-courts depend:—The persons from whom they are appointed, the matters with which they are concerned, and the manner of their appointment. I mean, (1) are the judges taken from all, or from some only? (2) how many kinds of law-courts are there? (3) are the judges chosen by vote or by lot?

First, let me determine how many kinds of law-courts there are. They are eight in number: One is the court of audits or scrutinies; a second takes cognizance of [ordinary] offences against the state; a third is concerned with treason against the government; the fourth determines disputes respecting penalties, whether raised by magistrates or by private persons; the fifth decides the more important civil cases; the sixth tries cases of homicide, which are of various kinds, (1) premeditated, (2) unpremeditated, (3) cases in which the guilt is confessed but the justice is disputed; and there may be a fourth court (4) in which murderers who have fled from justice are tried after their return; such as the Court of Phreatto is said to be at Athens. But cases of this sort

* Omitting σαί with some MSS and the old translator.
rarely happen at all even in large cities. The different kinds of homicide may be tried either by the same or by different courts. (7) There are courts for strangers:—of these there are two subdivisions, (1) for the settlement of their disputes with one another, (2) for the settlement of disputes between them and the citizens. And besides all these there must be (8) courts for small suits about sums of a drachma up to five drachmas, or a little more, which have to be determined, but they do not require many judges.

Nothing more need be said of these small suits, nor of the courts for homicide and for strangers:—I would rather speak of political cases, which, when mismanaged, create division and disturbances in states.

Now if all the citizens judge, in all the different cases which I have distinguished, they may be appointed by vote or by lot, or sometimes by lot and sometimes by vote. Or when a certain class of causes are tried, the judges who decide them may be appointed, some by vote, and some by lot. These then are the four modes of appointing judges from the whole people, and there will be likewise four modes, if they are elected from a part only; for they may be appointed from some by vote and judge in all causes; or they may be appointed from some by lot and judge in all causes; or they may be elected in some cases by vote, and in some cases taken by lot, or some courts, even when judging the same causes, may be composed of members some appointed by vote and some by lot. These then are the ways in which the aforesaid judges may be appointed.

Once more, the modes of appointment may be combined, I mean, that some may be chosen out of the whole people, others out of some, some out of both; for example, the same tribunal may be composed of some who were elected out of all, and of others who were elected out of some, either by vote or by lot or by both.

In how many forms law-courts can be established has now been considered. The first form, viz. that in which
the judges are taken from all the citizens, and in which IV. 16.
all causes are tried, is democratical; the second, which is
composed of a few only who try all causes, oligarchical;
the third, in which some courts are taken from all classes,
and some from certain classes only, aristocratical and
constitutional.
BOOK V.

V. I.  The design which we proposed to ourselves is now nearly completed*. Next in order follow the causes of revolution in states, how many, and of what nature they are; what elements work ruin in particular states, and out of what, and into what they mostly change; also what are the elements of preservation in states generally, or in a particular state, and by what means each state may be best preserved: these questions remain to be considered.

In the first place we must assume as our starting-point, that in the many forms of government which have sprung up there has always been an acknowledgment of justice and proportionate equality, although mankind fail in attaining them, as indeed I have already explained. Democracy, for example, arises out of the notion that those who are equal in any respect are equal in all respects; because men are equally free, they claim to be absolutely equal. Oligarchy is based on the notion that those who are unequal in one respect are in all respects unequal; being unequal, that is, in property, they suppose themselves to be unequal absolutely. The democrats think that as they are equal they ought to be equal in all things; while the oligarchs, under the idea that they are unequal, claim too much, which is one form of inequality. All these forms of government have a kind of justice, but, tried by an absolute standard, they are faulty; and, therefore, both parties, whenever their share in the government does not accord with their pre-

---

*a Cp. iv. c. 2.
b Reading καί with the MSS and Bekker's first edition.
c Cp. iii. 9. §§ 1-4.
conceived ideas, stir up revolution. Those who excel in virtue have the best right of all to rebel (for they alone can with reason be deemed absolutely unequal), but then they are of all men the least inclined to do so. There is also a superiority which is claimed by men of rank; for they are thought noble because they spring from wealthy and virtuous ancestors. Here then, so to speak, are opened the very springs and fountains of revolution; and hence arise two sorts of changes in governments; the one affecting the constitution, when men seek to change from an existing form into some other, for example, from democracy into oligarchy, and from oligarchy into democracy, or from either of them into constitutional government or aristocracy, and conversely; the other not affecting the constitution, when, without disturbing the form of government, whether oligarchy, or monarchy, or any other, they try to get the administration into their own hands. Further, there is a question of degree; an oligarchy, for example, may become more or less oligarchical, and a democracy more or less democratic; and in like manner the characteristics of the other forms of government may be more or less strictly maintained. Or, the revolution may be directed against a portion of the constitution only, e.g. the establishment or overthrow of a particular office: as at Sparta it is said that Lysander attempted to overthrow the monarchy, and king Pausanias, the ephoralty. At Epidamnus, too, the change was partial. For instead of phylarchs or heads of tribes, a council was appointed; but to this day the magistrates are the only members of the ruling class who are compelled to go to the Heliaea when an election takes place, and the office of the single archon [survives, which] is another oligarchical feature. Everywhere inequality is a cause of revolution, but an inequality in which there is no proportion, for instance, a perpetual monarchy among

---

b] Cp. c. 4. § 12.  
d] Cp. iv. 5. § 3.  
f] Cp. iii. 16. § 1.
equals; and always it is the desire of equality which rises in rebellion.

Now equality is of two kinds, numerical and proportional; by the first I mean sameness or equality in number or size; by the second, equality of ratios. For example, the excess of three over two is equal to the excess of two over one; whereas four exceeds two in the same ratio in which two exceeds one, for two is the same part of four that one is of two, namely, the half. As I was saying before, men agree about justice in the abstract, but they differ about proportion; some think that if they are equal in any respect they are equal absolutely, others that if they are unequal in any respect they are unequal in all. Hence there are two principal forms of government, democracy and oligarchy; for good birth and virtue are rare, but wealth and numbers are more common. In what city shall we find a hundred persons of good birth and of virtue? whereas the poor everywhere abound. That a state should be ordered, simply and wholly, according to either kind of equality, is not a good thing; the proof is the fact that such forms of government never last. They are originally based on a mistake, and as they begin badly, cannot fail to end badly. The inference is that both kinds of equality should be employed; numerical in some cases, and proportionate in others.

Still democracy appears to be safer and less liable to revolution than oligarchy. For in oligarchies there is the double danger of the oligarchs falling out among themselves and also with the people; but in democracies there is only the danger of a quarrel with the oligarchs. No dissension worth mentioning arises among the people themselves. And we may further remark that a government which is composed of the

---

a Cp. § 2; iii. 9. §§ 1-4.
b Or, placing a comma (as Bekker has done in his second edition) after ἐξ ἑαυτῶν ἀδικήσαν, 'while men agree that justice is proportion, they differ in thinking—some that,' etc.
c Cp. iv. 11. § 14.
d Cp. c. 6.

---
middle class more nearly approximates to democracy
than to oligarchy*, and is the safest of the imperfect
forms of government.

In considering how dissensions and political revolutions
arise, we must first of all ascertain the beginnings and
causes of them which affect constitutions generally. They
may be said to be three in number; and we have now
to give an outline of each. We want to know (1) what
is the feeling? and (2) what are the motives of those who
make them? (3) whence arise political disturbances and
quarrels? The universal and chief cause of this revolu-
tionary feeling has been already mentioned; viz. the
desire of equality, when men think that they are equal to
others who have more than themselves; or, again, the
desire of inequality and superiority, when conceiving
themselves to be superior they think that they have not
more but the same or less than their inferiors; pretens-
sions which may and may not be just. Inferiors revolt in
order that they may be equal, and equals that they may be
superior. Such is the state of mind which creates revolu-
tions. The motives for making them are the desire
of gain and honour, or the fear of dishonour and loss; the
authors of them want to divert punishment or dishonour
from themselves or their friends. The causes and reasons
of these motives and dispositions which are excited in men,
about the things which I have mentioned, viewed in one
way, may be regarded as seven, and in another as more
than seven. Two of them have been already noticed b,
but they act in a different manner, for men are excited
against one another by the love of gain and honour—not,
as in the case which I have just supposed, in order to
obtain them for themselves, but at seeing others, justly
or unjustly, engrossing them. Other causes are insolence,
fear, love of superiority, contempt, disproportionate in-
crease in some part of the state; causes of another sort
are election intrigues, carelessness, neglect about trifles,
dissimilarity of elements.

* Omitting ἡ before τῶν διίων.

b Supra §§ 2, 3.
What share insolence and avarice have in creating revolutions, and how they work, is plain enough. When the magistrates are insolent and grasping they conspire against one another and also against the constitution from which they derive their power, making their gains either at the expense of individuals or of the public. It is evident, again, what an influence honour exerts and how it is a cause of revolution. Men who are themselves dishonoured and who see others obtaining honours rise in rebellion; the honour or dishonour when undeserved is unjust; and just when awarded according to merit. Again, superiority is a cause of revolution when one or more persons have a power which is too much for the state and the power of the government; this is a condition of affairs out of which there arises a monarchy, or a family oligarchy. And, therefore, in some places, as at Athens and Argos, they have recourse to ostracism. But how much better to provide from the first that there should be no such preeminent individuals instead of letting them come into existence and then finding a remedy.

Another cause of revolution is fear. Either men have committed wrong, and are afraid of punishment, or they are expecting to suffer wrong and are desirous of anticipating their enemy. Thus at Rhodes the notables conspired against the people through fear of the suits that were brought against them. Contempt is also a cause of insurrection and revolution; for example, in oligarchies—when those who have no share in the state are the majority, they revolt, because they think that they are the stronger. Or, again, in democracies, the rich despise the disorder and anarchy of the state; at Thebes, for example, where, after the battle of Oenophyta, the bad administration of the democracy led to its ruin. At Megara the fall of the democracy was due to a defeat occasioned by disorder and anarchy. And at Syracuse the democracy was overthrown before the tyranny of Gelo arose; at Rhodes before the insurrection.

\* Cp. iii. 13. § 15.\n\* Cp. c. 5. § 2.
6 Political revolutions also spring from a disproportionate increase in any part of the state. For as a body is made up of many members, and every member ought to grow in proportion, that symmetry may be preserved; but loses its nature if the foot be four cubits long and the rest of the body two spans; and, should the abnormal increase be one of quality as well as of quantity, may even take the form of another animal: even so a state has many parts, of which some one may often grow imperceptibly; for example, the number of poor in democracies and in constitutional states. And this disproportion may sometimes happen by an accident, as at Tarentum, from a defeat in which many of the notables were slain in a battle with the Iapygians just after the Persian War, the constitutional government in consequence becoming a democracy; or, as was the case at Argos, where, after the battle at Hebdomè, the Argives, having been cut to pieces by Cleomenes the Lacedaemonian, were compelled to admit to citizenship some of their perioeci; and at Athens, when, after frequent defeats of their infantry in the times of the Peloponnesian War, the notables were reduced in number, because the soldiers had to be taken from the roll of citizens. Revolutions arise from this cause in democracies as well as in other forms of government, but not to so great an extent. When the rich grow numerous or properties increase, the form of government changes into an oligarchy or a government of families. Forms of government also change—sometimes even without revolution, owing to election contests, as at Heraca (where, instead of electing their magistrates, they took them by lot, because the electors were in the habit of choosing their own partisans); or owing to carelessness, when disloyal persons are allowed to find their way into the highest offices, as at Oreus, where, upon the accession of Heracleodorus to office, the oligarchy was overthrown, and changed by him into a constitutional and democratical government.

a Cp. iii. c. 13. § 21.

b Reading sibropou.
Again, the revolution may be accomplished by small neglect of trifles; I mean that a great change may sometimes slip into the constitution through neglect of a small matter; at Ambracia, for instance, the qualification for office, small at first, was eventually reduced to nothing. For the Ambraciots thought that a small qualification was much the same as none at all.

Another cause of revolution is difference of races which do not at once acquire a common spirit; for a state is not the growth of a day, neither is it a multitude brought together by accident. Hence the reception of strangers in colonies, either at the time of their foundation or afterwards, has generally produced revolution; for example, the Achaeans who joined the Troezenians in the foundation of Sybaris, being the more numerous, afterwards expelled them; hence the curse fell upon Sybaris. At Thurii the Sybarites quarrelled with their fellow-colonists; thinking that the land belonged to them, they wanted too much of it and were driven out. At Byzantium the new colonists were detected in a conspiracy, and were expelled by force of arms; the people of Antissa, who had received the Chian exiles, fought with them, and drove them out; and the Zancleans, after having received the Samians, were driven by them out of their own city. The citizens of Apollonia on the Euxine, after the introduction of a fresh body of colonists, had a revolution; the Syracusans, after the expulsion of their tyrants, having admitted strangers and mercenaries to the rights of citizenship, quarrelled and came to blows; the people of Amphipolis, having received Chalcidian colonists, were nearly all expelled by them.

Now, in oligarchies the masses make revolution under the idea that they are unjustly treated, because, as I said before, they are equals, and have not an equal share, and in democracies the notables revolt, because they are not equals, and yet have only an equal share.
the unity of the state. For example, the Chytrians at Clazomenae did not agree with the people of the island; and the people of Colophon quarrelled with the Notians; at Athens, too, the inhabitants of the Piraeus are more democratic than those who live in the city. For just as in war, the impediment of a ditch, though ever so small, may break a regiment, so every cause of difference, however slight, makes a breach in a city. The greatest opposition is confessedly that of virtue and vice; next comes that of wealth and poverty; and there are other antagonistic elements, greater or less, of which one is this difference of place.

In revolutions the occasions may be trifling, but great interests are at stake. Trifles are most important when they concern the rulers, as was the case of old at Syracuse; for the Syracusan constitution was once changed by a love-quarrel of two young men, who were in the government. The story is that while one of them was away from home his beloved was gained over by his companion, and he to revenge himself seduced the other's wife. They then drew all the members of the ruling class into their quarrel and made a revolution. We learn from this story that we should be on our guard against the beginnings of such evils, and should put an end to the quarrels of chiefs and mighty men. The mistake lies in the beginning—as the proverb says—'Well begun is half done;' so an error at the beginning, though quite small, has the proportion of a half to the whole matter. In general, when the notables quarrel, the whole city is involved, as happened in Hestiaea after the Persian War. The occasion was the division of an inheritance; one of two brothers refused to give an account of their father's property and the treasure which he had found: so the poorer of the two quarrelled with him and enlisted in his cause the popular party, the other, who was very rich, the wealthy classes.

At Delphi, again, a quarrel about a marriage was the beginning of all the troubles which followed. In this
case the bridegroom, fancying some occurrence to be of evil omen, came to the bride, and went away without taking her. Whereupon her relations, thinking that they were insulted by him, put some of the sacred treasure [among his offerings] while he was sacrificing, and then slew him, pretending that he had been robbing the temple. At Mitylene, too, a dispute about heiresses was the beginning of many misfortunes, and led to the war with the Athenians in which Paches took their city. A wealthy citizen, named Timophanes, left two daughters; Doxander, another citizen, wanted to obtain them for his sons; but he was rejected in his suit, whereupon he stirred up a revolution, and instigated the Athenians (of whom he was proxenus) to interfere. A similar quarrel about an heiress arose at Phocis between Mnaseas the father of Mnason, and Euthycrates the father of Onomarchus; this was the beginning of the Sacred War. A marriage-quarrel was also the cause of a change in the government of Epidamnus. A certain man betrothed his daughter secretly to a person whose father, having been made a magistrate, fined the father of the girl, and the latter, stung by the insult, conspired with the unenfranchised classes to overthrow the state.

Governments also change into oligarchy or into democracy or into a constitutional government because the magistrates, or some other section of the state, increase in power or renown. Thus at Athens the reputation gained by the court of the Areopagus, in the Persian War, seemed to tighten the reins of government. On the other hand, the victory of Salamis*, which was gained by the common people who served in the fleet, and won for the Athenians the empire of the sea, strengthened the democracy. At Argos, the notables, having distinguished themselves against the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, attempted to put down the democracy. At Syracuse, the people having been the chief authors of the victory in the war with the Athenians,

* Cp. ii. 12. § 5; viii. 6. § 11.
changed the constitutional government into democracy. V. 4.
At Chalcis, the people, uniting with the notables, killed Chalcis,
Phoxus the tyrant, and then seized the government. At
Ambracia*, the people, in like manner, having joined Ambracia,
with the conspirators in expelling the tyrant Periander,
transferred the government to themselves. And gener-
ally, it should be remembered that those who have
secured power to the state, whether private citizens, or
magistrates, or tribes, or any other part or section of the
state, are apt to cause revolutions. For either envy of
their greatness draws others into rebellion, or they them-
selves, in their pride of superiority, are unwilling to remain
on a level with others.

Revolutions break out when opposite parties, e.g. the Unstable
equilibrium of parties.
rich and the poor, are equally balanced, and there is little
or nothing between them; for, if either party were mani-
lessly superior, the other would not risk an attack upon
them. And, for this reason, those who are eminent in
virtue do not stir up insurrections, being always a
minority. Such are the beginnings and causes of the
disturbances and revolutions to which every form of
government is liable.

Revolutions are effected in two ways, by force and by
fraud. Force may be applied either at the time of
making the revolution or afterwards. Fraud, again, is
of two kinds; for (1) sometimes the citizens are deceived
into a change of government, and afterwards they are
held in subjection against their will. This was what
happened in the case of the Four Hundred, who deceived
the people by telling them that the king would provide
money for the war against the Lacedaemonians, and
when the deception was over, still endeavoured to re-
tain the government. (2) In other cases the people are
persuaded at first, and afterwards, by a repetition of the
persuasion, their goodwill and allegiance are retained.
The revolutions which affect constitutions generally
spring from the above-mentioned causes b.

* Cp. supra c. 3. § 10, and infra c. 10. § 16.  
* Cp. supra c. 2. § 1.
REVOLUTIONS IN DEMOCRACIES.

V. 5. And now, taking each constitution separately, we must see what follows from the principles already laid down. Revolutions in democracies are generally caused by the intemperance of demagogues, who either in their private capacity lay information against rich men until they compel them to combine (for a common danger unites even the bitterest enemies), or coming forward in public they stir up the people against them. The truth of this remark is proved by a variety of examples. At Cos, the democracy was overthrown because wicked demagogues arose, and the notables combined. At Rhodes, the demagogues not only provided pay for the multitude, but prevented them from making good to the trierarchs the sums which had been expended by them; and they, in consequence of the suits which were brought against them, were compelled to combine and put down the democracy. The democracy at Heraclea was overthrown shortly after the foundation of the colony by the injustice of the demagogues, which drove out the notables, who came back in a body and put an end to the democracy. Much in the same manner the democracy at Megara was overturned; there the demagogues drove out many of the notables in order that they might be able to confiscate their property. At length the exiles, becoming numerous, returned, and engaging and defeating the people, established an oligarchy. The same thing happened with the democracy of Cyme which was overthrown by Thrasymachus. And we may observe that in most states the changes have been of this character. For sometimes the demagogues, in order to curry favour with the people, wrong the notables and so force them to combine;—either they make a division of their property, or diminish their incomes by the imposition of public services, and sometimes they bring accusations against the rich that they may have their wealth to confiscate.

a Cp. supra c. 3. § 4. b Cp. c. 3. § 5, and iv. 15. § 15. c Cp. infra c. 8. § 20.
6 Of old, the demagogue was also a general, and then democracies changed into tyrannies. Most of the ancient tyrants were originally demagogues. They are not so now, but they were then; and the reason is that they were generals and not orators, for oratory had not yet come into fashion. Whereas in our day, when the art of rhetoric has made such progress, the orators lead the people, but their ignorance of military matters prevents them from usurping power; at any rate instances to the contrary are few and slight. Formerly tyrannies were more common than they now are, because great power was often placed in the hands of individuals; thus a tyranny arose at Miletus out of the office of the Prytanis, who had supreme authority in many important matters. Moreover, in those days, when cities were not large, the people dwelt in the fields, busy at their work; and their chiefs, if they possessed any military talent, seized the opportunity, and winning the confidence of the masses by professing their hatred of the wealthy, they succeeded in obtaining the tyranny. Thus at Athens Peisistratus led a faction against the men of the plain and Theagenes at Megara slaughtered the cattle of the wealthy, which he found by the river side where they had put them to graze. Dionysius, again, was thought worthy of the tyranny because he denounced Daphnacius and the rich; his enmity to the notables won for him the confidence of the people. Changes also take place from the ancient to the latest form of democracy; for where here is a popular election of the magistrates and no property qualification, the aspirants for office get hold of the people, and contrive at last even to set them above the laws. A more or less complete cure for this state of things is for the separate tribes, and not the whole people, to elect the magistrates.

These are the principal causes of revolutions in democracies.

* Cp. c. 10. § 4; Plato Rep. viii. 565 D.  
* Cp. infra c. 10. § 5.  
* See Herod. i. 59.
There are two patent causes of revolutions in oligarchies [one coming from without, the other from within the government]: (1) First, when the oligarchs oppress the people, for then anybody is good enough to be their champion, especially if he be himself a member of the oligarchy, as Lygdamis at Naxos, who afterwards came to be tyrant. But revolutions which commence outside the governing class may be further subdivided. Sometimes, when the government is very exclusive, the revolution is brought about by persons of the wealthy class who are excluded, as happened at Massalia and Istrones and Heraclea, and other cities. Those who had no share in the government created a disturbance, until first the elder brothers, and then the younger, were admitted; for in some places father and son, in others elder and younger brothers, do not hold office together. At Massalia the oligarchy became more like a constitutional government, but at Istrones ended in a democracy, and at Heraclea was enlarged to 600. At Cnidos, again, the oligarchy underwent a considerable change. For the notables fell out among themselves, because only a few shared in the government; there existed among them the rule already mentioned, that father and son could not hold office together, and, if there were several brothers, only the eldest was admitted. The people took advantage of the quarrel, and choosing one of the notables to be their leader, attacked and conquered the oligarchs, who were divided, and division is always a source of weakness. The city of Erythrae, too, in old times was ruled, and ruled well, by the Basilicides, but the people took offence at the narrowness of the oligarchy and changed the government.

(2) Of internal causes of revolutions in oligarchies one is the personal rivalry of the oligarchs, which leads them to play the demagogue. Now, the oligarchical demagogue is of two sorts: either (1) he practises upon the oligarchs themselves (for, although the oligarchy are quite a small number, there may be a demagogue among them, as at
Athens the party of Charicles predominated among the Thirty, that of Phrynichus in the Four Hundred); or (2) the oligarchs may play the demagogue with the people. This was the case at Larissa, where the guardians of the citizens endeavoured to gain over the people because they were elected by them; and such is the fate of all oligarchies in which the magistrates are elected, as at Abydos, not by the class to which they belong, but by the heavy-armed or by the people, although they may be required to have a high qualification, or to be members of a political club; or, again, where the law-courts are independent of the government, the oligarchs flatter the people in order to obtain a decision in their own favour, and so they change the constitution; this happened at Heraclea in Pontus. Again, oligarchies change whenever any attempt is made to narrow them; for then those who desire equal rights are compelled to call in the people. Changes in the oligarchy also occur when the oligarchs waste their private property by extravagant living; for then they want to innovate, and either try to make themselves tyrants, or install some one else in the tyranny, as Hipparinus did Dionysius at Syracuse, and as at Amphipolis a man named Cleotimus introduced Chalcidian colonists, and when they arrived, stirred them up against the rich. For a like reason in Aegina the person who carried on the negotiation with Chares endeavoured to revolutionize the state. Sometimes a party among the oligarchs try to create a political change; sometimes they rob the treasury, and then, either the other oligarchs quarrel with the thieves, as happened at Apollonia in Pontus, or they with the other oligarchs. But an oligarchy which is at unity with itself is not easily destroyed from within; of this we may see an example at Pharsalus, for there, although the rulers are few in number, they govern a large city, because they have a good understanding among themselves.

Oligarchies, again, are overthrown when another oli-

* Cp. c. 3. § 13.
Dangers from mercenaries; from faction, which leaves the state at the mercy of the army; from private quarrels; and excessive despotism.

V. 6. Oligarchy is created within the original one, that is to say, when the whole governing body is small and yet they do not all share in the highest offices. Thus at Elis the governing body was a small senate; and very few ever found their way into it, because, although in number ninety, the senators were elected for life and out of certain families in a manner similar to the Lacedaemonian elders. Oligarchy is liable to revolutions alike in war and in peace; in war because, not being able to trust the people, the oligarchs are compelled to hire mercenaries, and the general who is in command of them often ends in becoming a tyrant, as Timophaes did at Corinth; or if there are more generals than one they make themselves into a company of tyrants. Sometimes the oligarchs, fearing this danger, give the people a share in the government because their services are necessary to them. And in time of peace, from mutual distrust, the two parties hand over the defence of the state to the army and to an arbiter between the two factions who often ends the master of both. This happened at Larissa when Simos and the Aleuadei had the government, and at Abydos in the days of Iphiades and the political clubs. Revolutions also arise out of marriages or lawsuits which lead to the overthrow of one party among the oligarchs by another. Of quarrels about marriages I have already mentioned some instances; another occurred at Eretria, where Diagoras overturned the oligarchy of the knights because he had been wronged about a marriage. A revolution at Heraclea, and another at Thebes, both arose out of decisions of law-courts upon a charge of adultery; in both cases the punishment was just, but executed in the spirit of party, at Heraclea upon Eurytion, and at Thebes upon Archias; for their enemies were jealous of them and so had them pilloried in the agora. Many oligarchies have been destroyed by some members of the ruling class taking offence at their excessive despotism; for example, the oligarchy at Cnidus and at Chios.

* samoarxia.  
* Cp. c. 4. §§ 5-7.
Changes of constitutional governments, and also of oligarchies which limit the office of counsellor, judge, or other magistrate to persons having a certain money qualification, often occur by accident. The qualification may have been originally fixed according to the circumstances of the time, in such a manner as to include in an oligarchy a few only, or in a constitutional government the middle class. But after a time of prosperity, whether arising from peace or some other good fortune, the same property becomes many times as large, and then everybody participates in every office; this happens sometimes gradually and insensibly, and sometimes quickly. These are the causes of changes and revolutions in oligarchies.

We must remark generally, both of democracies and oligarchies, that they sometimes change, not into the opposite forms of government, but only into another variety of the same class; I mean to say, from those forms of democracy and oligarchy which are regulated by law into those which are arbitrary, and conversely.

In aristocracies revolutions are stirred up when a few only share in the honours of the state; a cause which has been already shown to affect oligarchies; for an aristocracy is a sort of oligarchy, and, like an oligarchy, is the government of a few, although the few are the (1) jealousy, virtuous and not the wealthy; hence the two are often confounded. And revolutions will be most likely to happen, and must happen, when the majority of the people are high-spirited, and have a notion that they are as good as their rulers. Thus at Lacedaemon the so-called Partheniae, who were the [illegitimate] sons of the Spartan peers, attempted a revolution, and, being detected, were sent away to colonize Tarentum. Again, revolutions occur when great men who are at least of equal merit are dishonoured by those higher in office as Lysander was by the kings of Sparta: or, when a brave man is excluded from the honours of the state, like Cinadon, who conspired against the Spartans under
Agesilaus; or, again, when some are very poor and others very rich, a state of society which is most often the result of war, as at Lacedaemon in the days of the Messenian War; this is proved from the poem of Tyrtaeus, entitled 'Good Order;' for he speaks of certain citizens who were ruined by the war and wanted to have a redistribution of the land. Again, revolutions arise when an individual who is great, and might be greater, wants to rule alone, as at Lacedaemon, Pausanias, who was general in the Persian War, or like Hanno at Carthage.

Constitutional governments and aristocracies are commonly overthrown owing to some deviation from justice in the constitution itself; the cause of the downfall is, in the former, the ill-mingling of the two elements democracy and oligarchy; in the latter, of the three elements, democracy, oligarchy, and virtue, but especially democracy and oligarchy. For to combine these is the endeavour of constitutional governments; and most of the so-called aristocracies have a like aim, but differ from polities by the addition of virtue; hence some of them are more and some less permanent. Those which incline more to oligarchy are called aristocracies, and those which incline to democracy constitutional governments. And therefore the latter are the safer of the two; for the greater the number, the greater the strength, and when men are equal they are contented. But the rich, if the government gives them power, are apt to be insolent and avaricious; and, in general, whichever way the constitution inclines, in that direction it changes as either party gains strength, a constitutional government becoming a democracy, an aristocracy, an oligarchy. But the process may be reversed, and aristocracy may change into democracy. This happens when the poor, under the idea that they are being wronged, force the constitution to take an opposite form.

* Cp. iv. c. 7.
In like manner constitutional governments change into oligarchies. The only stable principle of government is equality according to proportion, and for every man to enjoy his own.

What I have just mentioned actually happened at Thurii, where the qualification for office, though at first high, was reduced, and the magistrates increased in number. The notables had previously acquired the whole of the land contrary to law; for the government tended to oligarchy, and they were able to encroach. But the people, who had been trained by war, soon got the better of the guards kept by the oligarchs, until those who had too much gave up their land.

Again, since all aristocratical governments incline to oligarchy, the notables are apt to be grasping; thus at Lacedaemon, where property has passed into few hands, the notables can do too much as they like, and are allowed to marry whom they please. The city of Locri was ruined by a marriage connexion with Dionysius, but such a thing could never have happened in a democracy, or in a well-balanced aristocracy.

I have already remarked that in all states revolutions are occasioned by trifles. In aristocracies, above all, they are of a gradual and imperceptible nature. The citizens begin by giving up some part of the constitution, and so with greater ease the government change something else which is a little more important, until they have undermined the whole fabric of the state. At Thurii there was a law that generals should only be re-elected after an interval of five years, and some high-spirited young men who were popular with the soldiers of the guard, despising the magistrates and thinking that they would easily gain their purpose, wanted to abolish this law and allow their generals to hold perpetual commands; for they well knew that the people would be glad enough to elect them. Whereupon the magistrates who had charge

---

\(^a\) Cp. c. 3. § 12.  \(^b\) Cp. ii. 9. § 14.  \(^c\) c. 4. § 1.
of these matters, and who are called councillors, at first determined to resist, but they afterwards consented, thinking that, if only this one law was changed, no further inroad would be made on the constitution. But other changes soon followed which they in vain attempted to oppose; and the state passed into the hands of the revolutionists who established a dynastic oligarchy.

All constitutions are overthrown either from within or from without; the latter, when there is some government close at hand having an opposite interest, or at a distance, but powerful. This was exemplified in the old times of the Athenians and the Lacedaemonians; the Athenians everywhere put down the oligarchies, and the Lacedaemonians the democracies.

I have now explained what are the chief causes of revolutions and dissensions in states.

We have next to consider what means there are of preserving states in general, and also in particular cases. In the first place it is evident that if we know the causes which destroy states, we shall also know the causes which preserve them; for opposites produce opposites, and destruction is the opposite of preservation.

In all well-attempered governments there is nothing which should be more jealously maintained than the spirit of obedience to law, more especially in small matters; for transgression creeps in unperceived and at last ruins the state, just as the constant recurrence of small expenses in time eats up a fortune. The change does not take place all at once, and therefore is not observed; the mind is deceived, as in the fallacy which says that ‘if each part is little, then the whole is little.’ And this is true in one way, but not in another, for the whole and the all are not little, although they are made up of littles.

In the first place, then, men should guard against the beginning of change, and in the second place they should

---

a Cp. iv. c. 11. § 18.  
HOW TO AVOID REVOLUTION. 163

V. 8.

The people should be well treated.

Among equals there should be equality and therefore offices should be held by many persons for a short time only.

States are preserved when their destroyers are at a distance, and sometimes also because they are near, for the fear of them makes the government keep in hand the state. Wherefore the ruler who has a care of the state should invent terrors, and bring distant dangers near, in order

* Cp. iv. 13. § 1.
* vi. 7. § 4.
* Supra c. 6. § 6.
* Cp. c. 5. § 6.
that the citizens may be on their guard, and, like sentinels in a night-watch, never relax their attention. He should endeavour too by help of the laws to control the contentions and quarrels of the notables, and to prevent those who have not hitherto taken part in them from being drawn in. No ordinary man can discern the beginning of evil, but only the true statesman.

As to the change produced in oligarchies and constitutional governments by the alteration of the qualification, when this arises, not out of any variation in the census but only out of the increase of money, it is well to compare the general valuation of property with that of past years, annually in those cities in which the census is taken annually, and in larger cities every third or fifth year. If the whole is many times greater or many times less than when the rates were fixed at the previous census, there should be power given by law to raise or lower the qualification as the amount is greater or less. Where in the absence of any such provision the standard is raised, a constitutional government passes into an oligarchy, and an oligarchy is narrowed to a rule of families; where the standard is lowered, constitutional government becomes democracy, and oligarchy either constitutional government or democracy.

It is a principle common to democracy, oligarchy, and every other form of government not to allow the disproportionate increase of any citizen, but to give moderate honour for a long time rather than great honour for a short time. For men are easily spoilt; not every one can bear prosperity. But if this rule is not observed, at any rate the honours which are given all at once should be taken away by degrees and not all at once. Especially should the laws provide against any one having too much power, whether derived from friends or money; if he has, he and his followers should be sent out of the

---

*a* Cp. c. 4. §§ 1-3  
*b* Cp. c. 3. § 8; c. 6. §§ 16-18.  
*c* Or, adding εαλ μοναρχία, 'monarchy,' with many MSS. and Bekker's first edition.
country. And since innovations creep in through the private life of individuals, there ought to be a magistracy which will have an eye to those whose life is not in harmony with the government, whether oligarchy or democracy or any other. And for a like reason an increase of prosperity in any part of the state should be carefully watched. The proper remedy for this evil is always to give the management of affairs and offices of state to opposite elements; such opposites are the virtuous and the many, or the rich and the poor. Another way is to combine the poor and the rich in one body, or to increase the middle class: thus an end will be put to the revolutions which arise from inequality.

But above all every state should be so administered and so regulated by law that its magistrates cannot possibly make money. In oligarchies special precautions should be used against this evil. For the people do not take any great offence at being kept out of the government—indeed they are rather pleased than otherwise at having leisure for their private business—but what irritates them is to think that their rulers are stealing the public money; then they are doubly annoyed; for they lose both honour and profit. If office brought no profit, then and then only could democracy and aristocracy be combined; for both notables and people might have their wishes gratified. All would be able to hold office, which is the aim of democracy, and the notables would be magistrates, which is the aim of aristocracy. And this result may be accomplished when there is no possibility of making money out of the offices; for the poor will not want to have them when there is nothing to be gained from them—they would rather be attending to their own concerns; and the rich, who do not want money from the public treasury, will be able to take them; and so the poor will keep to their work and grow rich, and the notables will not be governed by the lower class. In order to avoid peculation of the public money,

\(^a\) Cp. c. 3. § 3; iii. 13. § 15. \(^b\) Cp. c. 12. § 14.
the transfer of the revenue should be made at a general assembly of the citizens, and duplicates of the accounts deposited with the different brotherhoods, companies, and tribes. And honours should be given by law to magistrates who have the reputation of being incorruptible. In democracies the rich should be spared; not only should their property not be divided, but their incomes also, which in some states are taken from them imperceptibly, should be protected. It is a good thing to prevent the wealthy citizens, even if they are willing, from undertaking expensive and useless public services, such as the giving of choruses, torch-races, and the like. In an oligarchy, on the other hand, great care should be taken of the poor, and lucrative offices should go to them; if any of the wealthy classes insult them, the offender should be punished more severely than one of their own class for a like offence. Provision should be made that estates pass by inheritance and not by gift, and no person should have more than one inheritance; for in this way properties will be equalised, and more of the poor rise to competency. It is also expedient both in a democracy and in an oligarchy to assign to those who have less share in the government (for example, to the rich in a democracy and to the poor in an oligarchy) an equality or preference in all but the principal offices of state. The latter should be entrusted chiefly or only to members of the governing class.

There are three qualifications required in those who have to fill the highest offices,—(1) first of all, loyalty to the established constitution; (2) the greatest administrative capacity; (3) virtue and justice of the kind proper to each form of government; for, if what is just is not the same in all governments, the quality of justice must also differ. There may be a doubt however, when all these qualities do not meet in the same person, how the selection is to be made; suppose, for example, a good general.

* Or: 'than if he had wronged one of his own class.'
is a bad man and not a friend to the constitution, and another man is loyal and just, which should we choose? In making the election ought we not to consider two points? what qualities are common, and what are rare.

3 Thus in the choice of a general, we should regard his skill rather than his virtue; for few have military skill, but many have virtue. In keeping watch or in any office of stewardship, on the other hand, the opposite rule should be observed; for more virtue than ordinary is required in the holder of such an office, but the necessary knowledge is of a sort which all men possess.

4 It may, however, be asked what a man wants with virtue if he have political ability and is loyal, since these two qualities alone will make him do what is for the public interest. But may not men have both of them and yet be deficient in self-control? If, knowing and loving their own interests, they do not always attend to them, may they not be equally negligent of the interests of the public?

5 Speaking generally, we may say that whatever legal enactments are held to be for the interest of states, all these preserve states. And the great preserving principle is the one which has been repeatedly mentioned*—to have care that the loyal citizens should outnumber the disloyal. Neither should we forget the mean, which at the present day is lost sight of in perverted forms of government; for many practices which appear to be democratical are the ruin of democracies, and many which appear to be oligarchical are the ruin of oligarchies.

6 Those who think that all virtue is to be found in their own party principles push matters to extremes; they do not consider that disproportion destroys a state. A nose which varies from the ideal of straightness to a hook or snub may still be of good shape and agreeable to the eye; but if the excess be very great, all symmetry is lost, and the nose at last ceases to be a nose at all.

* Cp. iv. 12. § 1 ; vi. 6. § 2.
on account of some excess in one direction or defect in
the other; and this is true of every other part of the
human body. The same law of proportion equally holds in
states. Oligarchy or democracy, although a departure
from the most perfect form, may yet be a good
eough government, but if any one attempts to push
the principles of either to an extreme, he will begin by
spoilng the government and end by having none at all.
Wherefore the legislator and the statesman ought to know
what democratical measures save and what destroy a democracy, and what oligarchical measures save or destroy an oligarchy. For neither the one nor the other can exist or continue to exist unless both rich and poor are included in it. If equality of property is introduced, the state must of necessity take another form; for when by laws carried to excess one or other element in the state is ruined, the constitution is ruined.

There is an error common both to oligarchies and to democracies:—in the latter the demagogues, when the multitude are above the law, are always cutting the city in two by quarrels with the rich, whereas they should always profess to be maintaining their cause; just as in oligarchies, the oligarchs should profess to maintain the cause of the people, and should take oaths the opposite of those which they now take. For there are cities in which they swear—"I will be an enemy to the people, and will devise all the harm against them which I can;" but they ought to exhibit and to entertain the very opposite feeling; in the form of their oath there should be an express declaration—"I will do no wrong to the people."

But of all the things which I have mentioned that which most contributes to the permanence of constitutions is the adaptation of education to the form of government, and yet in our own day this principle is universally neglected. The best laws, though sanctioned by every citizen of the state, will be of no avail unless the young are trained by

\[\text{Cp. i. c. 13. § 15.}\]
habit and education in the spirit of the constitution, if the laws are democratical, democratically, or oligarchically, if the laws are oligarchical. For there may be a want of self-discipline in states as well as in individuals. Now, to have been educated in the spirit of the constitution is not to perform the actions in which oligarchs or democrats delight, but those by which the existence of an oligarchy or of a democracy is made possible. Whereas among ourselves the sons of the ruling class in an oligarchy live in luxury, but the sons of the poor are hardened by exercise and toil, and hence they are both more inclined and better able to make a revolution. And in democracies of the more extreme type there has arisen a false idea of freedom which is contradictory to the true interests of the state. For two principles are characteristic of democracy, the government of the majority and freedom. Men think that what is just is equal; and that equality is the supremacy of the popular will; and that freedom and equality mean the doing what a man likes. In such democracies every one lives as he pleases, or in the words of Euripides, 'according to his fancy.' But this is all wrong; men should not think it slavery to live according to the rule of the constitution; for it is their salvation.

I have now discussed generally the causes of the revolution and destruction of states, and the means of their preservation and continuance.

I have still to speak of monarchy, and the causes of its destruction and preservation. What I have said already respecting other forms of government applies almost equally to royal and to tyrannical rule. For royal rule is of the nature of an aristocracy, and a tyranny is a compound of oligarchy and democracy in their most extreme forms; it is therefore most injurious to its subjects, being made up of two evil forms of government, and having the perversions and errors of both. These two forms of monarchy differ in their very origin. The

---

*a* Cp. iv. 11. § 6.  
V. 10. 

Tyrannies established,

(1) by demagogues;

(2) by ambitious kings;

(3) by great magistrates;

Examples.

- Royalty like aristocracy based on merit.

Appointment of a king is the resource of the better classes against the people, and he is elected by them out of their own number, because either he himself or his family excel in virtue and virtuous actions; whereas a tyrant is chosen from the people to be their protector against the notables, and in order to prevent them from being injured. History shows that almost all tyrants have been demagogues who gained the favour of the people by their accusation of the notables. At any rate this was the manner in which the tyrannies arose in the days when cities had increased in power. Others which were older originated in the ambition of kings wanting to overstep the limits of their hereditary power and become despots. Others again grew out of the class which were chosen to be chief magistrates; for in ancient times the people who elected them gave the magistrates, whether civil or religious, a long tenure. Others arose out of the custom which oligarchies had of making some individual supreme over the highest offices. In any of these ways an ambitious man had no difficulty, if he desired, in creating a tyranny, since he had the power in his hands already, either as king or as one of the officers of state. Thus Pheidon at Argos and several others were originally kings, and ended by becoming tyrants; Phalaris, on the other hand, and the Ionian tyrants, acquired the tyranny by holding great offices. Whereas Panaitius at Leontini, Cypselus at Corinth, Peisistratus at Athens, Dionysius at Syracuse, and several others who afterwards became tyrants, were at first demagogues.

And so, as I was saying, royalty ranks with aristocracy, for it is based upon merit, whether of the individual or of his family, or on benefits conferred, or on these claims with power added to them. For all who have obtained this honour have benefitted, or had in

\* Cp. c. 5. § 6; Plato Rep. 565 D.
\[b\] Retaining τοῦτον, which is omitted in Bekker's second edition, apparently by mistake.
\[c\] Cp. c. 5. § 8.
\[d\] Cp. iii. 14. § 12.
their power to benefit, states and nations; some, like Codrus, have prevented the state from being enslaved in war; others, like Cyrus, have given their country freedom, or have settled or gained a territory, like the Laconian, Macedonian, and Molossian kings. The idea of a king is to be a protector of the rich against unjust treatment, of the people against insult and oppression. Whereas a tyrant, as has often been repeated, has no regard to any public interest, but only to his private ends; his aim is pleasure, the aim of a king, and the desire of riches, the king, of what brings honour. Therefore also in their desires they differ; the tyrant is desirous of riches, the king, of what brings honour. And the guards of a king are citizens, but of a tyrant mercenaries.

That tyranny has all the vices both of democracy and oligarchy is evident. As of oligarchy so of tyranny, the end is wealth; (for by wealth only can the tyrants maintain either his guard or his luxury). Both mistrust the people, and therefore deprive them of their arms. Both agree too in injuring the people and driving them out of the city and dispersing them. From democracy tyrants have borrowed the art of making war upon the notables and destroying them secretly or openly, or of exiling them because they are rivals and stand in the way of their power; and also because plots against them are contrived by men of this class, who either want to rule or to escape subjection. Hence Periander advised Thrasybulus to cut off the tops of the tallest ears of corn, meaning that he must always put out of the way the citizens who overtop the rest. And so, as I have already intimated, the beginnings of change are the same in monarchies as in other forms of government; subjects attack their sovereigns out of fear or contempt, or because they have been unjustly treated by them. And of injustice, the most common form is insult, another is confiscation of property.

The ends sought by conspiracies against monarchies,

V. 10.

whether tyrannies or royalties, are the same as the ends sought by conspiracies against other forms of government. Monarchs have great wealth and honour which are objects of desire to all mankind. The attacks are made sometimes against their lives, sometimes against the office; where the sense of insult is the motive, against their lives. Any sort of insult (and there are many) may stir up anger, and when men are angry, they commonly act out of revenge, and not from ambition. For example, the attempt made upon the Peisistratidae arose out of the public dishonour offered to the sister of Harmodius and the insult to himself. He attacked the tyrant for his sister’s sake, and Aristogeiton joined in the attack for the sake of Harmodius. A conspiracy was also formed against Periander, the tyrant of Ambracia, because, when drinking with a favourite youth, he asked him whether by this time he was not with child by him. Philip, too, was attacked by Pausanias because he permitted him to be insulted by Attalus and his friends, and Amyntas the little, by Derdas, because he boasted of having enjoyed his youth. Evagoras of Cyprus, again, was slain by the eunuch to revenge an insult; for his wife had been carried off by Evagoras’ son. Many conspiracies have originated in shameful attempts made by sovereigns on the persons of their subjects. Such was the attack of Crataeus upon Archelaus; he had always hated the connexion with him, and so, when Archelaus, having promised him one of his two daughters in marriage, did not give him either of them, but broke his word and married the elder to the king of Elymaea, when he was hard pressed in a war against Sirrhias and Arrhiaeus, and the younger to his own son Amyntas, under the idea that he would then be less likely to quarrel with the son of Cleopatra—Crataeus made this slight a pretext for attacking Archelaus, though even a less reason would have sufficed, for the real cause of the estrangement was the disgust which he felt at his connexion with the king. And from a like motive Hellanor-
crates of Larissa conspired with him; for when Archelauus, who was his lover, did not fulfil his promise of restoring him to his country, he thought that the connexion between them had originated, not in affection, but in the wantonness of power. Parrhon, too, and Heracleides of Cotys. Aenos, slew Cotys in order to avenge their father, and Adamas revolted from Cotys in revenge for the wanton outrage which he had committed in mutilating him when a child.

19  *Many, too, irritated at blows inflicted on the person which they deemed an insult, have either killed or attempted to kill officers of state and royal princes by whom they have been injured*. Thus, at Mitylene, Megacles and his friends attacked and slew the Penthialidae, as they were going about and striking people with clubs. At a later date Smerdis, who had been beaten and torn away from his wife by Penthillus, slew him. In the conspiracy against Archelauus, Decamnichus stimulated the fury of the assassins and led the attack; he was enraged because Archelauus had delivered him to Euripides to be scourged; for the poet had been irritated at some remark made by Decamnichus on the foulness of his breath. Many other examples might be cited of murders and conspiracies which have arisen from similar causes.

20  Fear is another motive which has caused conspiracies as well in monarchies as in more popular forms of government. Thus Artapanes conspired against Xerxes and slew him, fearing that he would be accused of hanging Darius against his orders,—he being under the impression that Xerxes would forget what he had said in the middle of a meal, and that the offence would be forgiven.

212. Another motive is contempt, as in the case of Sarda-
napalus, whom some one saw carding wool with his women, if the story-tellers say truly; and the tale may

* Or: 'Many persons too, even of those connected with the government or the royal family,' taking πῶς ἔσπι, etc. with the subject.
be true, if not of him, of some one else. Dion attacked the younger Dionysius because he despised him, and saw that he was equally despised by his own subjects, and that he was always drunk. Even the friends of a tyrant will sometimes attack him out of contempt; for the confidence which he reposes in them breeds contempt, and they think that they will not be found out. The expectation of success is likewise a sort of contempt; the assailants are ready to strike, and think nothing of the danger, because they seem to have the power in their hands. Thus generals of armies attack monarchs; as, for example, Cyrus attacked Astyages, despising the effeminacy of his life, and believing that his power was worn out. Thus, again, Seuthes the Thracian conspired against Amadocus, whose general he was.

And sometimes men are actuated by more than one motive, like Mithridates, who conspired against Ariobarzanes, partly out of contempt and partly from the love of gain.

Bold natures, placed by their sovereigns in a high military position, are most likely to make the attempt in the expectation of success; for courage is emboldened by power, and the union of the two inspires them with the hope of an easy victory.

Attempts of which the motive is ambition arise from other causes. There are men who will not risk their lives in the hope of gains and rewards however great, but who nevertheless regard the killing of a tyrant simply as an extraordinary action which will make them famous and honourable in the world; they wish to acquire, not a kingdom, but a name. It is rare, however, to find such men; he who would kill a tyrant must be prepared to lose his life if he fail. He must have the resolution of Dion, who, when he made war upon Dionysius, took with him very few troops, saying ‘that whatever measure of success he might attain would be enough for him, even if he were to die the moment he landed; such a death

* Cp. i. 11. § 8.
would be welcome to him.' But this is a temper to which few can attain.

29 Once more, tyrannies, like all other governments, are destroyed from without by some opposite and more powerful form of government. That such a government will have the will to attack them is clear; for the two are opposed in principle; and all men, if they can, do what they will. Democracy is also antagonistic to tyranny, on the principle of Hesiod, 'Potter hates Potter;' because they are nearly akin, for the extreme form of democracy is tyranny; and royalty and aristocracy are both alike opposed to tyranny, because they are constitutions of a different type. And therefore the Lacedaemonians put down most of the tyrannies, and so did the Syracusans during the time when they were well-governed.

31 Again, tyrannies are destroyed from within, when the reigning family are divided among themselves, as that of Gelo was, and more recently that of Dionysius; in the case of Gelo because Thrasybulus, the brother of Hiero, flattered the son of Gelo and led him into excesses in order that he might rule in his name. Whereupon the family conspired to get rid of Thrasybulus and save the tyranny; but the party who conspired * with them seized the opportunity and drove them all out. In the case of Dionysius, Dion, his own relative, attacked and expelled him with the assistance of the people; he afterwards perished himself.

There are two chief motives which induce men to attack tyrannies—hatred and contempt. Hatred of tyrants is inevitable, and contempt is also a frequent cause of their destruction. Thus we see that most of those who have acquired, have retained their power, but those who have inherited b, have lost it, almost at once; for living in luxurious ease, they have become contemptible, and offer many opportunities to their assailants. Anger, too, must be included under hatred,

* Omitting κατ' inserted by Bekker in 2nd ed.
and produces the same effects. It is oftentimes even more ready to strike—the angry are more impetuous in making an attack, for they do not listen to reason. And men are very apt to give way to their passions when they are insulted. To this cause is to be attributed the fall of the Peisistratidae and of many others. Hatred is more reasonable, but anger is accompanied by pain, which is an impediment to reason, whereas hatred is painless.

In a word, all the causes which I have mentioned as destroying the last and most unmixed form of oligarchy, and the extreme form of democracy, may be assumed to affect tyranny; indeed the extreme forms of both are only tyrannies distributed among several persons. Kingly rule is little affected by external causes, and is, therefore, lasting; it is generally destroyed from within. And there are two ways in which the destruction may come about; (1) when the members of the royal family quarrel among themselves, and (2) when the kings attempt to administer the state too much after the fashion of a tyranny, and to extend their authority contrary to the law. There are now no royalties; monarchies, where they exist, are tyrannies. For the rule of a king is over voluntary subjects, and he is supreme in all important matters; but in our own day men are more upon an equality, and no one is so immeasurably superior to others as to represent adequately the greatness and dignity of the office. Hence mankind will not, if they can help, endure it, and any one who obtains power by force or fraud is at once thought to be a tyrant. In hereditary monarchies further cause of destruction is the fact that kings often fall into contempt, and, although possessing not tyrannical but only royal power, are apt to outrage others. Their overthrow is then readily effected; for there is an end to the king when his subjects do not want to have him, but the tyrant lasts, whether they like him or not.

---

a Cp. Rhetoric, ii. 4. § 31.
b Omitting "ae" with Bekker's 2nd ed.
The destruction of monarchies is to be attributed to these and the like causes.

And they are preserved, to speak generally, by the opposite causes; or, if we consider them separately, (1) royalty is preserved by the limitation of its powers. The more restricted the functions of kings, the longer their power will last unimpaired; for then they are more moderate and not so despotick in their ways; and they are less envied by their subjects. This is the reason why the kingly office has lasted so long among the Molossians. And for a similar reason it has continued among the Lacedaemonians, because there it was always divided between two, and afterwards further limited by Theopompus in various respects, more particularly by the establishment of the Ephorality. He diminished the power of the kings, but established on a more lasting basis the kingly office, which was thus made in a certain sense not less, but greater. There is a story that when his wife once asked him whether he was not ashamed to leave to his sons a royal power which was less than he had inherited from his father, ‘No indeed,’ he replied, ‘for the power which I leave to them will be more lasting.’

As to (2) tyrannies, they are preserved in two most opposite ways. One of them is the old traditional method in which most tyrants administer their government. Of such arts Periander of Corinth is said to have been the great master, and many similar devices may be gathered from the Persians in the administration of their government. There are also the ancient prescriptions for the preservation of a tyranny, in so far as this is possible; viz., that the tyrant should lop off those who are too high; he must put to death men of spirit; he must not allow common meals, clubs, education, and the like; he must be upon his guard against anything which is likely to inspire either courage or confidence among his subjects; he must prohibit literary assemblies or other meetings for discussion, and he must take every means to prevent people from knowing one another (for acquaintance...
V. II. begets mutual confidence). Further he must compel the inhabitants to appear in public and live *at his gates*; then he will know what they are doing; if they are always kept under, they will learn to be humble. In short he should practise these and the like Persian and barbaric arts which all have the same object. A tyrant 7 should also endeavour to know what each of his subjects says or does, and should employ spies, like the 'female detectives' at Syracuse, and the eavesdroppers whom Hiero was in the habit of sending to any place of resort or meeting; for the fear of informers prevents people from speaking their minds, and if they do, they are more easily found out. Another art of the tyrant is to sow quarrels among the citizens; friends should be embroiled with friends, the people with the notables, and the rich with one another. Also he should impoverish his subjects; he thus provides money for the support of his guards, and the people, having to keep hard at work, are prevented from conspiring. The Pyramids of Egypt afford an example of this policy; also the offerings of the family of Cypselus, and the building of the temple of Olympian Zeus by the Peisistratidae, and the great Polycratean monuments at Samos; all these works were alike intended to occupy the people and keep them poor. Another 10 practice of tyrants is to multiply taxes, after the manner of Dionysius at Syracuse, who contrived that within five years his subjects should bring into the treasury their whole property. The tyrant is also fond of making war in order that his subjects may have something to do and be always in want of a leader. And whereas the power of a king is preserved by his friends, the characteristic of a tyrant is to distrust his friends, because he knows that all men want to overthrow him, and they above all have the power.*

*a Or, 'at their doors.'
*b Reading 7 74 with Bekker's 2nd ed.
*c This, which is probably the meaning of the passage, cannot be elicited from the text as it stands. The addition is required of
Again, the evil practices of the last and worst form of democracy are all found in tyrannies. Such are the power given to women in their families in the hope that they will inform against their husbands, and the licence which is allowed to slaves in order that they may betray their masters; for slaves and women do not conspire against tyrants; and they are of course friendly to tyrannies and also to democracies, since under them they have a good time. For the people too would fain be a monarch, and therefore by them, as well as by the tyrant, the flatterer is held in honour; in democracies he is the demagogue; and the tyrant also has his humble companions who flatter him.

Hence tyrants are always fond of bad men, because they love to be flattered, but no man who has the spirit of a freeman in him will demean himself by flattery; good men love others, but they do not flatter anybody. Moreover the bad are useful for bad purposes; ‘nail knocks out nail,’ as the proverb says. It is characteristic of a tyrant to dislike every one who has dignity or independence; he wants to be alone in his glory, but any one who claims a like dignity or asserts his independence encroaches upon his prerogative, and is hated by him as an enemy to his power. Another mark of a tyrant is that he likes foreigners better than citizens, and lives with them and invites them to his table; for the one are enemies, but the others enter into no rivalry with him.

Such are the notes of the tyrant and the arts by which he preserves his power; there is no wickedness too great for him. All that we have said may be summed up under three heads, which answer to the three aims of the tyrant. These are, (1) the humiliation of his subjects; he knows that a mean-spirited man will not conspire against anybody: (2) the creation of mistrust among them; for a tyrant is not overthrown until men begin to have confidence in one another; and this some such phrase as ἄνθρωπος ἀθάνατος, which is not wholly without manuscript authority.
V. is the reason why tyrants are at war with the good; they are under the idea that their power is endangered by them, not only because they will not be ruled despotically, but also because they are loyal to one another, and to other men, and do not inform against one another or against other men: (3) the tyrant desires that his subjects shall be incapable of action, for no one attempts what is impossible, and they will not attempt to overthrow a tyranny, if they are powerless. Under these three heads the whole policy of a tyrant may be summed up, and to one or other of them all his ideas may be referred: (1) he sows distrust among his subjects; (2) he takes away their power; (3) he humbles them.

This then is one of the two methods by which tyrannies are preserved; and there is another which proceeds upon a different principle of action. The nature of this latter method may be gathered from a comparison of the causes which destroy kingdoms, for as one mode of destroying kingly power is to make the office of king more tyrannical, so the salvation of a tyranny is to make it more like the rule of a king. But of one thing the tyrant must be careful; he must keep power enough to rule over his subjects, whether they like him or not, for if he once gives this up he gives up his tyranny. But though power must be retained as the foundation, in all else the tyrant should act or appear to act in the character of a king. In the first place he should pretend a care of the public revenues, and not waste money in making presents of a sort at which the common people get excited when they see their miserable earnings taken from them and lavished on courtzans and strangers and artists. He should give an account of what he receives and of what he spends (a practice which has been adopted by some tyrants); for then he will seem to be the manager of a household rather than a tyrant; nor need he fear that, while he is the lord of the city, he will ever be in want of money. Such a policy is much more advantageous for the tyrant.
when he goes from home, than to leave behind him a hoard, for then the garrison who remain in the city will be less likely to attack his power; and a tyrant, when he is absent from home, has more reason to fear the guardians of his treasure than the citizens, for the one accompany him, but the others remain behind. In the second place, he should appear to collect taxes and to require public services only for state purposes, and that he may form a fund in case of war, he ought to make himself the guardian and treasurer of them, as if they belonged, not to him, but to the public. He should appear, not harsh, but dignified, and when men meet him they should look upon him with reverence, and not with fear. Yet it is hard for him to be respected if he inspires no respect, and therefore whatever virtues he may neglect, at least he should maintain the character of a statesman, and produce the impression that he is one. Neither he nor any of his associates should ever be guilty of the least offence against modesty towards the young of either sex who are his subjects, and the women of his family should observe a like self-control towards other women; the insolence of women has ruined many tyrannies. In the indulgence of pleasures he should be the opposite of our modern tyrants, who not only begin at dawn and pass whole days in sensuality, but want other men to see them, that they may admire their happy and blessed lot. In these things a tyrant should be especially moderate, or at any rate should not parade his vices to the world; for a drunken and drowsy tyrant is soon despised and attacked; not so he who is temperate and wide awake. His conduct should be the very reverse of nearly everything which has been said before about tyrants. He ought to adorn and improve his city, as though he were not a tyrant, but the guardian of the state. Also he should appear to be particularly earnest in the service of the Gods; for if men think that a ruler is religious and has a reverence for the Gods, they are less afraid of suffering injustice at his hands, and they are less
V. II. disposed to conspire against him, because they believe him to have the very Gods fighting on his side. At the same time his religion must not be thought foolish. And he should honour men of merit, and make them think that they would not be held in more honour by the citizens if they had a free government. The honour he should distribute himself, but the punishment should be inflicted by officers and courts of law. It is a precaution which is taken by all monarchs not to make one person great; but if one, then two or more should be raised, that they may look sharply after one another. If after all some one has to be made great, he should not be a man of bold spirit; for such dispositions are ever most inclined to strike. And if any one is to be deprived of his power, let it be diminished gradually, not taken from him all at once. The tyrant should abstain from all outrage; in particular from personal violence and from wanton conduct towards the young. He should be especially careful of his behaviour to men who are lovers of honour; for as the lovers of money are offended when their property is touched, so are the lovers of honour and the virtuous when their honour is affected. Therefore a tyrant ought either not to use force at all; or he should be thought only to employ fatherly correction, and not to trample upon others,—and his acquaintance with youth should be supposed to arise from affection, and not from the insolence of power, and in general he should compensate the appearance of dishonour by the increase of honour.

Of those who attempt assassination they are the most dangerous, and require to be most carefully watched who do not care to survive, if they effect their purpose. Therefore special precaution should be taken about any who think that either they or their relatives have been insulted; for when men are led away by passion to assault others they are regardless of themselves. As

* Cp. c. 8. § 12.
Heracleitus says, 'It is difficult to fight against anger; for a man will buy revenge with life.'

And whereas states consist of two classes, of poor men and of rich, the tyrant should lead both to imagine that they are preserved and prevented from harming one another by his rule, and whichever of the two is stronger he should attach to his government; for, having this advantage, he has no need either to emancipate slaves or to disarm the citizens; either party added to the force which he already has, will make him stronger than his assailants.

But enough of these details;—what should be the general policy of the tyrant is obvious. He ought to show himself to his subjects in the light, not of a tyrant, but of the master of a household and of a king. He should not appropriate what is theirs, but should be their guardian; he should be moderate, not extravagant in his way of life; he should be the companion of the notables, and the hero of the multitude. For then his rule will of necessity be nobler and happier, because he will rule over better men whose spirits are not crushed, over men to whom he himself is not an object of hatred, and of whom he is not afraid. His power too will be more lasting. Let his disposition be virtuous, or at least half virtuous; and if he must be wicked, let him be half wicked only.

Yet no forms of government are so short-lived as oligarchy and tyranny. The tyranny which lasted longest was that of Orthagoras and his sons at Sicyon; this continued for a hundred years. The reason was that they treated their subjects with moderation, and to a great extent observed the laws; and in various ways gained the favour of the people by the care which they took of them. Cleisthenes, in particular, was respected for his military ability. If report may be believed, he crowned the judge who decided against him in the games;

---

\( ^a \) Fragm. 69 (ed. Mullach).
\( ^b \) Cp. i. 5. § 2.
and, as some say, the sitting statue in the Agora of Sicyon is the likeness of this person. (A similar story is told of Peisistratus, who is said on one occasion to have allowed himself to be summoned and tried before the Areopagus.)

Next in duration to the tyranny of Orthagoras was that of the Cypselidae at Corinth, which lasted seventy-three years and six months: Cypselus reigned thirty years, Periander forty-four, and Psammetichus the son of Gordius three. Their continuance was due to similar causes: Cypselus was a popular man, who during the whole time of his rule never had a body-guard; and Periander, although he was a tyrant, was a great soldier. Third in duration was the rule of the Peisistratidae at Athens, but it was interrupted; for Peisistratus was twice driven out, so that during three and thirty years he reigned only seventeen; and his sons reigned eighteen—alltogether thirty-five years. Of other tyrannies, that of Hiero and Gelo at Syracuse was the most lasting. Even this, however, was short, not more than eighteen years in all; for Gelo continued tyrant for seven years, and died in the eighth; Hiero reigned for ten years, and Thrasybulus was driven out in the eleventh month. In fact, tyrannies generally have been of quite short duration.

I have now gone through all the causes by which constitutional governments and monarchies are either destroyed or preserved.

In the Republic of Plato, Socrates treats of revolutions, but not well, for he mentions no cause of change which peculiarly affects the first or perfect state. He only says that nothing is abiding, but that all things change in a certain cycle; and that the origin of the change is a base of numbers which are in the ratio of four to three, and this when combined with a figure of five gives two harmonies,—(he means when the number of this figure becomes solid); he conceives that nature will then pro-

---

*a* Rep. viii. 546.
duce bad men who will not submit to education; in which latter particular he may very likely be not far wrong, for there may well be some men who cannot be educated and made virtuous. But why is such a cause of change peculiar to his ideal state, and not rather common to all states, nay, to everything which comes into being at all? Or how is the state specially changed by the agency of time, which, as he declares, makes all things change? And things which did not begin together, change together⁴, for example, if something has come into being the day before the completion of the cycle, it will change with it. Further, why should the perfect state change into the Spartan? For governments more often take an opposite form than one akin to them. The same remark is applicable to the other changes; he says that the Spartan constitution changes into an oligarchy, and this into a democracy, and this again into a tyranny. And yet the contrary happens quite as often; for a democracy is even more likely to change into an oligarchy than into a monarchy. Further, he never says whether tyranny is, or is not, liable to revolutions, and if it is, what is the cause of them, or into what form it changes. And the reason is, that he could not very well have told: for there is no rule; according to him it should revert to the first and best, and then there would be a complete cycle. 

But in point of fact a tyranny often changes into a tyranny, as that at Sicyon changed from the tyranny of Myron into that of Cleisthenes; into oligarchy, as the tyranny of Antileon did at Chalcis; into democracy, as that of Gelo did at Syracuse; into aristocracy, as at Carthage, and the tyranny of Charilaus at Lacedaemon.

Often an oligarchy changes into a tyranny, like most

⁴ Placing a note of interrogation after μεταβαλλειν. Or: ‘And in the period of time which, as he says, makes all things change, things which did not begin together change together.’

Bekker in his 2nd edition has altered the reading of the MSS. διὰ τινος χρώματος to διὰ γε τινος χρώματος. The rendering of the text agrees with either reading; that of the note with the reading of the MSS. only.
of the ancient oligarchies in Sicily; for example, the oligarchy at Leontini changed into the tyranny of Panactius; that at Gela into the tyranny of Cleander; that at Rhegium into the tyranny of Anaxilaus; the same thing has happened in many other states. And it is absurd to suppose that the state changes into oligarchy merely because, [as Plato says\(^a\)] the ruling class are lovers and makers of money, and not because\(^b\) the very rich think it unfair that the very poor should have an equal share in the government with themselves.

Moreover in many oligarchies there are laws against making money in trade. But at Carthage, which is a democracy, there is no such prohibition; and yet to this day the Carthaginians have never had a revolution. It is absurd too for him to say that an oligarchy is two cities, one of the rich, and the other of the poor\(^b\). Is not this just as much the case in the Spartan constitution, or in any other in which either all do not possess equal property, or in which all are not equally good men? Nobody need be any poorer than he was before, and yet the oligarchy may change all the same into a democracy, if the poor form the majority; and a democracy may change into an oligarchy, if the wealthy class are stronger than the people, and the one are energetic, the other indifferent. Once more, although the causes of revolutions are very numerous, he mentions only one\(^c\), which is, that the citizens become poor through dissipation and debt, as though he thought that all, or the majority of them, were originally rich. This is not true: though it is true that when any of the leaders lose their property they are ripe for revolution; but, when anybody else, it is no great matter. And an oligarchy does not more often pass into a democracy than into any other form of government. Again, if men are deprived of the honours of state, and are wronged, and insulted,

\(^a\) Rep. viii. 550 E.
\(^b\) Rep. viii. 551 D.
\(^c\) Rep. viii. 555 D.
they make revolutions, and change forms of government, even although they have not wasted their substance because they might do what they liked—of which extravagance he declares excessive freedom to be the cause.

Finally, although there are many forms of oligarchies and democracies, Socrates speaks of their revolutions as though there were only one form of either of them.

* Rep. viii. 564.
BOOK VI.

VI. 1. We have now considered the varieties of the deliberative or supreme power in states, and the various arrangements of law-courts and state offices, and which of them are adapted to different forms of government a. We have also spoken of the destruction and preservation of states, how and from what causes they arise b.

Of democracy and all other forms of government there are many kinds; and it will be well to assign to them severally the modes of organization which are proper and advantageous to each, adding what remains to be said about them. Moreover, we ought to consider the various combinations of these modes themselves c; for such combinations make constitutions overlap one another, so that aristocracies have an oligarchical character, and constitutional governments incline to democracies d.

When I speak of the combinations which remain to be considered, and thus far have not been considered by us, I mean such as these:—when the deliberative part of the government and the election of officers is constituted oligarchically, and the law-courts aristocratically, or when the courts and the deliberative part of the state are oligarchical, and the election to offices aristocratical, or when in any other way there is a want of harmony in the composition of a state.

I have shown already what forms of democracy are suited to particular cities, and what of oligarchy to particular peoples, and to whom each of the other forms of government is suited. Further, we must not only show which of these governments is the best for each

---

a Bk. iv. 14-16.  
b Bk. v.  
d Cp. iv. 8. § 3.
state, but also briefly proceed to consider how these and other forms of government are to be established.

First of all let us speak of democracy, which will also bring to light the opposite form of government commonly called oligarchy. For the purposes of this enquiry we need to ascertain all the elements and characteristics of democracy, since from the combinations of these the varieties of democratic government arise. There are several of these differing from each other, and the difference is due to two causes. One (i) has been already mentioned—differences of population; for the popular element may consist of husbandmen, or of mechanics, or of labourers, and if the first of these be added to the second, or the third to the two others, not only does the democracy become better or worse, but its very nature is changed. A second cause (2) remains to be mentioned: the various properties and characteristics of democracy, when variously combined, make a difference. For one democracy will have less and another will have more, and another will have all of these characteristics. There is an advantage in knowing them all, whether a man wishes to establish some new form of democracy, or only to re-model an existing one. Founders of states try to bring together all the elements which accord with the ideas of the several constitutions; but this is a mistake of theirs, as I have already remarked when speaking of the destruction and preservation of states. We will now set forth the principles, characteristics, and aims of such states.

The basis of a democratic state is liberty; which, according to the common opinion of men, can only be enjoyed in such a state;—this they affirm to be the great end of every democracy*. One principle of liberty is for all to rule and be ruled in turn, and indeed democratic justice is the application of numerical not proportionate equality; whence it follows that the majority

---

VI. 2. must be supreme, and that whatever the majority approve must be the end and the just. Every citizen, it is said, must have equality, and therefore in a democracy the poor have more power than the rich, because there are more of them, and the will of the majority is supreme. This, then, is one note of liberty which all democrats affirm to be the principle of their state. Another is that a man should live as he likes. This, they say, is the privilege of a freeman, and, on the other hand, not to live as a man likes is the mark of a slave. This is the second characteristic of democracy, whence has arisen the claim of men to be ruled by none, if possible, or, if this is impossible, to rule and be ruled in turns; and so it coincides with the freedom based upon equality [which was the first characteristic].

Such being our foundation and such the nature of democracy, its characteristics are as follows:—the election of officers by all out of all; and that all should rule over each, and each in his turn over all; that the appointment to all offices, or to all but those which require experience and skill, should be made by lot; that no property qualification should be required for offices, or only a very low one; that no one should hold the same office twice, or not often, except in the case of military offices; that the tenure of all offices, or of as many as possible, should be brief; that all men should sit in judgment, or that judges selected out of all should judge in all matters, or in most, or in the greatest and most important,—such as the scrutiny of accounts, the constitution, and private contracts; that the assembly should be supreme over all causes, or at any rate over the most important, and the magistrates over none or only over a very few. Of all institutions, a council is the most democratic.

---

2. Or (taking δρόμος in the sense of 'beginning'), 'Such being our foundation, and such being the principle from which we start, the characteristics of democracy are as follows:'
when there is not the means of paying all the citizens, but when they are paid even this is robbed of its power; for the people then draw all cases to themselves, as I said in the previous discussion. The next characteristic of democracy is payment for services; assembly, law-courts, pay. magistrates, everybody receives pay, when it is to be had; or when it is not to be had for all, then it is given to the law-courts and to the stated assemblies, to the council and to the magistrates, or at least to any of them who are compelled to have their meals together. And whereas oligarchy is characterised by birth, wealth, and education, the notes of democracy appear to be the opposite of these,—low birth, poverty, mean employment.

Another note is that no magistracy is perpetual, but if any such have survived some ancient change in the constitution it should be stripped of its power, and the holders should be elected by lot and no longer by vote. Lot. These are points common to all democracies; but democracy and demos in their truest form are based upon the recognized principle of democratic justice, that all should count equally; for equality implies that the rich should have no more share in the government than the poor, and should not be the only rulers, but that all should rule equally according to their numbers. And in this way men think that they will secure equality and freedom in their state.

Next comes the question, how is this equality to be obtained? Is the qualification to be so distributed that five hundred rich shall be equal to a thousand poor? and shall we give the thousand a power equal to that of the five hundred? or, if this is not to be the mode, ought we still retaining the same ratio, to take equal numbers from each and give them the control of the elections and of

\[ \text{VI. 2} \]

\[ \text{Vestiges of antiquity in a democracy.} \]

\[ \text{1318a.} \]

\[ \text{Lot.} \]

\[ \text{By what arrangement of the qualification is equality to be secured?} \]

\[ \text{3.} \]

\[ \text{Cp. iv. 6. § 5.} \]

\[ \text{Transposing \textit{eópous} and \textit{eiépous}, with Bekker's 2nd ed.} \]

\[ \text{Cp. iv. 4. § 22.} \]

\[ \text{Reading with Bekker's 2nd ed. \textit{alpícovn} from conjecture for \textit{dapícovn}, which is the reading of the MSS. See note.} \]
VI. 3. the courts?—Which, according to the democratical notion, is the juster form of the constitution,—this or one based on numbers only? Democrats say that justice is that to which the majority agree, oligarchs that to which the wealthier class; in their opinion the decision should be given according to the amount of property. In both principles there is some inequality and injustice. For if justice is the will of the few, any one person who has more wealth than all the rest of his class put together, ought, upon the oligarchical principle, to have the sole power—but this would be tyranny; or if justice is the will of the majority, as I was before saying*, they will unjustly confiscate the property of the wealthy minority. To find a principle of equality in which they both agree we must enquire into their respective ideas of justice.

Now they agree in saying that whatever is decided by the majority of the citizens is to be deemed law. Granted:—but not without some reserve; since there are two classes out of which a state is composed,—the poor and the rich,—that is to be deemed law, on which both or the greater part of both agree; and if they disagree, that which is approved by the greater number, and by those who have the higher qualification. For example, suppose that there are ten rich and twenty poor, and some measure is approved by six of the rich and is disapproved by fifteen of the poor, and the remaining four of the rich join with the party of the poor, and the remaining five of the poor with that of the rich; in such a case the will of those whose qualifications, when both sides are added up, are the greatest, should prevail. If they turn out to be equal, there is no greater difficulty than at present, when, if the assembly or the courts are divided, recourse is had to the lot, or to some similar expedient. But, although it may be difficult in theory to know what is just and equal, the practical difficulty of inducing those to forbear who can, if they like, encroach, is far greater,

* Cp. lii. 10. § 1.
THE BEST KIND OF DEMOCRACY.

for the weaker are always asking for equality and justice, but the stronger care for none of these things.

Of the four kinds of democracy, as was said in the previous discussion, the best is that which comes first in order; it is also the oldest of them all. I am speaking of them according to the natural classification of their inhabitants. For the best material of democracy is an agricultural population; there is no difficulty in forming a democracy where the mass of the people live by agriculture or tending of cattle. Being poor, they have no leisure, and therefore do not often attend the assembly, and not having the necessaries of life they are always at work, and do not covet the property of others. Indeed, they find their employment pleasanter than the cares of government or office where no great gains can be made out of them, for the many are more desirous of gain than of honour. A proof is that even the ancient tyrannies were patiently endured by them, as they still endure oligarchies, if they are allowed to work and are not deprived of their property; for some of them grow quickly rich and the others are well enough off. Moreover they have the power of electing the magistrates and calling them to account; their ambition, if they have any, is thus satisfied; and in some democracies, although they do not all share in the appointment of offices, except through representatives elected in turn out of the whole people, as at Mantinea;—yet, if they have the power of deliberating, the many are contented. Even this form of government may be regarded as a democracy, and was such at Mantinea. Hence it is both expedient and customary in such a democracy that all should elect to offices, and conduct scrutinies, and sit in the law-courts, but that the great offices should be filled up by election and from persons having a qualification; the greater requiring a greater qualification, or, if there be no offices for which a qualification is required, then those who are marked out

VI. 3.

(1) The best material of democracy an agricultural population, dwelling far away from the town, and always at work.

In such a democracy the magistrates are elected by all out of the educated and wealthy, and are responsible to all.

• Or, 'care nothing for the weaker.'
• Cp. iv. 4. § 22.
• Cp. iv. 6. § 2.
• Cp. iv. 13. § 8.
• Cp. ii. 12. § 5.

VOL. 1.
by special ability should be appointed. Under such a form of government the citizens are sure to be governed well, (for the offices will always be held by the best persons; the people are willing enough to elect them and are not jealous of the good). The good and the notables will then be satisfied, for they will not be governed by men who are their inferiors, and the persons elected will rule justly, because others will call them to account. Every man should be responsible to others, nor should any one be allowed to do just as he pleases; for where absolute freedom is allowed there is nothing to restrain the evil which is inherent in every man. But the principle of responsibility secures that which is the greatest good in states; the right persons rule and are prevented from doing wrong, and the people have their due. It is evident that this is the best kind of democracy, and why? because the people are drawn from a certain class. The ancient laws of many states which aimed at making the people husbandmen were excellent. They provided either that no one should possess more than a certain quantity of land, or that, if he did, the land should not be within a certain distance from the town or the acropolis. Formerly in many states there was a law forbidding any one to sell his original allotment of land. There is a similar law attributed to Oxyulus, which is to the effect that there should be a certain portion of every man’s property on which he could not borrow money. A useful corrective to the evil of which I am speaking would be the law of the Aphytaeans, who, although they are numerous, and do not possess much land, are all of them husbandmen. For their properties are reckoned in the census, not entire, but only in such small portions that even the poor may have more than the amount required.

Next best to an agricultural, and in many respects similar, are a pastoral people, who live by their flocks;

* Cp. ii. 7. § 7.
* Or, ‘that the qualification of the poor may exceed that of the rich.’
they are the best trained of any for war, robust in body
and able to camp out. The people of whom other
democracies consist are far inferior to them, for their life
is inferior; there is no room for moral excellence in any
of their employments, whether they be mechanics or
traders or labourers. Besides, people of this class can
readily come to the assembly, because they are continu-
ally moving about in the city and in the agora; whereas
husbandmen are scattered over the country and do not
meet, or equally feel the want of assembling together.
Where the territory extends to a distance from the city,
there is no difficulty in making an excellent democracy or
constitutional government; for the people are compelled
to settle in the country, and even if there is a town
population the assembly ought not to meet when the
country people cannot come. We have thus explained
how the first and best form of democracy should be
constituted; it is clear that the other or inferior sorts
will deviate in a regular order, and the population which
is excluded will at each stage be of a lower kind.
The last form of democracy, that in which all share
alike, is one which cannot be borne by all states, and
will not last long unless well regulated by laws and
customs. The more general causes which tend to de-
stroy this or other kinds of government have now been
pretty fully considered. In order to constitute such a
democracy and strengthen the people, the leaders have
been in the habit of including as many as they can, and
making citizens not only of those who are legitimate, but
even of the illegitimate, and of those who have only one
parent a citizen, whether father or mother; for nothing
of this sort comes amiss to such a democracy. This is
the way in which demagogues proceed. Whereas the
right thing would be to make no more additions when
the number of the commonalty exceeds that of the
notables or of the middle class,—beyond this not to go.

* Cp. v. 5.  

b Cp. iii. 5. § 7.
THE CONSTRUCTION AND

VI. 4. When in excess of this point the state becomes disorderly, and the notables grow excited and impatient of the democracy, as in the insurrection at Cyrene; for no notice is taken of a little evil, but when it increases it strikes the eye. Measures like those which Cleisthenes passed when he wanted to increase the power of the democracy at Athens, or such as were taken by the founders of popular government at Cyrene, are useful in the extreme form of democracy. Fresh tribes and brotherhoods should be established; the private rites of families should be restricted and converted into public ones; in short, every contrivance should be adopted which will mingle the citizens with one another and get rid of old connections. Again, the measures which are taken by tyrants appear all of them to be democratic; such, for instance, as the licence permitted to slaves (which may be to a certain extent advantageous) and also that of women and children, and the allowing everybody to live as he likes. Such a government will have many supporters, for most persons would rather live in a disorderly than in a sober manner.

5. To preserve a democracy more difficult than to create one.

The mere establishment of a democracy is not the only or principal business of the legislator, or of those who wish to create such a state, for any state, however badly constituted, may last one, two, or three days; a far greater difficulty is the preservation of it. The legislator should therefore endeavour to have a firm foundation according to the principles already laid down concerning the preservation and destruction of states; he should guard against the destructive elements, and should make laws, whether written or unwritten, which will contain all the preservatives of states. He must not think the truly democratical or oligarchical measure to be that which will give the greatest amount of democracy or oligarchy, but that which will make them last longest.

The demagogues of our own day often get property

---

* Cp. iii. 2. § 3; v. 3. § 5.  
* Cp. v. 11. § 11.  
* Cp. Bk. v.  
* Cp. v. 11. §§ 2, 3.
confiscated in the law-courts in order to please the people. But those who have the welfare of the state at heart should counteract them, and make a law that the property of the condemned which goes into the treasury should not be public but sacred. Thus offenders will be as much afraid, for they will be punished all the same, and the people, having nothing to gain, will not be so ready to condemn the accused. Care should also be taken that state trials are as few as possible, and heavy penalties should be inflicted on those who bring groundless accusations; for it is the practice to indict, not members of the popular party, but the notables, although the citizens ought to be all equally attached to the state, or at any rate should not regard their rulers as enemies.

Now, since in the last and worst form of democracy the citizens are very numerous, and can hardly be made to assemble unless they are paid, and to pay them when there are no revenues presses hardly upon the notables (for the money must be obtained by a property-tax and confiscations and corrupt practices of the courts, things which have before now overthrown many democracies); where, I say, there are no revenues, the government should hold few assemblies, and the law-courts should consist of many persons, but sit for a few days only. This system has two advantages: first, the rich do not fear the expense, even although they are unpaid themselves when the poor are paid; and secondly, causes are better tried, for wealthy persons, although they do not like to be long absent from their own affairs, do not mind going for a few days to the law-courts. Where there are revenues the demagogues should not be allowed after their manner to distribute the surplus; the poor are always receiving and always wanting more and more, for such help is like water poured into a leaky cask. Yet the true friend of the people should see that they

* Cp. v. 5. § 5.
be not too poor, for extreme poverty lowers the character of the democracy; measures also should be taken which will give them lasting prosperity; and as this is equally the interest of all classes, the proceeds of the public revenues should be accumulated and distributed among them, if possible, in such quantities as may enable them to purchase a little farm, or, at any rate, make a beginning in trade and husbandry. And if this benevolence cannot be extended to all, money should be distributed in turn according to tribes or other divisions, and in the meantime the rich should pay the fee for the attendance of the poor at the necessary assemblies; and should in return be excused from useless public services. By administering the state in this spirit the Carthaginians retain the affections of the people; their policy is from time to time to send some of them into their dependent towns, where they grow rich. It is also worthy of a generous and sensible nobility to divide the poor amongst them, and give them the means of going to work. The example of the people of Tarentum is also well deserving of imitation, for, by sharing the use of their own property with the poor, they gain their good will. Moreover, they divide all their offices into two classes, one-half of them being elected by vote, the other by lot; the latter, that the people may participate in them, and the former, that the state may be better administered. A like result may be gained by dividing the same offices, so as to have two classes of magistrates, one chosen by vote, the other by lot.

Enough has been said of the manner in which democracies ought to be constituted.

From these considerations there will be no difficulty in seeing what should be the constitution of oligarchies. We have only to reason from opposites and compare each form of oligarchy with the corresponding form of democracy.

---

*a* Cp. ii. 11. § 15.  
*b* Cp. ii. 5. § 8.  
*c* Reading ἀριστεία δραχμ with Bekker’s 2nd ed.
THE VARIOUS KINDS OF OLIGARCHIES.

The first and best attempered of oligarchies is akin to a constitutional government. In this there ought to be two standards of qualification; the one high, the other low—the lower qualifying for the humbler yet indispensable offices and the higher for the superior ones. He who acquires the prescribed qualification should have the rights of citizenship. The nature of those admitted should be such as will make the entire governing body stronger than those who are excluded, and the new citizen should be always taken out of the better class of the people. The principle, narrowed a little, gives another form of oligarchy; until at length we reach the most cliquish and tyrannical of them all, answering to the extreme democracy, which, being the worst, requires vigilance in proportion to its badness. For as healthy bodies and ships well provided with sailors may undergo many mishaps and survive them, whereas sickly constitutions and rotten ill-manned ships are ruined by the very least mistake, so do the worst forms of government require the greatest care. The populousness of democracies generally preserves them (for number is to democracy in the place of justice based on proportion); whereas the preservation of an oligarchy clearly depends on an opposite principle, viz. good order.

As there are four chief divisions of the common people,—husbandmen, mechanics, retail traders, labourers; so also there are four kinds of military forces,—the cavalry, the heavy infantry, the light-armed troops, the navy.* When the country is adapted for cavalry, then a strong oligarchy is likely to be established. For the security of the inhabitants depends upon a force of this sort, and only rich men can afford to keep horses. The second form of oligarchy prevails when there are heavy infantry; for this service is better suited to the rich than to the poor. But the light-armed and the naval element are wholly democratic; and nowadays, when they are so numerous, if the two parties quarrel, the oligarchy are

* Cp. iv. 3. §§ 2, 3.  
** Reading ὀλιγάρχη with Bekker's 1st ed.
VI. 7. often worsted by them in the struggle. A remedy for this state of things may be found in the practice of generals who combine a proper contingent of light-armed troops, with cavalry and heavy-armed. And this is the way in which the poor get the better of the rich in civil contests; being lightly armed, they fight with advantage against cavalry and heavy infantry. An oligarchy which raises such a force out of the lower classes raises a power against itself. And therefore, since the ages of the citizens vary and some are older and some younger, the fathers should have their own sons, while they are still young, taught the agile movements of light-armed troops; and some, when they grow up, should be selected out of the youth, and become light-armed warriors in reality. The oligarchy should also yield a share in the government to the people, either, as I said before, to those who have a property qualification, or, as in the case of Thebes, to those who have abstained for a certain number of years from mean employments, or, as at Massalia, to men of merit who are selected for their worthiness, whether [previously] citizens or not. The magistracies of the highest rank, which ought to be in the hands of the governing body, should have expensive duties attached to them, and then the people will not desire them and will take no offence at the privileges of their rulers when they see that they pay a heavy fine for their dignity. It is fitting also that the magistrates on entering office should offer magnificent sacrifices or erect some public edifice, and then the people who participate in the entertainments, and like to see the city decorated with votive offerings and buildings, will not desire an alteration in the government, and the notables will have memorials of their munificence. This, however, is anything but the fashion of our modern oligarchs, who are as covetous of gain as they are of honour; oligarchies like theirs may be well described as petty democracies. Enough of the.

* Cp. c. 6. § 2.  

b Cp. iii. 5. § 7.
manner in which democracies and oligarchies should be organized.

Next in order follows the right distribution of offices, their number, their nature, their duties, of which indeed we have already spoken. No state can exist not having the necessary offices, and no state can be well administered not having the offices which tend to preserve harmony and good order. In small states, as we have already remarked, there need not be many of them, but in larger there must be a larger number, and we should carefully consider which offices may properly be united and which separated.

First among necessary offices is that which has the care of the market; a magistrate should be appointed to inspect contracts and to maintain order. For in every state there must inevitably be buyers and sellers who will supply one another's wants; this is the readiest way to make a state self-sufficing and so fulfil the purpose for which men come together into one state. A second office of a similar kind undertakes the supervision and embellishment of public and private buildings, the maintaining and repairing of houses and roads, the prevention of disputes about boundaries and other concerns of a like nature. This is commonly called the office of City-warden, and has various departments, which, in more populous towns, are shared among different persons, one, for example, taking charge of the walls, another of the fountains, a third of harbours. There is another equally necessary office, and of a similar kind, having to do with the same matters without the walls and in the country:—the magistrates who hold this office are called Wardens of the country, or Inspectors of the woods. Besides these three there is a fourth office of receivers of taxes, who have under their charge the revenue which they distribute among the various departments; these are called Receivers or Treasurers. Another officer registers all

---

* Cp. iv. 15.  
+ Cp. iv. 15. §§ 5-7.  
Cp. i. 2. § 8; Nic. Eth. v. 6. § 4; Pl. Rep. ii. 369.
private contracts, and decisions of the courts, all public indictments, and also all preliminary proceedings. This office again is sometimes subdivided, in which case one officer is appointed over all the rest. These officers are called Recorders or Sacred Recorders, Presidents, and the like.

Next to these comes an office of which the duties are the most necessary and also the most difficult, viz. that to which is committed the execution of punishments, or the exaction of fines from those who are posted up according to the registers; and also the custody of prisoners. The difficulty of this office arises out of the odium which is attached to it; no one will undertake it unless great profits are to be made, and any one who does is loth to execute the law. Still the office is necessary; for judicial decisions are useless if they take no effect; and if society cannot exist without them, neither can it exist without the execution of them. It is an office which, being so unpopular, should not be entrusted to one person, but divided among several taken from different courts. In like manner an effort should be made to distribute among different persons the writing up of those who are on the register of the condemned. Some sentences should be executed by officers who have other functions; penalties for new offences should be exacted by new offices; and as regards those which are not new, when one court has given judgment, another should exact the penalty; for example, the wardens of the city should exact the fines imposed by the wardens of the agora, and others again should exact the fines imposed by them. For penalties are more likely to be exacted when less odium attaches to the exaction of them; but a double odium is incurred when the judges who have passed also execute the sentence, and if they are always the executioners, they will be the enemies of all.

In many places one magistracy has the custody of the prisoners, while another executes the sentence, as, for example, 'the Eleven' at Athens. It is well to separate
off the jailorship, and try by some device to render the office less unpopular. For it is quite as necessary as that of the executioner; but good men do all they can to avoid it, and worthless persons cannot safely be trusted with it; for they themselves require a guard, and are not fit to guard others. There ought not therefore to be a single or permanent officer set apart for this duty; but it should be entrusted to the young, wherever they are organized into a band or guard, and different magistrates acting in turn should take charge of it.

These are the indispensable officers, and should be ranked first:—next in order follow others, equally necessary, but of higher rank, and requiring great experience and fidelity. Such are the offices to which are committed the guard of the city, and other military functions. Not only in time of war but of peace their duty will be to defend the walls and gates, and to muster and marshal the citizens. In some states there are many such offices; in others there are a few only, while small states are content with one; these officers are called generals or commanders. Again, if a state has cavalry or light-armed troops or archers or a naval force, it will sometimes happen that each of these departments has separate officers, who are called admirals, or generals of cavalry or of infantry. And there are subordinate officers called naval and military captains, and captains of horse; having others under them:—all these are included in the department of war. Thus much of military command.

But since many, not to say all, of these offices handle the public money, there must of necessity be another office which examines and audits them, and has no other functions. Such officers are called by various names:—Scrutineers, Auditors, Accountants, Controllers. Besides all these offices there is another which is supreme over them, and to this, which in a democracy presides over the assembly, is often entrusted both the introduction and the ratification of measures. For that power which
VI. 8. convenes the people must of necessity be the head of the state. In some places they are called 'probuli,' because they hold previous deliberations, but in a democracy more commonly 'councillors.' These are the chief political offices.

Priests. Another set of officers is concerned with the maintenance of religion; priests and guardians see to the preservation and repair of the temples of the gods and to other matters of religion. One office of this sort may be enough in small places, but in larger ones there are a great many besides the priesthood; for example superintendents of sacrifices, guardians of shrines, treasurers of the sacred revenues. Nearly connected with these there are also the officers appointed for the performance of the public sacrifices, except any which the law assigns to the priests; such officers derive their dignity from the public hearth of the city. They are sometimes called archons, sometimes kings, and sometimes prytanes.

These, then, are the necessary offices, which may be summed up as follows: offices concerned with matters of religion, with war, with the revenue and expenditure, with the market, with the city, with the harbours, with the country; also with the courts of law, with the records of contracts, with execution of sentences, with custody of prisoners, with audits and scrutinies and accounts of magistrates; lastly, there are those which preside over the public deliberations of the state. There are likewise magistracies characteristic of states which are peaceful and prosperous, and at the same time have a regard to good order: such as the offices of guardians of women, guardians of the laws, guardians of children, and directors of gymnastics; also superintendents of gymnastic and Dionysiac contests, and of other similar spectacles. Some of these are clearly not democratic offices; for example, the guardianships of women and children—the poor,

*a* Cp. iv. 15. § 11.  
*c* Cp. iv. 15. § 13.
not having any slaves, must employ both their women and children as servants.

24 Once more: there are three forms of the highest elective offices in states—guardians of the law, probuli, and councillors,—of these, the guardians of the law are an aristocratical, the probuli an oligarchical, the council a democratical institution. Enough of the different kinds of offices.
BOOK VII.

VII. I. HE who would duly enquire about the best form of a state ought first to determine which is the most eligible life; while this remains uncertain the best form of the state must also be uncertain; for, in the natural order of things, those may be expected to lead the best life who are governed in the best manner of which their circumstances admit. We ought therefore to ascertain, first of all, which is the most generally eligible life, and then whether the same life is or is not best for the state and for individuals.

Assuming that enough has been already said in exoteric discourses concerning the best life, we will now only repeat the statements contained in them. Certainly no one will dispute the propriety of that partition of goods which separates them into three classes, viz. external goods, goods of the body, and goods of the soul, or deny that the happy man must have all three. For no one would maintain that he is happy who has not in him a particle of courage or temperance or justice or prudence, who is afraid of every insect which flutters past him, and will commit any crime, however great, in order to gratify his lust of meat or drink, who will sacrifice his dearest friend for the sake of half-a-farthling, and is as feeble and false in mind as a child or a madman. These propositions are universally acknowledged as soon as they are uttered, but men differ about the degree or relative superiority of this or that good. Some think that a very moderate amount of virtue is enough, but set no limit to their desires of wealth, property, power,

a Cp. N. Eth. i. 8. § 2.
b Omitting δωρη, which is bracketed by Bekker in his second edition.
6 reputation, and the like. To whom we reply by an appeal to facts, which easily prove that mankind do not acquire or preserve virtue by the help of external goods, but external goods by the help of virtue, and that happiness, whether consisting in pleasure or virtue, or both, is more often found with those who are most highly cultivated in their mind and in their character, and have only a moderate share of external goods, than among those who possess external goods to a useless extent but are deficient in higher qualities; and this is not only matter of experience, but, if reflected upon, will easily appear to be in accordance with reason. For, whereas external goods have a limit, like any other instrument*, and all things useful are of such a nature that where there is too much of them they must either do harm, or at any rate be of no use, to their possessors, every good of the soul, the greater it is, is also of greater use, if the epithet useful as well as noble is appropriate to such subjects. No proof is required to show that the best state of one thing in relation to another is proportioned to the degree of excellence by which the natures corresponding to those states are separated from each other: so that, if the soul is more noble than our possessions or our bodies, both absolutely and in relation to us, it must be admitted that the best state of either has a similar ratio to the other.

7 Again, it is for the sake of the soul that goods external and goods of the body are eligible at all, and all wise men ought to choose them for the sake of the soul, and not the soul for the sake of them.

8 Let us acknowledge then that each one has just so much of happiness as he has of virtue and wisdom, and of virtuous and wise action. God is a witness to us of this truth, for he is happy and blessed, not by reason of any external good, but in himself and by reason of his own nature. And herein of necessity lies the difference between good fortune and happiness; for external goods

a Cp. i. 8. § 15.
b Cp. c. 3. § 10; N. Eth. x. § 7; Met. xii. 7.
VII. 1. come of themselves, and chance is the author of them, but no one is just or temperate by or through chance. In like manner, and by a similar train of argument, the happy state may be shown to be that which is [morally] best and which acts rightly; and rightly it cannot act without doing right actions, and neither individual nor state can do right actions without virtue and wisdom. Thus the courage, justice, and wisdom of a state have the same form and nature as the qualities which give the individual who possesses them the name of just, wise, or temperate.

Thus much may suffice by way of preface: for I could not avoid touching upon these questions, neither could I go through all the arguments affecting them; these must be reserved for another discussion.

Let us assume then that the best life, both for individuals and states, is the life of virtue, having external goods enough for the performance of good actions. If there are any who controvert our assertion, we will in this treatise pass them over, and consider their objections hereafter.

There remains to be discussed the question, Whether the happiness of the individual is the same as that of the state, or different? Here again there can be no doubt—no one denies that they are the same. For those who hold that the well-being of the individual consists in his wealth, also think that riches make the happiness of the whole state, and those who value most highly the life of a tyrant deem that city the happiest which rules over the greatest number; while they who approve an individual for his virtue say that the more virtuous a city is, the happier it is. Two points here present themselves for consideration: first (1), which is the more eligible life, that of a citizen who is a member of a state, or that of an alien who has no political ties; and again (2), which is the best form of constitution or the best condition of a

* Ethics i. 9. § 6.
state, either on the supposition that political privileges are given to all, or that they are given to a majority only?

Since the good of the state and not of the individual is the proper subject of political thought and speculation, and we are engaged in a political discussion, while the first of these two points has a secondary interest for us, the latter will be the main subject of our enquiry.

Now it is evident that the form of government is best in which every man, whoever he is, can act for the best and live happily. But even those who agree in thinking that the life of virtue is the most eligible raise a question, whether the life of business and politics is or is not more eligible than one which is wholly independent of external goods, I mean than a contemplative life, which by some is maintained to be the only one worthy of a philosopher. For these two lives—the life of the philosopher and the life of the statesman—appear to have been preferred by those who have been most keen in the pursuit of virtue, both in our own and in other ages. Which is the better is a question of no small moment; for the wise man, like the wise state, will necessarily regulate his life according to the best end. There are some who think that while a despotic rule over others is the greatest injustice, to exercise a constitutional rule over them, even though not unjust, is a great impediment to a man's individual well-being. Others take an opposite view; they maintain that the true life of man is the practical and political, and that every virtue admits of being practised, quite as much by statesmen and rulers as by private individuals. Others, again, are of opinion that arbitrary and tyrannical rule alone consists with happiness; indeed, *in some states the entire aim of the laws* is to give men despotic power over their neighbours. And, therefore, although in most cities the laws may be said generally to be in a chaotic state, still, if

* Or, inserting καί before κύριος (apparently the reading of the old translator), 'in some cases the entire aim both of the constitution and the laws.'
VII. 2. they aim at anything, they aim at the maintenance of
power: thus in Lacedaemon and Crete the system of
education and the greater part of the laws are framed
with a view to war*. And in all nations which are able to
gratify their ambition military power is held in esteem,
for example among the Scythians and Persians and
Thracians and Celts. In some nations there are even laws
tending to stimulate the warlike virtues, as at Carthage,
where we are told that men obtain the honour of wear-
ing as many rings as they have served campaigns. There
was once a law in Macedonia that he who had not killed
an enemy should wear a halter, and among the Scythians
no one who had not slain his man was allowed to drink
out of the cup which was handed round at a certain
feast. Among the Iberians, a warlike nation, the number
of enemies whom a man has slain is indicated by the
number of obelisks which are fixed in the earth round
his tomb; and there are numerous practices among other
nations of a like kind, some of them established by law
and others by custom. Yet to a reflecting mind it must
appear very strange that the statesman should be always
considering how he can dominate and tyrannize over
others, whether they will or not. How can that which
is not even lawful be the business of the statesman or
the legislator? Unlawful it certainly is to rule without re-
gard to justice, for there may be might where there is
no right. The other arts and sciences offer no parallel;
a physician is not expected to persuade or coerce his
patients, nor a pilot the passengers in his ship. Yet
many appear to think that a despotic government is a
ture political form, and what men affirm to be unjust
and inexpedient in their own case they are not ashamed
of practising towards others; they demand justice for
themselves, but where other men are concerned they
care nothing about it. Such behaviour is irrational;
unless the one party is born to command, and the
other born to serve, in which case men have a right to

command, not indeed all their fellows, but only those who
are intended to be subjects; just as we ought not to hunt
mankind, whether for food or sacrifice, but only the
animals which are intended for food or sacrifice, that is
16 to say, such wild animals as are eatable. And surely
1325a. there may be a city happy in isolation, which we will
assume to be well-governed (for it is quite possible that
a city thus isolated might be well-administered and have
good laws); but such a city would not be constituted with
any view to war or the conquest of enemies,—all that sort
17 of thing must be excluded. Hence we see very plainly
that warlike pursuits, although generally to be deemed
honourable, are not the supreme end of all things, but
only means. And the good lawgiver should enquire
how states and races of men and communities may par-
ticipate in a good life, and in the happiness which is
18 attainable by them. His enactments will not be always
the same; and where there are neighbours a he will have
to deal with them according to their characters, and to
see what duties are to be performed towards each. The
end at which the best form of government should aim
may be properly made a matter of future consideration b.

Let us now address those who, while they agree that the
life of virtue is the most eligible, differ about the manner
of practising it. For some renounce political power, and
think that the life of the freeman is different from the
life of the statesman and the best of all; but others think
the life of the statesman best. The argument of the latter
is that he who does nothing cannot do well, and that
virtuous activity is identical with happiness. To both
we say: ‘you are partly right and partly wrong.’ The
first class are right in affirming that the life of the freeman
is better than the life of the despot; for there is nothing
grand or noble in having the use of a slave, in so far as
he is a slave; or in issuing commands about necessary
things. But it is an error to suppose that every sort of

a Cp. ii. 6. § 7; 7. § 14.

b Cp. c. 14.
rule is despotic like that of a master over slaves, for there is as great a difference between the rule over freemen and the rule over slaves as there is between slavery by nature and freedom by nature, about which I have said enough at the commencement of this treatise. And it is equally a mistake to place inactivity above action, for happiness is activity, and the actions of the just and wise are the realization of much that is noble.

But perhaps some one, accepting these premises, may still maintain that supreme power is the best of all things, because the possessors of it are able to perform the greatest number of noble actions. If so, the man who is able to rule, instead of giving up anything to his neighbour, ought rather to take away his power; and the father should make no account of his son, nor the son of his father, nor friend of friend; they should not bestow a thought on one another in comparison with this higher object, for the best is the most eligible and 'doing well' is the best. There might be some truth in such a view if we assume that robbers and plunderers attain the chief good. But this can never be; and hence we infer the view to be false. For the actions of a ruler cannot really be honourable, unless he is as much superior to other men as a husband is to a wife, or a father to his children, or a master to his slaves. And therefore he who violates the law can never recover by any success, however great, what he has already lost in departing from virtue. For equals share alike in the honourable and the just, as is just and equal. But that the unequal should be given to equals, and the unlike to those who are like, is contrary to nature, and nothing which is contrary to nature is good. If, therefore, there is any one superior in virtue and in the power of performing the best actions, him we ought to follow and obey, but he must have the capacity for action as well as virtue.

If we are right in our view, and happiness is assumed

---

* Cp. i. c. 5, 6, 7.  
* Cp. iii. 13. § 25, and 17. § 7.
to be virtuous activity, the active life will be the best, VIII. 3. both for the city collectively, and for individuals. Not that a life of action must necessarily have relation to others, as some persons think, nor are those ideas only to be regarded as practical which are pursued for the sake of practical results, but much more the thoughts and contemplations which are independent and complete in themselves; since virtuous activity, and therefore action, is an end, and even in the case of external actions the directing mind is most truly said to act. Neither, again, is it necessary that states which are cut off from others and choose to live alone should be inactive; for there may be activity also in the parts; there are many ways in which the members of a state act upon one another. The same thing is equally true of every individual. If this were otherwise, God and the universe, who have no external actions over and above their own energies,a would be far enough from perfection. Hence it is evident that the same life is best for each individual, and for states, and for mankind collectively.

Thus far by way of introduction. In what has proceeded I have discussed other forms of government; in what remains the first point to be considered is what should be the conditions of the ideal or perfect state; for the perfect state cannot exist without a due supply of the means of life. And therefore we must presuppose many purely imaginary conditions,b but nothing impossible. There will be, a certain number of citizens, a country in which to place them, and the like. As the weaver or shipbuilder or any other artisan must have the material proper for his work (and in proportion as this is better prepared, so will the result of his art be nobler), so the statesman or legislator must also have the materials suited to him.

First among the materials required by the statesman Population. is population: he will consider what should be the

---

a Cp. c. 1. § 10.

b Cp. ii. 6. § 7.
number and character of the citizens, and then what should be the size and character of the country. Most persons think that a state in order to be happy ought to be large; but even if they are right, they have no idea what is a large and what a small state. For they judge of the size of the city by the number of the inhabitants; whereas they ought to regard, not their number, but their power. A city too, like an individual, has a work to do; and that city which is best adapted to the fulfillment of its work is to be deemed greatest, in the same sense of the word great in which Hippocrates might be called greater, not as a man, but as a physician, than some one else who was taller. And even if we reckon 6 greatness by numbers, we ought not to include everybody, for there must always be in cities a multitude of slaves and sojourners and foreigners; but we should include those only who are members of the state, and who form an essential part of it. The number of the latter is a proof of the greatness of a city; but a city which produces numerous artisans and comparatively few soldiers cannot be great, for a great city is not to be confounded with a populous one. Moreover, experience shows that a very populous city can rarely, if ever, be well governed; since all cities which have a reputation for good government have a limit of population. We may argue on grounds of reason, and the same result will follow. For 8 law is order, and good law is good order; but a very great multitude cannot be orderly: to introduce order into the unlimited is the work of a divine power—of such a power as holds together the universe. Beauty is realized in number and magnitude*, and the state which combines magnitude with good order must necessarily be the most beautiful. To the size of states there is a limit, as there is to other things, plants, animals, implements; for none of these retain their natural power when they are too large or too small, but they either

wholly lose their nature, or are spoiled. For example, VII. 4.
a ship which is only a span long will not be a ship at
all, nor a ship a quarter of a mile long; yet there may
be a ship of a certain size, either too large or too small,
which will still be a ship, but bad for sailing. In like
manner a state when composed of too few is not as a
state ought to be, self-sufficing; when of too many,
though self-sufficing in all mere necessaries, it is a nation
and not a state, being almost incapable of constitutional
government. For who can be the general of such a vast
multitude, or who the herald, unless he have the voice of
a Stentor?

A state then only begins to exist when it has attained
a population sufficient for a good life in the political com-
munity: it may indeed somewhat exceed this number.
But, as I was saying, there must be a limit. What should
be the limit will be easily ascertained by experience. For
both governors and governed have duties to perform;
the special functions of a governor are to command and
to judge. But if the citizens of a state are to judge and
to distribute offices according to merit, then they must
know each other's characters; where they do not possess
this knowledge, both the election to offices and the de-
cision of lawsuits will go wrong. When the population
is very large they are manifestly settled at haphazard,
which clearly ought not to be. Besides, in an over-
populous state foreigners and metics will readily acquire
the rights of citizens, for who will find them out? Clearly
then the best limit of the population of a state is
the largest number which suffices for the purposes of
life, and can be taken in at a single view. Enough con-
cerning the size of a city.

Much the same principle will apply to the territory of
the state: every one would agree in praising the state
which is most entirely self-sufficing; and that must be
the state which is all-producing, for to have all things

* Cp. v. 9. § 7.
VII. 5. and to want nothing is sufficiency. In size and extent it
should be such as may enable the inhabitants to live
temperately and liberally in the enjoyment of leisure. Whether we are right or wrong in laying down this limit
we will enquire more precisely hereafter, when we have
occasion to consider what is the right use of property
and wealth: a matter which is much disputed, because
men are inclined to rush into one of two extremes, some
into meanness, others into luxury.

It is not difficult to determine the general character of
the territory which is required; there are, however, some
points on which military authorities should be heard; they
tell us that it should be difficult of access to the enemy,
and easy of egress to the inhabitants. Further, we require
that the land as well as the inhabitants of whom we
were just now speaking should be taken in at a single
view, for a country which is easily seen can be easily
protected. As to the position of the city, if we could
have what we wish, it should be well-situated in regard
both to sea or land. This then is one principle, that it
should be a convenient centre for the protection of the
whole country: the other is, that it should be suitable for
receiving the fruits of the soil, and also for the bringing
in of timber and any other products.

Whether a communication with the sea is beneficial to
a well-ordered state or not is a question which has often
been asked. It is argued that the introduction of strangers
brought up under other laws, and the increase of popula-
tion, will be adverse to good order (for a maritime people
will always have a crowd of merchants coming and
going), and that intercourse by sea is inimical to good
government. Apart from these considerations, it would
be undoubtedly better, both with a view to safety and to
the provision of necessaries, that the city and territory
should be connected with the sea; the defenders of a
3 country, if they are to maintain themselves against an

enemy, should be easily relieved both by land and by sea; and even if they are not able to attack by sea and land at once, they will have less difficulty in doing mischief to their assailants on one element, if they themselves can use both. Moreover, it is necessary that they should import from abroad what is not found in their own country, and that they should export what they have in excess; for a city ought to be a market, not indeed for others, but for herself.

Those who make themselves a market for the world only do so for the sake of revenue, and if a state ought not to desire profit of this kind it ought not to have such an emporium. Now a days we often see in countries and cities dockyards and harbours very conveniently placed outside the city, but not too far off; and they are kept in dependence by walls and similar fortifications. Cities thus situated manifestly reap the benefit of intercourse with their ports; and any harm which is likely to accrue may be easily guarded against by the laws, which will pronounce and determine who may hold communication with one another, and who may not.

There can be no doubt that the possession of a moderate naval force is advantageous to a city; the citizens require such a force for their own needs, and they should also be formidable to their neighbours in certain cases, or, if necessary, able to assist them by sea as well as by land. The proper number or magnitude of this naval force is relative to the character of the state; for if her function is to take a leading part in politics, her naval power should be commensurate with the scale of her enterprizes. The population of the state need not be much increased, since there is no necessity that the sailors should be citizens: the marines who have the control and command will be freemen, and belong also to the infantry; and wherever there is a dense population of Perioeci and husbandmen, there will

---

* Cp. ii. 6. § 7.
* Reading πολέμων with the MSS. and Bekker’s first edition.
VII. 6. always be sailors more than enough. Of this we see instances at the present day. The city of Heraclea, for example, although small in comparison with many others, can man a considerable fleet. Such are our conclusions respecting the territory of the state, its harbour, its towns, its relations to the sea, and its maritime power.

7. Having spoken of the number of the citizens, we will proceed to speak of what should be their character. This is a subject which can be easily understood by any one who casts his eye on the more celebrated states of Hellas, and generally on the distribution of races in the habitable world. Those who live in a cold climate and in [northern] Europe are full of spirit, but wanting in intelligence and skill; and therefore they keep their freedom, but have no political organization, and are incapable of ruling over others. Whereas the natives of Asia are intelligent and inventive, but they are wanting in spirit, and therefore they are always in a state of subjection and slavery. But the Hellenic race, which is situated between them, is likewise intermediate in character, being high-spirited and also intelligent. Hence it continues free, and is the best-governed of any nation, and, if it could be formed into one state, would be able to rule the world. There are also similar differences in the different tribes of Hellas; for some of them are of a one-sided nature, and are intelligent or courageous only, while in others there is a happy combination of both qualities. And clearly those whom the legislator will most easily lead to virtue may be expected to be both intelligent and courageous. Some [like Plato] say that the guardians should be friendly towards those whom they know, fierce towards those whom they do not know. Now, passion is the quality of the soul which begets friendship and inspires affection; notably the spirit within us is more stirred against our friends and acquaintances than against those who are unknown to

---

*b* Rep. ii. 375.
6 us, when we think that we are despised by them; for VII. 7.
which reason Archilochus, complaining of his friends, very
naturally addresses his soul in these words,

'For wert thou not plagued on account of friends?'

The power of command and the love of freedom are in all men based upon this quality, for passion is com-
manding and invincible. Nor is it right to say that the guardians should be fierce towards those whom they do not know, for we ought not to be out of temper with any one; and a lofty spirit is not fierce by nature, but only when excited against evil-doers. And this, as I was saying before, is a feeling which men show most strongly towards their friends if they think they have received a wrong at their hands: as indeed is reason-
able; for, besides the actual injury, they seem to be deprived of a benefit by those who owe them one. Hence the saying,

'Cruel is the strife of brethren;'

and again,

'They who love in excess also hate in excess.'

9 Thus we have nearly determined the number and character of the citizens of our state, and also the size and nature of their territory. I say 'nearly,' for we ought not to require the same minuteness in theory as in fact.

As in other natural compounds the conditions of a composite whole are not necessarily organic parts of it, so in a state or in any other combination forming a unity not everything is a part, which is a necessary condition. The members of an association have necessarily some one thing the same and common to all, in which they share equally or unequally; for example, food or land or any other thing. But where there are two things of which one is a means and the other an end, they have nothing

*a* Or: 'For surely thou art not plagued on account of thy friends?' The line is probably corrupt. Better to read with Bergk, σῶ γάρ δὴ παρέδω φίλον ἀνήγγειλ,' for thou indeed werest plagued by friends.'

VII. 8. in common except that the one receives what the other produces. Such, for example, is the relation in which workmen and tools stand to their work; the house and the builder have nothing in common, but the art of the builder is for the sake of the house. And so states require property, but property, even though living beings are included in it, is no part of a state; for a state is not a community of living beings only, but a community of equals, aiming at the best life possible. Now, whereas happiness is the highest good, being a realization and perfect practice of virtue, which some attain, while others have little or none of it, the various qualities of men are clearly the reason why there are various kinds of states and many forms of government; for different men seek after happiness in different ways and by different means, and so make for themselves different modes of life and forms of government. We must see also how many things are indispensable to the existence of a state, for what we call the parts of a state will be found among them. Let us then enumerate the functions of a state, and we shall easily elicit what we want:

First, there must be food; secondly, arms, for life requires many instruments; thirdly, there must be arms, for the members of a community have need of them in order to maintain authority both against disobedient subjects and against external assailants; fourthly, there must be a certain amount of revenue, both for internal needs, and for the purposes of war; fifthly, or rather first, there must be a care of religion, which is commonly called worship; sixthly, and most necessary of all, there must be a power of deciding what is for the public interest, and what is just in men’s dealings with one another.

These are the things which every state may be said to need. For a state is not a mere aggregate of persons, but a union of them sufficing for the purposes of life; and if any of these things be wanting, it is simply impossible

\[ a \text{ Cp. i. 4. § 2.} \quad b \text{ Cp. supra, c. 5. § 1.} \]
THE GOVERNING CLASSES.

9 that the community can be self-sufficing. A state then should be framed with a view to the fulfilment of these functions. There must be husbandmen to procure food, and artisans, and a warlike and a wealthy class, and priests, and judges to decide what is just and expedient.

Having determined these points, we have in the next place to consider whether all ought to share in every sort of occupation. Shall every man be at once husbandman, artisan, councillor, judge, or shall we suppose the several occupations just mentioned assigned to different persons? or, thirdly, shall some employments be assigned to individuals and others common to all? The question, however, does not occur in every state; as we were saying, all may be shared by all, or not all by all, but only some by some; and hence arise the differences of states, for in democracies all share in all, in oligarchies the opposite practice prevails. Now, since we are here speaking of the best form of government, and that under which the state will be most happy (and happiness, as has been already said, cannot exist without virtue), it clearly follows that in the state which is best governed the citizens who are absolutely and not merely relatively just men must not lead the life of mechanics or tradesmen, for such a life is ignoble and inimical to virtue.

Neither must they be husbandmen, since leisure is necessary both for the development of virtue and the performance of political duties.

Again, there is in a state a class of warriors, and another of councillors, who advise about the expedient and determine matters of law, and these seem in an especial manner parts of a state. Now, should these two classes be distinguished, or are both functions to be assigned to the same persons? Here again there is no difficulty in seeing that both functions will in one way belong to the same, in another, to different persons. To different persons in so far as their employments are

---

*a* Reading δυνατίω with Bekker in his second edition.

*b* Cp. iv. c. 4 and 14.

*c* Cp. c. 8 § 5.

*d* Cp. Plato Laws xi. 919.
VII. 9. suited to different ages of life, for the one requires wisdom, and the other strength. But on the other hand, since it is an impossible thing that those who are able to use or to resist force should be willing to remain always in subjection, from this point of view the persons are the same; for those who carry arms can always determine the fate of the constitution. It remains therefore that both functions of government should be entrusted to the same persons, not, however, at the same time, but in the order prescribed by nature, who has given to young men strength and to older men wisdom. Such a distribution of duties will be expedient and also just, and is founded upon a principle of proportion. Besides, the ruling class should be the owners of property, for they are citizens, and the citizens of a state should be in good circumstances; whereas mechanics or any other class whose art excludes the art of virtue have no share in the state. This follows from our first principle, for happiness cannot exist without virtue, and a city is not to be termed happy in regard to a portion of the citizens, but in regard to them all. And clearly property should be in their hands, since the husbandmen will of necessity be slaves or barbarians or Perioeci.

Of the classes enumerated there remain only the priests, and the manner in which their office is to be regulated is obvious. No husbandman or mechanic should be appointed to it; for the Gods should receive honour from the citizens only. Now since the body of the citizens is divided into two classes, the warriors and the councillors; and it is beseeming that the worship of the Gods should be duly performed, and also a rest provided in their service for those who from age have given up active life—to the old men of these two classes should be assigned the duties of the priesthood.

We have shown what are the necessary conditions, and what the parts of a state: husbandmen, craftsmen,
and labourers of all kinds are necessary to the existence of states, but the parts of the state are the warriors and councillors. And these are distinguished severally from one another, the distinction being in some cases permanent, in others not.

It is no new or recent discovery of political philosophers that the state ought to be divided into classes, and that the warriors should be separated from the husbandmen. The system has continued in Egypt and in Crete to this day, and was established, as tradition says, by a law of Sesostris in Egypt and of Minos in Crete. The institution of common tables also appears to be of ancient date, being in Crete as old as the reign of Minos, and in Italy far older. The Italian historians say that there was a certain Italus king of Oenotria, from whom the Oenotrians were called Italians, and who gave the name of Italy to the promontory of Europe lying between the Scylicative and Lametic Gulfs, which are distant from one another only half-a-day's journey. They say that this Italus converted the Oenotrians from shepherds into husbandmen, and besides other laws which he gave them, was the founder of their common meals; even in our day some who are derived from him retain this institution and certain other laws of his. On the side of Italy towards Tyrrhenia dwelt the Opici, who are now, as of old, called Ausones; and on the side towards Iapygia and the Ionian Gulf, in the district called Syrtis, the Chones, who are likewise of Oenotrian race. From this part of the world originally came the institution of common tables; the separation into castes [which was much older] from Egypt, for the reign of Sesostris is of far greater antiquity than that of Minos.

It is true indeed that these and many other things have been invented several times over in the course of ages,

---

*a* Retaining the reading of the MSS., which Bekker in his second edition has altered into ἑπόρης, a conjecture of Goettling's.

*b* Cp. Plato Laws iii. 676; Aristotle Metaph. xi. 1074 b. 10; and Pol. ii. 5. § 16 (note).
VII. 10. or rather times without number; for necessity may be
supposed to have taught men the inventions which were
absolutely required, and when these were provided, it
was natural that other things which would adorn and
enrich life should grow up by degrees. And we may
infer that in political institutions the same rule holds.

Egypt⁸ witnesses to the antiquity of all things, for the 8
Egyptians appear to be of all people the most ancient;
and they have laws and a regular constitution [existing
from time immemorial]. We should therefore make the
best use of what has been already discovered b, and try
to supply defects.

I have already remarked that the land ought to belong ⁹
to those who possess arms and have a share in the
government⁹, and that the husbandmen ought to be a
class distinct from them; and I have determined what
should be the extent and nature of the territory. Let me
proceed to discuss the distribution of the land, and the
character of the agricultural class; for I do not think that
property ought to be common, as some maintain d, but only that by friendly consent there should be a common
use of it; and that no citizen should be in want of
subsistence.

As to common meals, there is a general agreement ¹⁰
that a well-ordered city should have them; and we will
hereafter explain what are our own reasons for taking
this view. They ought, however, to be open to all the
citizens⁹. And yet it is not easy for the poor to con-
tribute the requisite sum out of their private means, and
to provide also for their household. The expense of
religious worship should likewise be a public charge.
The land must therefore be divided into two parts, one ¹¹
public and the other private, and each part should be

---

⁸ Cp. Metaph. i. c. 1. § 16; Meteor. i. 14. 352 b. 19; Plato Timaeus
22 b.; Laws i. 656, 657.

⁹ Reading, with Bekker in his second edition, εἰρημίσις: which
may have been altered into εἰρημίσις from a confusion of εἰρησις
πέρισσον in § 9 infra.

subdivided, half of the public land being appropriated VII. 10.
to the service of the Gods, and the other half used to
defray the cost of the common meals; while of the
private land, half should be near the border, and the
other near the city, so that each citizen having two lots
they may all of them have land in both places; there
is justice and fairness in such a division*, and it tends
to inspire unanimity among the people in their border
wars. Where there is not this arrangement, some of
them are too ready to come to blows with their neigh-
bours, while others are so cautious that they quite lose
the sense of honour. Wherefore there is a law in some
places which forbids those who dwell near the border to
take part in public deliberations about wars with neigh-
bours, on the ground that their interests will pervert
their judgment. For the reasons already mentioned
then, the land should be divided in the manner de-
scribed. The very best thing of all would be that the
husbandmen should be slaves, not all of the same race b
and not spirited, for if they have no spirit they will be
better suited for their work, and there will be no danger
of their making a revolution. The next best thing would
be that they should be perioeci of foreign race c, and of
a like inferior nature; some of them should be the
slaves of individuals, and employed on the private
estates of men of property, the remainder should be the
property of the state and employed on the common
land d. I will hereafter explain what is the proper treat-
ment of slaves, and why it is expedient that liberty
should be always held out to them as the reward of
their services.

We have already said that the city should be open to
the land and to the sea e, and to the whole country as

* Cp. Plato Laws v. 745, where the same proposal is found. Aristotle, in Book ii. 6. § 15, condemns the division of lots which
he here adopts.
c Cp. c. 9. § 8.
d Cp. ii. 7. § 23.
* Cp. c. 5. § 3.

Q
far as possible. In respect of the place itself our wish would be to find a situation for it, fortunate in four things. The first, health—this is a necessity: cities which lie towards the east, and are blown upon by winds coming from the east, are the healthiest; next in healthfulness are those which are sheltered from the north wind, for they have a milder winter. The site of the city should likewise be convenient both for political administration and for war. With a view to the latter it should afford easy egress to the citizens, and at the same time be inaccessible and difficult of capture to enemies. There should be a natural abundance of springs and fountains in the town, or, if there is a deficiency of them, great reservoirs may be established for the collection of rain-water, such as will not fail when the inhabitants are cut off from the country by war. Special care should be taken of the health of the inhabitants, which will depend chiefly on the healthiness of the locality and of the quarter to which they are exposed, and secondly, on the use of pure water; this latter point is by no means a secondary consideration. For the elements which we use most and oftenest for the support of the body contribute most to health, and among these are water and air. Wherefore, in all wise states, if there is a want of pure water, and the supply is not all equally good, the drinking water ought to be separated from that which is used for other purposes.

As to strongholds, what is suitable to different forms of government varies: thus an acropolis is suited to an oligarchy or a monarchy, but a plain to a democracy; neither to an aristocracy, but rather a number of strong places. The arrangement of private houses is considered to be more agreeable and generally more convenient, if the streets are regularly laid out after the modern fashion which Hippodamus introduced, but for security in war the antiquated mode of building, which made it difficult for strangers to get out of a town and

* Repetition of c. 5. § 3.

b Cp. ii. 8. § 1.
MILITARY REQUIREMENTS.

7 for assailants to find their way in, is preferable. A city VII. 11. should therefore adopt both plans of building: it is possible to arrange the houses irregularly, as husbandmen plant their vines in what are called ‘clumps.’ The whole town should not be laid out in straight lines, but only certain quarters and regions; thus security and beauty will be combined.

8 As to walls, those who say* that cities making any pretension to military virtue should not have them, are quite out of date in their notions; and they may see the cities which prided themselves on this fancy confuted by facts. True, there is little courage shown in seeking for safety behind a rampart when an enemy is similar in character and not much superior in number; but the superiority of the besiegers may be and often is beyond the power of men to resist, and too much for the valour of a few; and if they are to be saved and to escape defeat and outrage, the strongest wall will be the best defence of the warrior, more especially now that catapults and siege engines have been brought to such perfection.

10 To have no walls would be as foolish as to choose a site for a town in an exposed country, and to level the heights; or as if an individual were to leave his house unwalled, lest the inmates should become cowards. Nor must we forget that those who have their cities surrounded by walls may either take advantage of them or not, but cities which are unwalled have no choice.

If our conclusions are just, not only should cities have walls, but care should be taken to make them ornamental, as well as useful for warlike purposes, and adapted to resist modern inventions. For as the assailants of a city do all they can to gain an advantage, so the defenders should make use of any means of defence which have been already discovered, and should devise and invent others, for when men are well prepared no enemy even thinks of attacking them.


Q 2
VII. 12. As the walls are to be divided by guardhouses and towers built at suitable intervals, and the body of citizens must be distributed at common tables, the idea will naturally occur that we should establish some of the common tables in the guardhouses. The arrangement might be as follows: the principal common tables of the magistrates will occupy a suitable place, and there also will be the buildings appropriated to religious worship except in the case of those rites which the law or the Pythian oracle has restricted to a special locality*. The site should be a spot seen far and wide, which gives due elevation to virtue and towers over the neighbourhood. Near this spot should be established an agora, such as that which the Thessalians call the 'freemen's agora;' from this all trade should be excluded, and no mechanic, husbandman, or any such person allowed to enter, unless he be summoned by the magistrates. It would be a charming use of the place, if the gymnastic exercises of the elder men were performed there. For in this noble practice different ages should be separated, and some of the magistrates should stay with the boys, while the grown-up men remain with the magistrates [i.e. in the freeman's agora]; for the presence of the magistrates is the best mode of inspiring true modesty and ingenuous fear. There should also be a traders' agora, distinct and apart from the other, in a situation which is convenient for the reception of goods both by sea and land.

But in speaking of the magistrates we must not forget another section of the citizens, viz. the priests, for whom public tables should likewise be provided in their proper place near the temples. The magistrates who deal with contracts, indictments, summonses, and the like, and those who have the care of the agora and of the city respectively, ought to be established near the agora and in some public place of meeting; the neighbourhood of the

* Cp. Plato Laws vi. 778; viii. 848; v. 738; vi. 759.
*b Or, 'this institution should be divided according to ages.'
traders' agora will be a suitable spot; the upper agora VII. 12.
we devote to the life of leisure, the other is intended for
the necessities of trade.

8 The same order should prevail* in the country, for
there too the magistrates, called by some 'Inspectors
of Forests,' and by others 'Wardens of the Country,'
must have guardhouses and common tables while they
are on duty; temples should also be scattered through-
out the country, dedicated, some to Gods, and some to
heroes.

9 But it would be a waste of time for us to linger over
details like these. The difficulty is not in imagining
but in carrying them out. We may talk about them as
much as we like, but the execution of them will depend
upon fortune. Wherefore let us say no more about
these matters for the present.

Returning to the constitution itself, let us seek to de-
termine out of what and what sort of elements the state
which is to be happy and well-governed should be com-
posed. There are two things in which all well-being
consists, one of them is the choice of a right end and
aim of action, and the other the discovery of the actions
which are means towards it; for the means and the end
may agree or disagree. Sometimes the right end is set
before men, but in practice they fail to attain it; in
other cases they are successful in all the means, but they
propose to themselves a bad end, and sometimes they
fail in both. Take, for example, the art of medicine;
physicians do not always understand the nature of health,
and also the means which they use may not effect the
desired end. In all arts and sciences both the end and
the means should be equally within our control.

3 The happiness and well-being which all men mani-
festly desire, some have the power of attaining, but
to others, from some accident or defect of nature, the
attainment of them is not granted; for a good life
1332a requires a supply of external goods, in a less degree

* Reading ἀπρόσμενον with Bekker's first edition.
230 THE GOOD LIFE REQUIRES EXTERNAL GOODS.

VII. 13. when men are in a good state, in a greater degree when they are in a lower state. Others again, who possess the condition of happiness, go utterly wrong from the first in the pursuit of it. But since our object is to discover the best form of government, that, namely, under which a city will be best governed, and since the city is best governed which has the greatest opportunity of obtaining happiness, it is evident that we must clearly ascertain the nature of happiness.

We have said in the Ethics, if the arguments there adduced are of any value, that happiness is the realization and perfect exercise of virtue, and this not conditional, but absolute. And I used the term ‘conditional’ to express that which is indispensable, and ‘absolute’ to express that which is good in itself. Take the case of just actions; just punishments and chastisements do indeed spring from a good principle, but they are good only because we cannot do without them—it would be better that neither individuals nor states should need anything of the sort—but actions which aim at honour and advantage are absolutely the best. The conditional action is only the choice of a lesser evil; whereas these are the foundation and creation of good. A good man may make the best even of poverty and disease, and the other ills of life; but he can only attain happiness under the opposite conditions. As we have already said in the Ethics, the good man is he to whom, because he is virtuous, the absolute good is his good. It is also plain that his use of other goods must be virtuous and in the absolute sense good. This makes men fancy that external goods are the cause of happiness, yet we might as well say that a brilliant performance on the lyre was to be attributed to the instrument and not to the skill of the performer.

a Cp. Nic. Eth. i. 7. § 15; x. 6. § 2; and cp. c. 8. § 5, supra.

b Retaining the MSS. reading αἰσθητα with Bekker’s first edition.

c Nic. Eth. i. c. 10. § 12-14.

d Nic. Eth. iii. c. 4. §§ 4, 5; E. E. vii. 15. § 4; M. M. ii. 9. § 3.
HOW MEN BECOME GOOD.

It follows then from what has been said that some things the legislator must find ready to his hand in a state, others he must provide. And therefore we can only say: May our state be constituted in such a manner as to be blessed with the goods of which fortune disposes (for we acknowledge her power); whereas virtue and goodness in the state are not a matter of chance but the result of knowledge and purpose. A city can be virtuous only when the citizens who have a share in the government are virtuous, and in our state all the citizens share in the government; let us then enquire how a man becomes virtuous. For even if we could suppose all the citizens to be virtuous, and not each of them, yet the latter would be better, for in the virtue of each the virtue of all is involved.

There are three things which make men good and virtuous: these are nature, habit, reason. In the first place, every one must be born a man and not some other animal; in the second place, he must have a certain character, both of body and soul. But some qualities there is no use in having at birth, for they are altered by habit, and there are some gifts of nature which may be turned by habit to good or bad. Most animals lead a life of nature, although in lesser particulars some are influenced by habit as well. Man has reason, in addition, and man only. Wherefore nature, habit, reason must be in harmony with one another; [for they do not always agree]; men do many things against habit and nature, if reason persuades them that they ought.

We have already determined what natures are likely to be most easily moulded by the hands of the legislator. All else is the work of education; we learn some things by habit and some by instruction.

Since every political society is composed of rulers and subjects, let us consider whether the relations of one to the other should interchange or be permanent. For

---

* Cp. N. Eth. x. 9. § 6.  
* Cp. supra, c. 7. § 4.  
* Cp. i. 2. § 10.  
* Cp. iii. 6. § 9.
VII. 14. the education of the citizens will necessarily vary with
the answer given to this question. Now, if some men
excelled others in the same degree in which gods and
heroes are supposed to excel mankind in general, having
in the first place a great advantage even in their bodies,
and secondly in their minds, so that the superiority of
the governors over their subjects was patent and undisputed,
it would clearly be better that once for all
the one class should rule and the others serve. But
since this is unattainable, and kings have no marked
superiority over their subjects, such as Scylax affirms to
be found among the Indians, it is obviously necessary
on many grounds that all the citizens alike should take
their turn of governing and being governed. Equality
consists in the same treatment of similar persons, and
no government can stand which is not founded upon
justice. For [if the government be unjust] every one in
the country unites with the governed in the desire
to have a revolution, and it is an impossibility that the
members of the government can be so numerous as to
be stronger than all their enemies put together. Yet
that governors should excel their subjects is undeniable.
How all this is to be effected, and in what way they
will respectively share in the government, the legislator
has to consider. The subject has been already men-
tioned. Nature herself has given the principle of choice
when she made a difference between old and young
(though they are really the same in kind), of whom she
fitted the one to govern and the others to be governed.
No one takes offence at being governed when he is young,
nor does he think himself better than his governors,
especially if he will enjoy the same privilege when he
reaches the required age.

We conclude that from one point of view governors and
governed are identical, and from another different. And

* Or, taking ἀστύ ἀρχομένως with φανεράω, 'was undisputed and
patent to their subjects.'

b Cp. i. 5. § 8; iii. 13. § 13.

c Cp. c. 9. § 5.
138b therefore their education must be the same and also different. For he who would learn to command well must as men say, first of all learn to obey. As I observed in the first part of this treatise, there is one rule which is for the sake of the rulers and another rule which is for the sake of the ruled; the former is a despotic, the latter a free government. Some commands differ not in the thing commanded, but in the intention with which they are imposed. Wherefore, many apparently menial offices are an honour to the free youth by whom they are performed; for actions do not differ as honourable or dishonourable in themselves so much as in the end and intention of them. But since we say that the virtue of the citizen and ruler is the same as that of the good man, and that the same person must first be a subject and then a ruler, the legislator has to see that they become good men, and by what means this may be accomplished, and what is the end of the perfect life.

Now the soul of man is divided into two parts, one of which has reason in itself, and the other, not having reason in itself, is able to obey reason. And we call a man good because he has the virtues of these two parts. In which of them the end is more likely to be found is no matter of doubt to those who adopt our division; for in the world both of nature and of art the inferior always exists for the sake of the better or superior, and the better or superior is that which has reason. The reason too, in our ordinary way of speaking, is divided into two parts, for there is a practical and a speculative reason, and there must be a corresponding division of actions; the actions of the naturally better principle are to be preferred by those who have it in their power to attain to both or to all, for that is always to every one the most eligible which is the highest attainable by him. The whole of life is further divided

- Cp. iii. 4. § 14.
- Cp. iii. 6. § 6.
- Cp. iii. 6. and 5. § 10.
into two parts, business and leisure, war and peace, and all actions into those which are necessary and useful, and those which are honourable. And the preference given to one or the other class of actions must necessarily be like the preference given to one or other part of the soul and its actions over the other; there must be war for the sake of peace, business for the sake of leisure, things useful and necessary for the sake of things honourable. All these points the statesman should keep in view when he frames his laws; he should consider the parts of the soul and their functions, and above all the better and the end; he should also remember the diversities of human lives and actions. For men must engage in business and go to war, but leisure and peace are better; they must do what is necessary and useful, but what is honourable is better. In such principles children and persons of every age which requires education should be trained. Whereas even the Hellenes of the present day, who are reputed to be best governed, and the legislators who gave them their constitutions, do not appear to have framed their governments with a regard to the best end, or to have given them laws and education with a view to all the virtues, but in a vulgar spirit have fallen back on those which promised to be more useful and profitable. Many modern writers have taken a similar view: they commend the Lacedaemonian constitution, and praise the legislator for making conquest and war his sole aim, a doctrine which may be refuted by argument and has long ago been refuted by facts. For most men desire empire in the hope of accumulating the goods of fortune; and on this ground Thibron and all those who have written about the Lacedaemonian constitution have praised their legislator, because the Lacedaemonians, by a training in hardships, gained great power. But surely they are not a happy people now that their empire has

a N. E. x. 7. § 6.  
b Plato Laws i. 628, 638.
passed away, nor was their legislator right. How ridiculous is the result, if, while they are continuing in the observance of his laws and no one interferes with them, they have lost the better part of life. These writers further err about the sort of government which the legislator should approve, for the government of freemen is noble, and implies more virtue than despotic government. Neither is a city to be deemed happy or a legislator to be praised because he trains his citizens to conquer and obtain dominion over their neighbours, for there is great evil in this. On a similar principle any citizen who could, would obviously try to obtain the power in his own state, — the crime which the Lacedaemonians accuse king Pausanias of attempting, although he had so great honour already. No such principle and no law having this object is either statesmanlike or useful or right. For the same things are best both for individuals and for states, and these are the things which the legislator ought to implant in the minds of his citizens. Neither should men study war with a view to the enslavement of those who do not deserve to be enslaved; but first of all they should provide against their own enslavement, and in the second place obtain empire for the good of the governed, and not for the sake of exercising a general despotism, and in the third place they should seek to be masters only over those who deserve to be slaves. Facts, as well as arguments, prove that the legislator should direct all his military and other measures to the provision of leisure and the establishment of peace. For most of these military states are safe only while they are at war, but fall when they have acquired their empire; like unused iron they rust in time of peace. And for this the legislator is to blame, he never having taught them how to lead the life of peace.

1834a. for the good of the governed, and not for the sake of exercising a general despotism, and in the third place they should seek to be masters only over those who deserve to be slaves. Facts, as well as arguments, prove that the legislator should direct all his military and other measures to the provision of leisure and the establishment of peace. For most of these military states are safe only while they are at war, but fall when they have acquired their empire; like unused iron they rust in time of peace. And for this the legislator is to blame, he never having taught them how to lead the life of peace.

1834a. for the good of the governed, and not for the sake of exercising a general despotism, and in the third place they should seek to be masters only over those who deserve to be slaves. Facts, as well as arguments, prove that the legislator should direct all his military and other measures to the provision of leisure and the establishment of peace. For most of these military states are safe only while they are at war, but fall when they have acquired their empire; like unused iron they rust in time of peace. And for this the legislator is to blame, he never having taught them how to lead the life of peace.

\[ \text{Cp. i. 5. § 2.} \quad \text{Cp. v. 1. § 10; 7. § 4.} \quad \text{Cp. ii. 9. § 34.} \quad \text{Lit. ‘they lose their edge.’} \]
VII. 15. Since the end of individuals and of states is the same, the end of the best man and of the best state must also be the same; it is therefore evident that there ought to exist in both of them the virtues of leisure; for peace has been often repeated, is the end of war, and leisure of toil. But leisure and cultivation may be promoted, not only by those virtues which are practised in leisure, but also by some of those which are useful to business.

For many necessaries of life have to be supplied before we can have leisure. Therefore a city must be temperate and brave, and able to endure: for truly, as the proverb says, 'There is no leisure for slaves,' and those who cannot face danger like men are the slaves of any invader. Courage and endurance are required for business and philosophy for leisure, temperance and justice for both, more especially in times of peace and leisure, for war compels men to be just and temperate, whereas the enjoyment of good fortune and the leisure which comes with peace tends to make them insolent. Those then, who seem to be the best-off and to be in the possession of every good, have special need of justice and temperance,—for example, those (if such there be, as the poets say) who dwell in the Islands of the Blest; they above all will need philosophy and temperance and justice, and all the more the more leisure they have, living in the midst of abundance. There is no difficulty in seeing why the state that would be happy and good ought to have these virtues. If it be disgraceful in men not to be able to use the goods of life, it is peculiarly disgraceful not to be able to use them in time of peace,—to show excellent qualities in action and war, and when they have peace and leisure to be no better than slaves. Wherefore we should not practise virtue after the manner of the Lacedaemonians. For they, while agreeing with other men in their conception of the highest goods, differ from the rest of mankind in thinking that

a i. e. 'not only by some of the speculative but also by some of the practical virtues.'

b Cp. ii. 9. § 34.
they are to be obtained by the practice of a single VII. 15. virtue. And since these goods and the enjoyment of them are clearly greater than the enjoyment derived from the virtues of which they are the end, we must now consider how and by what means they are to be attained.

7 We have already determined that nature and habit and reason are required*, and what should be the character of the citizens has also been defined by us. But we have still to consider whether the training of early life is to be that of reason or habit, for these two must accord, and when in accord they will then form the best of harmonies. Reason may make mistakes and fail in attaining the highest ideal of life, and there may be a like evil influence of habit*. Thus much is clear in the first place, that, as in all other things, birth implies some antecedent principle, and that the end of anything has a beginning in some former end. Now, in men reason and mind are the end towards which nature strives, so that the birth and moral discipline of the citizens ought to be ordered with a view to them. In the second place, as the soul and body are two, we see also that there are two parts of the soul, the rational and the irrational*, and two corresponding states—reason and appetite. And as the body is prior in order of generation to the soul, so the irrational is prior to the rational. The proof is that anger and will and desire are implanted in children from their very birth, but reason and understanding are developed as they grow older. Wherefore, the care of the body ought to precede that of the soul, and the training of the appetitive part should follow: none the less our care of it must be for the sake of the reason, and our care of the body for the sake of the soul*.

* Cp. 13. § 12.
* Or, 'and yet a man may be trained by habit as if the reason had not so erred.'
* Cp. N. Eth. i. 13. § 9 ff.
VII. 16. Since the legislator should begin by considering how
the frames of the children whom he is rearing may be as
good as possible, his first care will be about marriage—at
what age should his citizens marry, and who are fit to
marry? In legislating on this subject he ought to con-
sider the persons and their relative ages, that there
may be no disproportion in them, and that they may
not differ in their bodily powers, as will be the case
if the man is still able to beget children while the
woman is unable to bear them, or the woman able to
bear while the man is unable to beget, for from these
causes arise quarrels and differences between married
persons. Secondly, he must consider the time at which
the children will succeed to their parents; there ought
not to be too great an interval of age, for then the
parents will be too old to derive any pleasure from their
affection, or to be of any use to them. Nor ought they
to be too nearly of an age; to youthful marriages there
are many objections—the children will be wanting in
respect to the parents, who will seem to be their contem-
poraries, and disputes will arise in the management of the
household. Thirdly, and this is the point from which we
digressed, the legislator must mould to his will the frames
of newly-born children. Almost all these objects may
be secured by attention to one point. Since the time of
5 generation is commonly limited within the age of seventy
years in the case of a man, and of fifty in the case of a
woman, the commencement of the union should conform
to these periods. The union of male and female when
6 too young is bad for the procreation of children; in all
other animals the offspring of the young are small and
ill-developed, and generally of the female sex, and there-
fore also in man, as is proved by the fact that in those
cities in which men and women are accustomed to marry
young, the people are small and weak; in childbirth
also younger women suffer more, and more of them die;
some persons say that this was the meaning of the re-
response once given to the Troezenians—[‘Shear not the
young field,')—the oracle really meant that many died VII. 16. because they married too young; it had nothing to do 8 with the ingathering of the harvest. It also conduces to temperance not to marry too soon; for women who marry early are apt to be wanton; and in men too the bodily frame is stunted if they marry while they are growing (for there is a time when the growth of the body 9 ceases). Women should marry when they are about eighteen years of age, and men at seven and thirty*; then they are in the prime of life, and the decline in the 10 powers of both will coincide. Further, the children, if their birth takes place at the time that may reasonably be expected, will succeed in their prime, when the fathers are already in the decline of life, and have nearly reached their term of three-score years and ten.

Thus much of the age proper for marriage: the season of the year should also be considered; according to our present custom, people generally limit marriage to the season 11 of winter, and they are right. The precepts of physicians and natural philosophers about generation should also be studied by the parents themselves; the physicians give good advice about the right age of the body, and 1336b. the natural philosophers about the winds; of which they prefer the north to the south.

What constitution in the parent is most advantageous to the offspring is a subject which we will hereafter consider when we speak of the education of children, and we will only make a few general remarks at present. The temperament of an athlete is not suited to the life of a citizen, or to health, or to the procreation of children, any more than the valetudinarian or exhausted constitution, 13 but one which is in a mean between them. A man’s constitution should be inured to labour, but not to labour which is excessive or of one sort only, such as is practised by athletes; he should be capable of all the actions of a freeman. These remarks apply equally to both parents.

* Omitting ἱ μερῶν.
VII. 16. Women who are with child should be careful of themselves; they should take exercise and have a nourishing diet. The first of these prescriptions the legislator will easily carry into effect by requiring that they shall take a walk daily to some temple, where they can worship the gods who preside over birth. Their minds, however, unlike their bodies, they ought to keep unexercised. For the offspring derive their natures from their mothers as plants do from the earth.

As to the exposure and rearing of children, let there be a law that no deformed child shall live, but where there are too many (for in our state population has a limit), when couples have children in excess, and the state of feeling is averse to the exposure of offspring, let abortion be procured before sense and life have begun; what may or may not be lawfully done in these cases depends on the question of life and sensation.

And now, having determined at what ages men and women are to begin their union, let us also determine how long they shall continue to beget and bear offspring for the state; men who are too old, like men who are too young, produce children who are defective in body and mind; the children of very old men are weakly. The limit, then, should be the age which is the prime of their intelligence, and this in most persons, according to the notion of some poets who measure life by periods of seven years, is about fifty; at four or five years later, they should cease from having families; and from that time forward only cohabit with one another for the sake of health, or for some similar reason.

As to adultery, let it be held disgraceful for any man or woman to be unfaithful when they are married, and called husband and wife. If during the time of bearing children anything of the sort occur, let the guilty person be punished with a loss of privileges in proportion to the offence.

---

*b* λειτουργεῖν.
*c* Cp. Solon Fragm. 25 Bergk.
*d* Cp. Laws viii. 841.
After the children have been born, the manner of VII. 17. rearing them may be supposed to have a great effect on their bodily strength. It would appear from the example of animals, and of those nations who desire to create the military habit, that the food which has most milk in it is best suited to human beings; but the less wine the better, if they would escape diseases. Also all the motions to which children can be subjected at their exercise, early age are very useful. But in order to preserve their tender limbs from distortion, some nations have had recourse to mechanical appliances which straighten their bodies. To accustom children to the cold from their earliest years is also an excellent practice, which greatly conduces to health, and hardens them for military service. Hence many barbarians have a custom of plunging their children at birth into a cold stream; others, like the Celts, clothe them in a light wrapper only. For human nature should be early habituated to endure all which by habit it can be made to endure; but the process must be gradual. And children, from their natural warmth, may be easily trained to bear cold. Such care should attend them in the first stage of life.

The next period lasts to the age of five; during this no demand should be made upon the child for study or labour, lest its growth be impeded; and there should be sufficient motion to prevent the limbs from being inactive. This can be secured, among other ways, by amusement, but the amusement should not be vulgar or tiring or riotous. The Directors of Education, as they are termed, should be careful what tales or stories the children hear, for the sports of children are designed to prepare the way for the business of later life, and should be for the most part imitations of the occupations which they will hereafter pursue in earnest.

Those are wrong who [like Plato] in the Laws attempt to check the loud crying and screaming of children, for [Plato criticized.]

---

a Plato Rep. ii. 377 ff.  
b Plato Laws i. 643; vii. 799.

VOL. I.

R
VII. 17. these contribute towards their growth, and, in a manner, exercise their bodies. Straining the voice has an effect similar to that produced by the retention of the breath in violent exertions. Besides other duties, the Directors of Education should have an eye to their bringing up, and should take care that they are left as little as possible with slaves. For until they are seven years old they must live at home; and therefore, even at this early age, all that is mean and low should be banished from their sight and hearing. Indeed, there is nothing which the legislator should be more careful to drive away than indecency of speech; for the light utterance of shameful words is akin to shameful actions. The young especially should never be allowed to repeat or hear anything of the sort. A freeman who is found saying or doing what is forbidden, if he be too young as yet to have the privilege of a place at the public tables, should be disgraced and beaten, and an elder person degraded as his slavish conduct deserves. And since we do not allow improper language, clearly we should also banish pictures or tales which are indecent. Let the rulers take care that there be no image or picture representing unseemly actions, except in the temples of those Gods at whose festivals the law permits even ribaldry, and whom the law also permits to be worshipped by persons of mature age on behalf of themselves, their children, and their wives. But the legislator should not allow youth to be hearers of satirical iambic verses or spectators of comedy until they are of an age to sit at the public tables and to drink strong wine; by that time education will have armed them against the evil influences of such representations.

We have made these remarks in a cursory manner;—they are enough for the present occasion; but hereafter we will return to the subject and after a fuller discussion determine whether such liberty should or should not be granted, and in what way granted, if at all.

---

* Plato Laws vii. 792.
* Unfulfilled promise (?), but cp. viii. c. 5. § 21.
Theodorus, the tragic actor, was quite right in saying VII. 17. that he would not allow any other actor, not even if he were quite second-rate, to enter before himself, because the spectators grew fond of the voices which they first heard. And the same principle of association applies universally to things as well as persons, for we always like best whatever comes first. And therefore youth should be kept strangers to all that is bad, and especially to things which suggest vice or hate. When the five years have passed away, during the two following years they must look on at the pursuits which they are hereafter to learn. There are two periods of life into which education has to be divided, from seven to the age of puberty, and onwards to the age of one and twenty. The poets who divide ages by sevens are not always right: we should rather adhere to the divisions actually made by nature; for the deficiencies of nature are what art and education seek to fill up.

Let us then first enquire if any regulations are to be laid down about children, and secondly, whether the care of them should be the concern of the state or of private individuals, which latter is in our own day the common custom, and in the third place, what these regulations should be.

a Cp. supra, c. 16. § 17.
b Reading ὅ ὁ ἁλαῖς, with the MSS. and Bekker's first edition; or, reading ὅ ὁ ὁ ἁλαῖς, a conjecture of Muretus, which Bekker has adopted in his second edition, 'are in the main right; but we should also observe, etc.'
BOOK VIII.

VIII. 1. No one will doubt that the legislator should direct his attention above all to the education of youth, or that the neglect of education does harm to states. The citizen should be moulded to suit the form of government under which he lives. For each government has a peculiar character which originally formed and which continues to preserve it. The character of democracy creates democracy, and the character of oligarchy creates oligarchy; and always the better the character, the better the government.

Now for the exercise of any faculty or art a previous training and habituation are required; clearly therefore for the practice of virtue. And since the whole city has one end, it is manifest that education should be one and the same for all, and that it should be public, and not private,—not as at present, when every one looks after his own children separately, and gives them separate instruction of the sort which he thinks best; the training in things which are of common interest should be the same for all. Neither must we suppose that any one of the citizens belongs to himself, for they all belong to the state, and are each of them a part of the state, and the care of each part is inseparable from the care of the whole. In this particular the Lacedaemonians are to be praised, for they take the greatest pains about their children, and make education the business of the state.

That education should be regulated by law and should be an affair of state is not to be denied, but what should be the character of this public education, and how young

persons should be educated, are questions which remain to be considered. For mankind are by no means agreed about the things to be taught, whether we look to virtue or the best life. Neither is it clear whether education is more concerned with intellectual or with moral virtue. The existing practice is perplexing; no one knows on what principle we should proceed—should the useful in life, or should virtue, or should the higher knowledge be the aim of our training; all three opinions have been entertained. Again, about the means there is no agreement; for different persons, starting with different ideas about the nature of virtue, naturally disagree about the practice of it. There can be no doubt that children should be taught those useful things which are really necessary, but not all things; for occupations are divided into liberal and illiberal; and to young children should be imparted only such kinds of knowledge as will be useful to them without vulgarizing them. And any occupation, art, or science, which makes the body or soul or mind of the freeman less fit for the practice or exercise of virtue, is vulgar; wherefore we call those arts vulgar which tend to deform the body, and likewise all paid employments, for they absorb and degrade the mind. There are also some liberal arts quite proper for a freeman to acquire, but only in a certain degree, and if he attend to them too closely, in order to attain perfection in them, the same evil effects will follow. The object also which a man sets before him makes a great difference; if he does or learns anything for his own sake or for the sake of his friends, or with a view to excellence, the action will not appear illiberal; but if done for the sake of others, the very same action will be thought menial and servile. The received subjects of instruction, as I have already remarked, are partly of a liberal and partly of an illiberal character.

The customary branches of education are in number four; they are—(1) reading and writing, (2) gymnastic exercises, (3) music, to which is sometimes added (4) drawing.

a Cp. iii. 4. § 13. b § 3 supra.
VIII. 3. these, reading and writing and drawing are regarded as useful for the purposes of life in a variety of ways, and gymnastic exercises are thought to infuse courage. Concerning music a doubt may be raised—in our own day most men cultivate it for the sake of pleasure, but originally it was included in education, because nature herself, as has been often said, requires that we should be able, not only to work well, but to use leisure well; for, as I must repeat once and again*, the first principle of all action is leisure. Both are required, but leisure is better than occupation; and therefore the question must be asked in good earnest, what ought we to do when at leisure? Clearly we ought not to be amusing ourselves, for the amusement would be the end of life. But if this is inconceivable, and yet amid serious occupations amusement is needed more than at other times (for he who is hard at work has need of relaxation, and amusement gives relaxation, whereas occupation is always accompanied with exertion and effort), at suitable times we should introduce amusements, and they should be our medicines, for the emotion which they create in the soul is a relaxation, and from the pleasure we obtain rest. Leisure of itself gives pleasure and happiness and enjoyment of life, which are experienced, not by the busy man, but by those who have leisure. For he who is occupied has in view some end which he has not attained; but happiness is an end which all men deem to be accompanied with pleasure and not with pain. This pleasure, however, is regarded differently by different persons, and varies according to the habit of individuals; the pleasure of the best man is the best, and springs from the noblest sources. It is clear then that there are branches of learning and education which we must study with a view to the enjoyment of leisure, and these are to be valued for their own sake; whereas those kinds of knowledge which are useful in business are to be deemed necessary.

* As in vii. 15. §§ 1, 2, and N. Eth. x. 6.
and exist for the sake of other things. And therefore our fathers admitted music into education, not on the ground either of its necessity or utility, for it is not necessary, nor indeed useful in the same manner as reading and writing, which are useful in money-making, in the management of a household, in the acquisition of knowledge and in political life, nor like drawing, useful for a more correct judgment of the works of artists, nor again like gymnastic, which gives health and strength; for neither of these is to be gained from music. There remains, then, the use of music for intellectual enjoyment in leisure; which appears to have been the reason of its introduction, this being one of the ways in which it is thought that a freeman should pass his leisure; as Homer says—

'How good is it to invite men to the pleasant feast;'

and afterwards he speaks of others whom he describes as inviting

'The bard who would delight them all.'

And in another place Odysseus says there is no better way of passing life than when

'Men's hearts are merry and the banqueters in the hall, sitting in order, hear the voice of the minstrel.'

It is evident, then, that there is a sort of education in which parents should train their sons, not as being useful or necessary, but because it is liberal or noble. Whether this is of one kind only, or of more than one, and if so, what they are, and how they are to be imparted, must hereafter be determined. Thus much we are now in a position to say that the ancients witness to us; for their opinion may be gathered from the fact that music is one of the received and traditional branches of education. Further, it is clear that children should be

---

* Or, 'to invite Thalia to the feast,' an interpretation of the passage possibly intended by Aristotle, though of course not the original meaning.

* Od. xvii. 385.

* Od. ix. 7.
VIII. 3. instructed in some useful things,—for example, in reading
and writing,—not only for their usefulness, but also be-
cause many other sorts of knowledge are acquired
through them. With a like view they may be taught 12
drawing, not to prevent their making mistakes in their
own purchases, or in order that they may not be im-
posed upon in the buying or selling of articles, but rather 1888 b.
because it makes them judges of the beauty of the
human form. To be always seeking after the useful does
not become free and exalted souls a. Now it is clear 13
that in education habit must go before reason, and the
body before the mind; and therefore boys should be
handed over to the trainer, who creates in them the
proper habit of body, and to the wrestling-master, who
teaches them their exercises.

Of those states which in our own day seem to take the
greatest care of children, some aim at producing in them
an athletic habit, but they only injure their forms and
stunt their growth. Although the Lacedaemonians have
not fallen into this mistake, yet they brutalize their chil-
dren by laborious exercises which they think will make
them courageous. But in truth, as we have often re-
peated, education should not be exclusively directed
to this or to any other single end. And even if we sup-
pose the Lacedaemonians to be right in their end, they
do not attain it. For among barbarians and among
animals courage is found associated, not with the greatest
ferocity, but with a gentle and lion-like temper. There 3
are many races who are ready enough to kill and eat
men, such as the Achaeans and Heniochi, who both live
about the Black Sea b; and there are other inland tribes,
as bad or worse, who all live by plunder, but have no
courage. It is notorious that the Lacedaemonians, while 4
they were themselves assiduous in their laborious drill,
were superior to others, but now they are beaten both in
war and gymnastic exercises. For their ancient supe-

riority did not depend on their mode of training their youth, but only on the circumstance that they trained them at a time when others did not. Hence we may infer that what is noble, not what is brutal, should have the first place; no wolf or other wild animal will face a really noble danger; such dangers are for the brave man. And parents who devote their children to gymnastics while they neglect their necessary education, in reality vulgarize them; for they make them useful to the state in one quality only, and even in this the argument proves them to be inferior to others. We should judge the Lacedaemonians not from what they have been, but from what they are; for now they have rivals who compete with their education; formerly they had none.

It is an admitted principle, that gymnastic exercises should be employed in education, and that for children they should be of a lighter kind, avoiding severe regimen or painful toil, lest the growth of the body be impaired. The evil of excessive training in early years is strikingly proved by the example of the Olympic victors; for not more than two or three of them have gained a prize both as boys and as men; their early training and severe gymnastic exercises exhausted their constitutions. When boyhood is over, three years should be spent in other studies; the period of life which follows may then be devoted to hard exercise and strict regimen. Men ought not to labour at the same time with their minds and with their bodies; for the two kinds of labour are opposed to one another, the labour of the body impedes the mind, and the labour of the mind the body.

Concerning music there are some questions which we have already raised; these we may now resume and carry further; and our remarks will serve as a prelude to this or any other discussion of the subject. It is not easy to determine the nature of music, or why any one should have a knowledge of it. Shall we say, for the sake

* Cp. Plato Rep. vii. 537 B.
of amusement and relaxation, like sleep or drinking, which are not good in themselves, but are pleasant, and at the same time 'make care to cease,' as Euripides says? And therefore men rank them with music, and make use of all three,—sleep, drinking, music,—to which some add dancing. Or shall we argue that music conduces to virtue, on the ground that it can form our minds and habituate us to true pleasures as our bodies are made by gymnastic to be of a certain character? Or shall we say that it contributes to the enjoyment of leisure and mental cultivation, which is a third alternative? Now obviously youth are not to be instructed with a view to their amusement, for learning is no pleasure, but is accompanied with pain. Neither is intellectual enjoyment suitable to boys of that age, for it is the end, and that which is imperfect cannot attain the perfect or end. But perhaps it may be said that boys learn music for the sake of the amusement which they will have when they are grown up. If so, why should they learn themselves, and not, like the Persian and Median kings, enjoy the pleasure and instruction which is derived from hearing others? (for surely skilled persons who have made music the business and profession of their lives will be better performers than those who practise only to learn). If they must learn music, on the same principle they should learn cookery, which is absurd. And even granting that music may form the character, the objection still holds: why should we learn ourselves? Why cannot we attain true pleasure and form a correct judgment from hearing others, like the Lacedaemonians—for they, without learning music, nevertheless can correctly judge, as they say, of good and bad melodies. Or again, if music should be used to promote cheerfulness and refined intellectual enjoyment, the objection still remains—why should we learn ourselves instead of enjoying the per-

a Bacchae, 380.

b Reading (with Bekker’s 2nd ed.) ὅπως, a correction which seems necessary, and is suggested by ὅπως and ὅπως above.
formances of others? We may illustrate what we are saying by our conception of the Gods; for in the poets Zeus does not himself sing or play on the lyre. Nay, we call professional performers vulgar; no freeman would play or sing unless he were intoxicated or in jest. But these matters may be left for the present.

The first question is whether music is or is not to be a part of education. Of the three things mentioned in our discussion, which is it?—Education or amusement or intellectual enjoyment, for it may be reckoned under all three, and seems to share in the nature of all of them. Amusement is for the sake of relaxation, and relaxation is of necessity sweet, for it is the remedy of pain caused by toil, and intellectual enjoyment is universally acknowledged to contain an element not only of the noble but of the pleasant, for happiness is made up of both. All men agree that music is one of the pleasantest things, whether with or without song; as Musaeus says,

'Song is to mortals of all things the sweetest.'

Hence and with good reason it is introduced into social gatherings and entertainments, because it makes the hearts of men glad: so that on this ground alone we may assume that the young ought to be trained in it. For innocent pleasures are not only in harmony with the perfect end of life, but they also provide relaxation. And whereas men rarely attain the end, but often rest by the way and amuse themselves, not only with a view to some good, but also for the pleasure's sake, it may be well for them at times to find a refreshment in music.

It sometimes happens that men make amusement the end, for the end probably contains some element of pleasure, though not any ordinary or lower pleasure; but they mistake the lower for the higher, and in seeking for the one find the other, since every pleasure has a likeness to the end of action. For the end is not eligible, nor do the pleasures which we have described

exists, for the sake of any future good but of the past, that is to say, they are the alleviation of past toils and pains. And we may infer this to be the reason why men seek happiness from common pleasures. But music is pursued, not only as an alleviation of past toil, but also as providing recreation. And who can say whether, having this use, it may not also have a nobler one? In addition to this common pleasure, felt and shared in by all (for the pleasure given by music is natural, and therefore adapted to all ages and characters), may it not have also some influence over the character and the soul? It must have such an influence if characters are affected by it. And that they are so affected is proved by the power which the songs of Olympus and of many others exercise; for beyond question they inspire enthusiasm, and enthusiasm is an emotion of the ethical part of the soul. Besides, when men hear imitations, even unaccompanied by melody or rhythm, their feelings move in sympathy. Since then music is a pleasure, and virtue consists in rejoicing and loving and hating aright, there is clearly nothing which we are so much concerned to acquire and to cultivate as the power of forming right judgments, and of taking delight in good dispositions and noble actions. Rhythm and melody supply imitations of anger and gentleness, and also of courage and temperance and of virtues and vices in general, which hardly fall short of the actual affections, as we know from our own experience, for in listening to such strains our souls undergo a change. The habit of feeling pleasure at mere representations is not far removed from the same feeling about realities; for example, if any one delights in the sight of a statue for its beauty only, it necessarily follows that the sight of the original will be pleasant to him. No other sense, such as taste or touch, has any resemblance to moral qualities; in sight only there is a little, for figures are to some extent of a moral


character, and [so far] all participate in the feeling about them. Again, figures and colours are not imitations, but signs of moral habits, indications which the body gives of states of feeling. The connexion of them with morals is slight, but in so far as there is any, young men should be taught to look, not at the works of Pausan, but at those of Polygnutus*, or any other painter or statuary who expresses moral ideas. On the other hand, even in mere melodies there is an imitation of character, for the musical modes differ essentially from one another, and those who hear them are differently affected by each. Some of them make men sad and grave, like the so-called Mixolydian, others enfeeble the mind, like the relaxed harmonies, others, again, produce a moderate and settled temper, which appears to be the peculiar effect of the Dorian; the Phrygian inspires enthusiasm. The whole subject has been well treated by philosophical writers on this branch of education, and they confirm their arguments by facts. The same principles apply to rhythms: some have a character of rest, others of motion, and of these latter again, some have a more vulgar, others a nobler movement. Enough has been said to show that music has a power of forming the character, and should therefore be introduced into the education of the young. The study is suited to the stage of youth, for young persons will not, if they can help, endure anything which is not sweetened by pleasure, and music has a natural sweetness. There seems to be in us a sort of affinity to harmonies and rhythms, which makes some philosophers say that the soul is a harmony, others, that she possesses harmony.

And now we have to determine the question which has been already raised, whether children should be taught to sing and play or not. Clearly there is a considerable difference made in the character

---

*a* Cp. Poet. 2. § 2 ; 6. § 15.  
*Rep. iii. 399 E, 400.*  
*c. 5. §§ 5-8.*
by the actual practice of the art. It is difficult, if not
impossible, for those who do not perform to be good
judges of the performance of others *. Besides, children
should have something to do, and the rattle of Archytas,
which people give to their children in order to amuse
them and prevent them from breaking anything in the
house, was a capital invention, for a young thing cannot
be quiet. The rattle is a toy suited to the infant mind,
and [musical] education is a rattle or toy for children
of a larger growth. We conclude then that they should
be taught music in such a way as to become not only
critics but performers.

The question what is or is not suitable for different
ages may be easily answered; nor is there any difficulty
in meeting the objection of those who say that the
study of music is vulgar. We reply (1) in the first place,
that they who are to be judges must also be performers,
and that they should begin to practise early, although
when they are older they may be spared the execution;
they must have learned to appreciate what is good and
to delight in it, thanks to the knowledge which they
acquired in their youth. As to (2) the vulgarizing effect
which music is supposed to exercise, this is a question
[of degree], which we shall have no difficulty in deter-
mining, when we have considered to what extent free-
men who are being trained to political virtue should
pursue the art, what melodies and what rhythms they
should be allowed to use, and what instruments should
be employed in teaching them to play, for even the in-
strument makes a difference. The answer to the objection
turns upon these distinctions; for it is quite possible that
certain methods of teaching and learning music do really
have a degrading effect. It is evident then that the
learning of music ought not to impede the business of
riper years, or to degrade the body or render it unfit
for civil or military duties, whether for the early practice
or for the later study of them.

* Cp. supra, c. 5. § 7.
The right measure will be attained if students of music stop short of the arts which are practised in professional contests, and do not seek to acquire those fantastic marvels of execution which are now the fashion in such contests, and from these have passed into education. Let the young pursue their studies until they are able to feel delight in noble melodies and rhythms, and not merely in that common part of music in which every slave or child and even some animals find pleasure.

From these principles we may also infer what instruments should be used. The flute, or any other instrument which requires great skill, as for example the harp, ought not to be admitted into education, but only such as will make intelligent students of music or of the other parts of education. Besides, the flute is not an instrument which has a good moral effect; it is too exciting. The proper time for using it is when the performance aims not at instruction, but at the relief of the passions. And there is a further objection; the impediment which the flute presents to the use of the voice detracts from its educational value. The ancients therefore were right in forbidding the flute to youths and freemen, although they had once allowed it. For when their wealth gave them greater leisure, and they had loftier notions of excellence, being also elated with their success, both before and after the Persian War, with more zeal than discernment they pursued every kind of knowledge, and so they introduced the flute into education. At Lacedaemon there was a Choragus who led the Chorus with a flute, and at Athens the instrument became so popular that most freemen could play upon it. The popularity is shown by the tablet which Thrasippus dedicated when he furnished the Chorus to Ecphantides. Later experience enabled men to judge what was or was not really conducive to virtue, and they rejected both the flute and several other old-fashioned instruments, such as the Lydian

* Cp. c. 7. § 3.
VIII. 6. harp, the many-stringed lyre, the ‘heptagon,’ ‘triangle,’
‘sambuca,’ and the like—which are intended only to give pleasure to the hearer, and require extraordinary skill of hand. There is a meaning also in the myth of the ancients, which tells how Athene invented the flute and then threw it away. It was not a bad idea of theirs, that the Goddess disliked the instrument because it made the face ugly; but with still more reason may we say that she rejected it because the acquirement of flute-playing contributes nothing to the mind, since to Athene we ascribe both knowledge and art.

Thus then we reject the professional instruments and also the professional mode of education in music—and by professional we mean that which is adopted in contests, for in this the performer practises the art, not for the sake of his own improvement, but in order to give pleasure, and that of a vulgar sort, to his hearers. For this reason the execution of such music is not the part of a freeman but of a paid performer, and the result is that the performers are vulgarized, for the end at which they aim is bad. The vulgarity of the spectator tends to lower the character of the music and therefore of the performers; they look to him—he makes them what they are, and fashions even their bodies by the movements which he expects them to exhibit.

We have also to consider rhythms and harmonies. Shall we use them all in education or make a distinction? and shall the distinction be that which is made by those who are engaged in education, or shall it be some other? For we see that music is produced by melody and rhythm, and we ought to know what influence these have respectively on education, and whether we should prefer excellence in melody or excellence in rhythm. But as the subject has been very well treated by many musicians of the present day, and also by philosophers who have had considerable experience of musical education, to these we would refer the more exact student of the

a Cp. Plato Rep. iii. 399 D.  
b Cp. Plato Laws iii. 700.
subject; we shall only speak of it now after the manner VIII. 7.
of the legislator, having regard to general principles.

3 We accept the division of melodies proposed by cer-
tain philosophers into ethical melodies, melodies of
action, and passionate or inspiring melodies, each having,
as they say, a mode or harmony corresponding to it.
But we maintain further that music should be studied,
not for the sake of one, but of many benefits, that is to
say, with a view to (1) education; (2) purification (the
word 'purification' we use at present without explana-
tion, but when hereafter we speak of poetry*, we will
treat the subject with more precision); music may also
serve (3) for intellectual enjoyment, for relaxation and
for recreation after exertion. It is clear, therefore, that
all the harmonies must be employed by us, but not all
of them in the same manner. In education ethical
melodies are to be preferred, but we may listen to the
melodies of action and passion when they are per-
formed by others. For feelings such as pity and fear,
or, again, enthusiasm, exist very strongly in some souls,
and have more or less influence over all. Some persons
fall into a religious frenzy, whom we see disenthralled
by the use of mystic melodies, which bring healing
and purification to the soul. Those who are influenced
by pity or fear and every emotional nature have a
like experience, others in their degree are stirred by
something which specially affects them, and all are
in a manner purified and their souls lightened and
delighted. The melodies of purification likewise give
an innocent pleasure to mankind. Such are the har-
monies and the melodies in which those who perform
music at the theatre should be invited to compete.
But since the spectators are of two kinds—the one
free and educated, and the other a vulgar crowd
composed of mechanics, labourers, and the like—there
ought to be contests and exhibitions instituted for the

* Cp. Poet. c. 6, though the promise is really unfulfilled.

S
VIII. 7. relaxation of the second class also. And the melodies will correspond to their minds; for as their minds are perverted from the natural state, so there are exaggerated and corrupted harmonies which are in like manner a perversion. A man receives pleasure from what is natural to him, and therefore professional musicians may be allowed to practise this lower sort of music before an audience of a lower type. But, for the purposes of education, as I have already said, those modes and melodies should be employed which are ethical, such as the Dorian; though we may include any others which are approved by philosophers who have had a musical education. The Socrates of the Republic\(^a\) is wrong in retaining only the Phrygian mode along with the Dorian, and the more so because he rejects the flute; for the Phrygian is to the modes what the flute is to musical instruments—both of them are exciting and emotional. Poetry proves this, for Bacchic frenzy and all similar emotions are most suitably expressed by the flute, and are better set to the Phrygian than to any other harmony. The dithyramb, for example, is acknowledged to be Phrygian, a fact of which the connoisseurs of music offer many proofs, saying, among other things, that Philoxenus, having attempted to compose his \(b\) Tales as a dithyramb in the Dorian mode, found it impossible, and fell back into the more appropriate Phrygian. All men agree that the Dorian music is the gravest and manliest. And whereas we say that the extremes should be avoided and the mean followed, and whereas the Dorian is a mean between the other harmonies [the Phrygian and the Lydian\(^c\)], it is evident that our youth should be taught the Dorian music.

Two principles have to be kept in view, what is possible, what is becoming: at these every man ought to aim. But even these are relative to age; the old,

\(^a\) Plato Rep. iii. 399.

\(^b\) Retaining the MS. reading μὸδος. Cp. Poet. c. 2. § 7.

\(^c\) Cp. c. 5. § 22.
who have lost their powers, cannot very well sing the severe melodies, and nature herself seems to suggest that their songs should be of the more relaxed kind. Wherefore the musicians likewise blame Socrates, and with justice, for rejecting the relaxed harmonies in education under the idea that they are intoxicating, not in the ordinary sense of intoxication (for wine rather tends to excite men), but because they have no strength in them. And so with a view to a time of life when men begin to grow old, they ought to practise the gentler harmonies and melodies as well as the others. And if there be any harmony, such as the Lydian above all others appears to be, which is suited to children of tender age, and possesses the elements both of order and of education, clearly [we ought to use it, for] education should be based upon three principles—the mean, the possible, the becoming, these three.
INDEX.

A.

Abydos, revolution in the government of, v. 6, § 6; power of the clubs, ib. §§ 6, 13.

Account, power of calling magistrates to, in Sparta exercised by the Ephors, ii. 9, § 26; given by Solon to the people, ib. 12, § 5; iii. 11, § 8; and justly claimed by them, iii. 11; when exercised by all, a mark of democracy, iv. 14, §§ 4-6; vi. 2, § 5; 4, § 5.

Accountants, vi. 8, § 17.

Achaea [in Peloponnesus]; treachery of the Achaeans to the Troizenians at the foundation of Sybaris, v. 3, § 11.

Achaea [Pthiotis]; wars of the Achaeans with the Thessalians, ii. 9, § 3.

Achaeans, the (in Colchis), said to be cannibals, viii. 4, § 3.

Achilles, complaint of, against Agamemnon (Ili. ix. 648), quoted, iii. 5, § 9.

Acquisition, the art of, (i) the natural, i. 9, § 12; 11, §§ 1, 2; includes war [in certain cases] and hunting, i. 7, § 5; 8, § 12; vii. 14, § 21; a part of household management, i. 4, § 1; 8, §§ 13-15; 9, §§ 1-8; 10, §§ 1-4; 11, § 2; has a limit, ib. 8, § 14; 9, §§ 13-18; (ii) that which is contrary to nature, including (a) exchange which goes beyond the need of life, i. 9, §§ 2-5; 10, § 4; 11, § 3; (b) usury, ib. 10, § 4; 11, § 3; (c) trade, ib. 9, § 4; 10, § 4; 11, § 3; (d) service for hire, ib. 11, § 3; (iii) the intermediate kind, ib. § 4.

Action, the slave a minister of, i. 4, §§ 4-6; 5, § 9; the life of,—is it the best? ii. 6, § 8; vii. 2; 3.

Actions, divided into a superior and an inferior class, viii. 14, §§ 10-14.


Admiral, office of (at Sparta), ii. 9, § 33.

Adoption, laws of, enacted by Philolaus at Thebes, ii. 12, § 10.

Adultery, punishments for, caused revolutions at Heraclea and Thebes, v. 6, § 15; law which should be adopted about, vii. 16, § 18.

Ægina, number of merchant seamen at, iv. 4, § 21; plot of Chares to overturn the government, v. 6, § 9.


Æsymnetes, the, or dictators of ancient Hellas, iii. 14, §§ 8-10, 14; iv. 10, § 2; always received a guard, iii. 15, § 16.

Affection, would be destroyed by communism, ii. 4, §§ 5-9; the two qualities which chiefly inspire, ib. § 9.

Agamemnon, iii. 5, § 9; 14, § 4; 16, § 10.

Age, offices to be divided among the citizens, according to, vii. 9, §§ 4-9; 14, §§ 4, 5; the poets not (?) right in dividing ages by sevens, ib. 16, § 17; 17, § 15; propriety of different kinds of music for different ages, viii. 7, §§ 13-15.

Age for gymnastic exercises, the, vii. 12, § 5; for marriage, ib. 16, §§ 1-11; to sit at the public tables, ib. 17, § 11.

Age, old, tells upon the mind as well as the body, ii. 9, § 25.

Agesilaus, King of Sparta, v. 7, § 3.

Agriculture, the employment followed by the greater part of mankind, i. 8, § 7; works upon, ib.
INDEX.

11, § 7; ancient legislation to encourage, vi. 4, §§ 8-10.
Air, pure, necessity of, vii. 11, § 4.
Alcaeus, songs of, against Pittacus, iii. 14, § 10.
Alyone, mother of Diocles the Corinthian, ii. 12, § 8.
Aleuadae, the, at Larissa, v. 6, § 13.
Aliens, resident, how distinguished from citizens, iii. 1, § 4; obliged to have a patron, ib.; enrolled by Cleisthenes in the tribes, ib. 2, § 3; admitted to citizenship at Syracuse, v. 3, § 13.
All, fallacy in the word, ii. 3, § 3 (cp. vii. 13, § 10).
Alliance, an, how different from a state, ii. 2, § 3; iii. 9, §§ 6-8.
Almsgiving, demoralizing effects of, vi. 5, § 7.
Alternation in office, characteristic of constitutional governments, i. 1, § 2; 12, § 2; ii. 2, §§ 4-7; iii. 4, §§ 10, 14-17; 6, §§ 9, 10; 16, §§ 2, 3; 17, § 4; vi. 2, §§ 2, 5; vii. 14, §§ 1-5.
Amadocus (?king of the Odrysians), conspiracy of Seuthes against, v. 10, § 24.
Amasis, king of Egypt, story of, i. 12, § 2.
Ambassadors, enmities between, fostered by Spartan state policy, ii. 9, § 30; not to be considered magistrates, iv. 15, § 3.
Ambition, a cause of crime, ii. 7, §§ 10-14, 18; 9, § 26; encouraged by the Spartan law-giver, ib. 9, § 26; a motive of revolutions, ii. 7, §§ 10, 18; v. 7, § 4; 10, § 5.
Ambracia, democratic revolution at, and expulsion of the tyrant Periander, v. 3, § 10; 4, § 9; 19, § 16.
Amphipolis, the citizens of, expelled by a Chalcidian colony, v. 3, § 13; 6, § 8.
Amyntas the Little (father of Philip), conspiracy of Dardas against, v. 10, § 16.
Analysis, the method of knowledge, i. 1, § 3; 2, § 1; 8, § 1.
Anaxilaus, tyranny of, at Rhegium, v. 12, § 13.
Andria, ancient name of the common meals at Sparta, ii. 10, § 5.
Androdamos, of Rhegium, gave certain laws to the Chalcidian cities of Thrace, ii. 12, § 14.
Andros, affair of the Andrians, ii. 9, § 20.
Anger, is insensible to reason, v. 10, § 34; ii. 11, § 31; most bitter against friends who have done a wrong, vii. 7, § 7; exists even in very young children, ib. 15, § 10.
Animals, the, intention of Nature in denying speech to, i. 2, §§ 10-12; under the dominion of man, ib. 5, § 7; tame better than wild, ib.; only differ from slaves in not being able to apprehend reason, ib. § 9; their various modes of life, ib. 8, §§ 4-6; supply their offspring with food in different ways, ib. § 10; created for the sake of man, ib. §§ 9-12; produce offspring resembling their parents, ii. 3, § 9; cannot form a state, iii. 9, § 6; lead a life of nature, not of reason, vii. 13, § 12; the parts of animals an illustration of the parts of the state, iv. 4, §§ 7-9; the offspring of young animals often small and ill-developed, vii. 16, § 6.
Antileon, tyrant at Chalcis, v. 12, § 12.
Antimenides, brother of Alcaeus, iii. 14, § 9.
Antissa, in Lesbos, quarrel at, between the old citizens and the Chian refugees, v. 3, § 12.
Antisthenes, his fable of the lion and the hares, iii. 13, § 14.
Aphrodite, why connected with Ares in mythology, ii. 9, § 8.
Aphytaeans, the (in Pallene), agrarian legislation among, vi. 4, § 10.
Apollodoros of Lemnos, author of a work on Agriculture, i. 11, § 7.
Apollonia (on the Adriatic), early government of, iv. 4, § 5.
Apollonia (on the Euxine), quarrels at, between the old and new citizens, v. 3, § 13; in the oligarchy, ib. 6, § 9.
Appeal, a court of, allowed by Hippodamus, ii. 8, § 4.
INDEX.

Appetitive principle, the, of the soul, i. 5, § 6; iii. 4, § 6; 16, § 5; vii. 15, §§ 9, 10.

Arbitrator, the judge should not be made into an, ii. 8, § 13; the middle class the arbitrators of the state, iv. 12, § 5.

Arcadia; the Arcadians not distributed (?) into villages, ii. 2, § 3; their wars with the Lacedaemonians, ib. 9, §§ 3, 11.

Archelaus, king of Macedonia, conspiracy of Crataeus and Demarchus against, v. 10, §§ 17, 20.

Archias, of Thebes, pilloried in the Agora, v. 6, § 15.


Archons, the duties of, vi. 8, § 20; the single Archon at Epidamus, iii. 16, § 1; v. 1, § 12.

Archytas, of Tarentum, invented the children’s rattle, viii. 6, § 2.

Areopagus, the, at Athens (see Council of Areopagus).

Ares, why connected with Aphrodite in mythology, ii. 9, § 8.

Argo, the, refused to take Heracles, iii. 13, § 16.

Argos, use of ostracism at, v. 3, § 3; the political changes after ‘Heledium,’ ib. 3, § 7; the oligarchical revolution after the battle of Mantinea, ib. 4, § 9; the tyranny of Pheidon, ib. 10, § 6; enmity of the Argives to the Lacedaemonians, ii. 9, §§ 3, 11.

Ariobarzanes, conspiracy of Mithridates against, v. 10, § 25.

Aristocracy, characterized by election for merit, ii. 11, §§ 9, 11; iv. 8, § 7; v. 7, § 1; distinguished from the perfect state, as being a government of men who are only good relatively to the constitution, iv. 7, § 2 (but cp. iii. 4, § 5); so called because the best rule or the best interests of the state are consulted, iii. 7, § 3; not a perversion, iv. 8, § 1; analogous to oligarchy (1) because the few rule, v. 7, § 1; (2) because birth and education commonly accompany wealth, iv. 8, § 3;—to royalty as a government of the best, ib. 10, § 2; preferable to royalty, because the good are more than one, iii. 15, § 10; how distinguished from oligarchy and constitutional government, iv. 7; 8; 14, § 10; v. 7, §§ 5–9 (cp. ii. 11, §§ 5–10); usually degenerates into oligarchy, iii. 7, § 5; 15, § 11; iv. 2, § 2; v. 7, § 7; 8, § 7;—causes of revolutions in aristocracies, v. 7; the means of their preservation, ib. 8, §§ 5–7; aristocracy less stable than constitutional government, ib. 7, § 6; liable to danger because the rich have too much power, ib. 12, § 6; might be combined with democracy if the magistrates were unpaid and office open to all, ib. 8, § 17 (cp. vi. 4, § 6);—magistrates peculiar to aristocracy, iv. 15, § 10; vi. 8, §§ 22, 24; aristocratical modes of appointing magistrates and judges, iv. 15, §§ 20, 21; 16, § 8; practice of trying all suits by the same magistrates, aristocratical, ii. 11, § 8; iii. 1, § 10;—the people naturally suited to an aristocracy, iii. 17, §§ 3–7.

Aristogeiton, conspiracy of Harmodius and, v. 10, § 15.

Aristophanes, speech of, in the Symposium, quoted, ii. 4, § 6.

Arrhibiaeus, king of the Lyncestians, war of, against Archelaus, v. 10, § 17.

Art, works of, wherein different from realities, iii. 11, § 4.

Artapanes, conspiracy of, against Xerxes, v. 10, § 21.

Artisan, the employments of the, devoid of moral excellence, i. 13, §§ 13, 14; iii. 5, § 5; vi. 4, § 12; vii. 9, §§ 3, 7; artisans sometimes public slaves, ii. 7, § 22; only admitted to office in democracies, iii. 4, § 12; often acquire wealth, ib. 5, § 6; the question whether they are citizens, ib. 5; necessary to the existence of the state, iv. 4, §§ 9, 21; not a part of the state, vii. 4, § 6; should be debarred from the ‘Freemen’s Agora,’ ib. 12, § 3.

Arts, the, require instruments, both living and lifeless, i. 4; some arts subservient to others, ib. 8, § 2;
Athene, story of, and the flute, viii. 6, § 13.

Athens; payment of the dicasteries commenced by Pericles, ii. 12, § 4 (cp. iv. 6, § 5; vi. 2, § 6); evil effects of the practice, ii. 7, § 19; plan introduced by Diophantus for the regulation of the public slaves, ib. § 23; maintenance at the public expense of the children of citizens who had fallen in battle, ib. 8, § 6; the Solonian constitution, ib. 7, § 6; 12, §§ 1–6; iii. 11, § 8; the Areopagus (see Council of Areopagus); the Court of Phreatto, iv. 10, § 3; effect of the Persian war upon Athens, ii. 12, § 5; v. 4, § 8; viii. 6, § 11; introduction of flute-playing at Athens after the Persian war, viii. 6, § 11; the legislation of Draco, ii. 12, § 13; the expulsion of the tyrants, iii. 2, § 3; v. 12, § 5; the use of ostracism, v. 3, § 3 (cp. iii. 13, § 15); number of sailors in the population, iv. 4, § 21; new citizens introduced by Cleisthenes, ii. 2, § 3; the tribes redivided by him, vi. 4, § 17; treatment of the subject cities by Athens, iii. 13, § 19; democratical governments forced upon the allies by the Athenians, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14; great losses of the nobility in the Peloponnesian War, v. 3, § 7; difference of sentiment between the Athenians and the citizens of the Piraeus, ib. § 15; origin of the war between Athens and Mitylene, ib. 4, § 6; defeat of the Athenian expedition to Sicily, ib. § 9; government of the Four Hundred, ib. § 13; 6, § 6; of the Thirty, ib. 6, § 6; rise of Peisistratus to the tyranny, ib. 5, § 9; 10, § 6; his trial before the Areopagus, ib. 12, § 2; conspiracy of Harmodius and Aristogeiton, ib. 10, § 15; magistracy of the Eleven, vi. 8, § 11.

Athlete, the temperament of an, not suited to the life of the citizen, vii. 16, § 12; viii. 4.

Athletics: see Gymnastic Exercises.
INDEX.

Attalus (the favourite of Philip of Macedon), v. 10, § 16.
Auditors, vi. 8, §§ 17, 21.
Ausones, the, or Opici, in southern Italy, vii. 10, § 5.
Authority, the supreme, varies with each form of government, iii. 6; 7; 13, § 5; iv. 8, § 7; difficulties upon the subject, iii. 10–13; vi. 3; how to be divided among the young and the old, vii. 9, §§ 4–10; 14, § 5.
Autophradates, satrap of Lydia, story of his siege of Atarneus, ii. 7; § 17.
Avarice, encouraged at Sparta, ii. 9, §§ 13, 28, 37; at Carthage, ib. 11, § 11; a frequent cause of crime, ib. 7, § 19; 9, § 28; of revolution, v. 2, § 5; 3, § 1.

B.

Babylonia, ii. 6, § 6; Babylon, iii. 3, § 5; Babylonians, ib. 13, § 19.
Bacchiadæ, the, at Corinth, ii. 12, § 8.
Barbarians, the, do not distinguish the female and the slave, i. 2, § 4; generally under kingly rule, ib. § 6 (cp. iii. 14, § 6); regarded by the Hellenes as natural slaves, i. 6, § 6; their nobility not recognised by the Hellenes, ib. § 7; prevalence of barter among them, ib. 8, § 5.
Barter: see Exchange.
Basilidæ, the, an oligarchy at Erythrae, v. 6, § 5.
Benevolence, identified by some with justice, i. 6, § 4.
Bequest, freedom of, at Sparta, ii. 9, § 14; should be forbidden by law, v. 8, § 20.
Birth, the Gods who preside over, vii. 16, § 14.
Birth, good: see Nobility.
Birth, illegitimate, not a disqualification for citizenship in extreme democracies, iii. 5, § 7; vi. 4, § 16.
Blest, the Islands of, the, vii. 15, § 4.
Body, the, ruled according to nature by the soul, i. 5, §§ 4–7; the body of the freeman not always distinguished by nature from that of the slave, ib. § 10; the beauty of the body more obvious than that of the soul, ib. § 11; the interest of, identical with that of the soul, ib. 6, § 10; the goods of, for the sake of the soul, vii. 1, §§ 8, 9; prior to the soul, ib. 15, § 10; must not be educated at the same time as the mind, viii. 3, § 13; 4, § 9.
Body, habit of, to be required in the citizen, vii. 16, § 12; viii. 3, § 13.
Boys, love of, prevalent among warlike races, ii. 9, § 8; encouraged in Crete, ib. 10, § 9.
Bribery, common at Sparta, ii. 9, §§ 19, 26; 10, § 12.
Byzantium, number of fishermen at, iv. 4, § 21; quarrel between old and new colonists there, v. 3, § 12.

C.

Camicus, death of Minos at, ii. 10, § 4.
Cannibal tribes in Pontus, viii. 4, § 3.
Carthage, the constitution of, analogous to those of Lacedaemon and Crete, ii. 11, §§ 1, 5; an aristocracy with oligarchical and democratic features, ib. §§ 5–10; iv. 7, § 4; v. 12, § 14; never had a revolution, ii. 11, §§ 2, 15; v. 12, § 14; never under a tyranny, ii. 11, § 2 (but cp. v. 12, § 12); the kings partly chosen for ability, ii. 11, §§ 4, 9; influence of wealth, ib. §§ 9–13; plurality of offices, ib. § 13; the magistrates judges in criminal cases, ib. § 7; iii. 1, §§ 10, 11; honours paid to military merit, vii. 2, § 10; the conspiracy of Hannibal, v. 7, § 4; custom of sending out the poorer citizens to the colonies, ii. 11, § 15; vi. 5, § 9; treaties between the Carthaginians and the Tyrrhenians, iii 9, § 6.
Catana, received laws from Charondas, ii. 12, § 6.
Catapults, invention of, vii. 11, § 9.
Cavalry, importance of, in the an-
INDEX.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 1; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicenius, a Roman consul, iii. 10, § 12.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.

Cicero, on the life of his father, i. 10, § 12; on the learning of the Ciceronian school, i. 11, § 10; on the death of his father, i. 12, § 11.
INDEX.

§§ 4–7; II, § 14; iii, 4, §§ 10–16; § 1; § 6; §§ 9–11; § 12; 16, §§ 2, 3; 17, §§ 4; vi, 2, § 5; vii, 9, §§ 4–8; 14, §§ 1–8; must have leisure, ii, § 2; 11, §§ 10, 12; vii, 9, §§ 4, 7; 12, § 7; belongs to the state, viii, 1, § 4;—necessity of defining the word, iii, 1, § 2 foll.; children and old men, in what sense citizens, ib, § 5; 5, § 2; residence and legal rights, inadequate definitions, ib, 1, §§ 4, 5; not enough that the parents were citizens, ib, 2, §§ 1–3; the citizen must share in the administration of the state, ib, 1, §§ 5–12; 2, §§ 3–5; 5; 13, § 12; differs under each form of government, ib, 1, § 9; 5, § 5; 13, § 12; iv, 7, § 2; the question about citizens admitted after a revolution, iii, 2, §§ 3–5;—the virtue of the good citizen: is it identical with that of the good man? ib, 4, 5, § 10; 18; vii, 14, § 8; the virtue of the citizen in the perfect state, iii, 4, § 5; 13, § 12;—not all citizens who are necessary to the state, ib, 5, § 2; vii, 9, § 10; the artisans not to be citizens, iii, 5; vii, 9, § 3; nor the sailors, vii, 6, §§ 7, 8; is the life of the citizen the best? ib, 2, 3; the character necessary in the citizens, ib, 7; their habit of body, ib, 16, § 12; viii, 3, § 13; 4.

Citizenship, rights of, conferred on strangers in early times at Sparta, ii, 9, § 17; lost at Sparta, by failure to contribute to the common meals, ib, § 32; 10, § 7; given to persons of illegitimate birth in extreme democracies, iii, 5, § 7; vi, 4, § 16; exclusion from, sometimes concealed, iii, 5, § 9; easily pretended in a large state, vii, 4, § 14.

City, the: see State.

City Wardens, vi, 8, §§ 5, 10, 21; vii, 12, § 7.

Clazomenae, quarrels at, between the people of the island and the Chytrians, v, 3, § 15.

Cleander, tyrant of Gela, v, 12, § 13.

Cleisthenes, tyrant of Sicyon, v, 12, §§ 1, 12.

—, the Athenian, new citizens created by, at Athens, iii, 2, § 3; his redivision of the tribes, vi, 4, § 18.

Cleomenes (king of Sparta), defeated the Argives at 'Hebdome,' v, 3, § 7.

Cleopatra (the widow of Perdiccas), v, 10, § 17.

Cleotimus, leader of a revolution at Amphipolis, v, 6, § 8.

Clubs; at Carthage, ii, 11, § 3; at Abydos, v, 6, §§ 6, 13; hated by tyrants, ib, 11, § 5.

Cnidus, democratical revolution at, v, 6, §§ 4, 16.

Codrus, king of Athens, v, 10, § 8.

Cold, children should be inured to, vii, 17, §§ 2, 3.

Colonies, of Carthage, ii, 11, § 15; vi, § 9; oligarchies formed in colonies by the first settlers, iv, § 4, § 5; dissensions in, a cause of revolutions, v, 3, §§ 11–14.

Colophon, ancient wealth of, iv, § 5; quarrel between the Colophonians and the Notians, v, 3, § 15.

Combination; superiority of the many, combined to the individual, iii, 11; iv, 4, §§ 26, 27.

Command, the right to, given by previous obedience, iii, 4, §§ 10, 14; vii, 14, § 6.

Commerce, divisions of, i, 11, § 3; its advantages and disadvantages, vii, 6;—commercial treaties, iii, 9, § 6.

Common meals, hostility of the tyrant to, v, 11, § 5; first established in Italy, vii, 10, §§ 1–8; how they should be arranged, ib, §§ 10–12; the young not allowed to share in them, ib, 17, § 11;—of the magistrates, vi, 2, § 7; vii, 12, § 1; of the priests, vii, 12, § 6;—(at Carthage), ii, 11, § 3;—(in Crete), ib, 5, § 15; the original of the Spartan, ib, 10, § 5; maintained at the public cost, ib, §§ 7–10;—(at Sparta), make property to some degree common, ib, 5, § 15; badly regulated, ib, 9,
INDEX.

§§ 31, 32; 10, § 7; anciently called "andria," ib. 10, § 5.

Community of women and children, the, proposed by Plato, ii. 1, § 3; arguments against, ii. 3; 4;—of property, ib. 5; vii. 10, § 9.

Compensation, the principle of, in the state, ii. 2, §§ 4-7; iv. 3, § 5.

Compound, the: see Whole.

Conditions, the, not the same as parts of a state, vii. 8.

Confederacy, difference between a, and a state, ii. 2, § 3; iii. 9, §§ 6-8.

Confiscation, a favourite practice of the demagogues, v. 5, §§ 1-5; vi. 5, §§ 3-6.

Conquest unnecessary to the happiness of states, vii. 2, § 7; 3, § 10; 14, §§ 16-22 (cp. ii. 9, § 34).

Constitution, regard must be had to the, in education, i. 13, § 15; v. 9, §§ 11-15; viii. 1; the best constitution supposed by some to be a combination of all existing forms, ii. 6, § 17 (cp. iv. 1, § 6; 7, § 4; 9, § 7); the permanence of a constitution only secured by the consent of all classes, ii. 9, §§ 22; iv. 9, § 10; 12, § 6; v. 8, § 5; 9, §§ 5-10; vi. 6, § 2; 7, § 4; older constitutions more simple than later, ii. 10, § 1; contentment with a constitution not always a proof of its excellence, ib. 10, § 12 (but cp. c. 11, §§ 2, 15); in each constitution the citizen different, iii. 1, § 9; 5, § 5; 13, § 12; iv. 7, § 2; relation of the constitution and the state, iii. 1, § 1; 3, § 9; 6, § 1; 7, § 2; iv. 1, §§ 10; 3, § 5; definition of the word, iii. 1, § 1; 6, § 1; iv. 1, § 10; 3, § 5; the constitution the life of the state, iv. 11, § 3; the people naturally suited to each constitution, iii. 17; the constitution sometimes nominally unchanged after a revolution, iv. 5, §§ 3, 4 (cp. v. 1, § 8); the encroachments of the rich often more dangerous to the constitution than those of the poor, iv. 12, § 6; life according to the constitution no slavery, v. 9, § 15; vii. 3, §§ 1-3.

Contemplation, the life of, opposed to that of action, vii. 2; 14.

Contracts, suits respecting, tried at Sparta by the Ephors, iii. 1, § 10; often disavowed after a revolution, ib. 3, § 2.

Cookery, the art of, i. 7, § 3.

Corinth, iii. 9, § 9; tyranny of Timophanes, v. 6, § 12; tyranny of the Cypselids, ib. 10, § 6; 11, § 9; its duration, ib. 12, §§ 3, 4; family of the Bacchidae, ii. 12, § 8.

Corn Measurers; name of certain magistrates, iv. 15, § 3.

Cos, overthrow of the democracy at, v. 5, § 2.

Cosmi, the (in Crete), analogous to the Ephors, ii. 10, § 6; a worse institution, ib. § 10; have the command in war, ib. § 6; sometimes forced by the nobles to resign or abdicate, ib. §§ 13, 14.

Cotys, king of the Odrysians in Thrace, murdered by Parrhon and Heracleides, v. 10, § 18.

Council of Areopagus, the, an oligarchical element in the Athenian constitution, ii. 12, § 2; its power curtailed by Pericles and Ephialtes, ib. § 4; acquired credit during the Persian War, v. 4, § 8; appearance of Peisistratus before, ib. 12, § 2.

Council of Elders, the, (at Carthage), analogous to the Spartan, ii. 11, § 3; their powers, ib. § 5; (in Crete), analogous to the Spartan, ib. 10, § 6; criticized, ib. §§ 11, 12; (at Elis), v. 6, § 11; (at Sparta), its defects, ii. 9, §§ 24-27; the mode of election childish, ib. § 27 (cp. v. 6, § 11); decides in cases of homicide, iii. 1, § 10 (cp. ii. 9, § 25; iv. 9, § 9).

Council, the supreme, called in oligarchies 'the Probuli,' iv. 14, § 14; 15, § 11; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; in democracies the 'Boule,' iv. 15, § 11; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24 (cp. v. 1, § 11).

Councillors and warriors, the two highest classes in the state, iv. 4, §§ 10-17; vii. 4, §§ 4-7; 8, § 7; 9, §§ 4-10.
INDEX.


Courage, different in the man and the woman, i. 13, §§ 9–12; iii. 4, §§ 16, 17; wanting in the Spartan women, ii. 9, § 9; found in the masses, iii. 7, § 4; emboldened by power, v. 10, § 25; not inconsistent with a proper use of fortifications, vii. 11, §§ 8–11; always associated with gentleness, ib. 7, §§ 5–9; viii. 4, § 2 (see Valour).

Courts, the extravagance of, causes discontent in the people, v. 11, § 19.

Cowardice of the Spartan women, ii. 9, § 9.

Crataeus, one of the assassins of Archelaus, v. 10, § 17.

Crete, favourable position of, ii. 10, §§ 3, 12, 16; visit of Lycurgus to, ib. § 2;—the Cretean constitution the original of the Lacedaemonian, ib. §§ 1–3; analogous to the Carthaginian, ib. 11, § 1; the attention of the legislator directed solely to war, vii. 2, § 9;—the common tables introduced into Crete by Minos, ib. 10, §§ 2, 6; called by the Cretans, Ἀδηπα, ii. 10, § 5; object of the institution, ii. 5, § 15; better managed in Crete than at Lacedaemon, ib. 9, §§ 30–33; 10, §§ 7–9;—frequency of sedition in Crete, ib. 10, §§ 14, 15;—slaves in Crete forbidden gymnastic exercises and the use of arms, ib. 5, § 19; the Perioeci in Crete well managed, ib. 9, § 3; 10, §§ 15, 16; governed by the laws of Minos, ib. 10, § 3; analogy of the Cretan Perioeci with the Helots, ib. § 5;—existence of caste in Crete, vii. 10, § 1.

Crime, the causes of, ii. 5, § 12; 7, §§ 10–14, 18; 9, § 28.

Cumae, in Italy, ancient law of murder there, ii. 8, § 20.

Custom, power of, ii. 8, § 24; iv. 5, § 3; vii. 13, §§ 11–13; a sort of justice, i. 6, § 5.

Cycle, the, of change, in Plato’s Republic, v. 12, §§ 7–18.

Cyclopes, the, Homer’s account of, i. 2, § 7.


Cypselids, the, offerings of, v. 11, § 9; duration of their tyranny, ib. 12, §§ 3, 4.

Cypselus of Corinth, origin of his tyranny, v. 10, § 6; its duration, ib. 12, § 3.

Cyrene, oligarchical insurrection at, vi. 4, § 17; establishment of the democracy, ib. § 18.

Cyprus, king of Persia, the liberator of his people, v. 10, § 8; attacked his master Astyages, ib. § 24.

D.

Daedalus, the statues of, i. 4, § 3.

Dancing, sometimes ranked with music as an amusement, viii. 5, § 3.

Daphnaeus, of Syracuse, overthrown by Dionysius, v. 5, § 10.


Debts, should they be paid after a revolution? iii. 3, § 2.

Decamnichus, the instigator of the conspiracy against Archelaus, v. 10, § 20.

Deliberation, the right to share in, essential to the citizen, iii. 1, §§ 6–12; 2, § 5; 13, § 12 (cp. vii. 8, § 7).

Deliberative element, the, in the state, iv. 14.

Deliberative faculty, the, present to some degree in the woman and child, but not in the slave, i. 13, § 7.

Delphi, the seditions at, v. 4, § 5; the Delphian knife, i. 2, § 3.

Demagogues, the authors and flatterers of the extreme democracy, ii. 12, §§ 4–6; iv. 4, §§ 25–31; v. 9, § 10; 11, §§ 11, 12; vi. 4, §§ 15–17; confiscate the property of the rich, v. 5, § 5; vi. 5, § 3; often bring about revolutions, v. 3, § 4; 5, §§ 1–5; in ancient times became tyrants, ib. 5, §§ 6–10; 10, §§ 4, 6,—in oligarchies, ib. 6, § 5.

Demiprii, magistrates at Larissa, iii. 2, § 2.

Democracy, the government of the many in their own interests, iii. 7,
INDEX.

§ 5; 8; § 2; iv. 11, § 17; akin to tyranny, iv. 4, § 27; v. 10, §§ 11, 30, 35; ii. 12; the only possible government in large states, iii. 15, § 12; iv. 6, § 5; 13, § 10 (cp. vi. 5, § 5); the perversion of constitutional government, iii. 7, § 5; iv. 2, §§ 1, 2; Plato wrong in calling democracy the worst of good constitutions, but the best of bad ones, iv. 2, § 3; insufficiency of the common definitions of democracy, iii. 8; iv. 4, §§ 1–6; more forms of democracy than one, iv. 1, § 8; 4, §§ 20–22; i1, § 20; 12, § 3; 13, § 12; vi. 1, § 2; the forms enumerated, iv. 4, §§ 22–31; 6, §§ 1–7; 12, § 3; 14, §§ 1–7; vi. 4; growth of the last and worst form, ii. 12, § 4; iii. 4, § 12; 6, §§ 9–11; iv. 6, § 5; v. 5, §§ 6–11; 6, §§ 6–8; 9, § 10; vi. 2, §§ 5–9; 4, §§ 15–20 (cp. v. 10, § 12; 11, § 11)—democracy more stable than oligarchy, iv. 11, § 14; v. 1, § 15; 7, § 6 (cp. v. 3, § 8); causes of revolution in democracies: anarchy, v. 3, § 3; vi. 4, § 17; demagogic practices, v. 3, §§ 4–5; 9, § 10; vi. 5, § 5; disproportionate increase, v. 3, §§ 6–8; dissatisfaction of the notables, ib. § 14 (cp. ii. 7, §§ 10, 18); long tenure or greatness of office, v. 5, § 8; 8, § 7; the means of their preservation, iv. 12, § 4; 13, §§ 5–8; 14, § 12; v. 8; vi. 4, § 17; 5; democracy (especially the extreme form) apt to pass into tyranny, iv. 11, § 11; v. 5, §§ 6–10; 8, § 7; 10, § 30; Plato censured for supposing that the change is necessarily to tyranny, v. 12, § 10;—Athens the champion of democracy in Hellas, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14; the democratic principle represented at Sparta by the Ephorality, ii. 6, § 17; 9, § 21; 10, § 10; iv. 9, § 9;—characteristics of democracy: liberty and equality for all, iii. 8, § 7; iv. 4, §§ 22, 23; 8, § 7; v. 1, § 3; 8, § 6; 9, §§ 14, 15; vi. 2, §§ 1–4; 4, § 20; the use of the lot, ii. 11, § 7; 12, § 3; iv. 9, § 4; 15, § 19; vi. 2, §§ 5, 8; employment of a large number of magistrates, ii. 11, § 14; short tenure of office, v. 8, § 6; vi. 2, §§ 5, 8; payment of the citizens, ii. 7, § 19; 12, § 4; iv. 6, § 5; 9, § 2; vi. 2, §§ 6, 7; 5, § 5; carelessness in the admission of artisans and persons of illegitimate birth to citizenship, iii. 4, § 12; 5, §§ 7, 8; vi. 4, § 16; license allowed to women and children, v. 11, § 11; vi. 4, § 20;—ostracism originally a democratic institution, iii. 13, § 15; v. 3, § 3; democratical tricks to keep the power in the hands of the people, iv. 13, § 5; suggestions for the improvement of democracy, ib. 14, § 12; vi. 5, §§ 5–11;—the magistrates peculiar to democracy, iv. 15, § 11; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; democratical modes of appointing magistrates and judges, iv. 15, § 19; 16, § 8;—character and powers of the assembly, ib. 14, §§ 1–7;—the best material of a democracy, ib. 6, § 2; vi. 4, § 1; the position suitable to a democracy, vii. 11, § 5; democracy always supported by the sailors and light armed, vi. 7, §§ 1, 2.

Derdas (? King of Elymaea), conspiracy of, against Amyntas the Little, v. 10, § 16.

Desire, insatiableness of human, i. 9, § 16; ii. 5, § 12; 7, §§ 8, 19; found even in very young children, vii. 15, § 10.

Detectives, female, employed at Syracuse, v. 11, § 7.

Devices, political, of oligarchies and democracies, iv. 13, §§ 1–8; their inutility, v. 8, § 4.

Diagoras, an Eretrian, v. 6, § 14.

Dicaea, 'the Pharsalian mare,' ii. 3, § 9.

Dicasteries, the Athenian, ii. 12, § 4.

Dictators: see ESymnetes.

Diocles, story of, and Philolaus, ii. 12, §§ 8–11.

Dion, conspiracy of, against Dionysius, v. 10, §§ 23, 28, 31, 32.

Dionysius the Elder, story of, and the Sicilian monopolist, i. 11, §§ 11, 12; his request for guards,
III. 15, § 16; his rise to the tyranny, v. 5, § 10; 10, § 6; aided by Hipparinus, ib. 6, § 8; his marriage alliance with Locris, ib. 7, § 10; his excessive taxation at Syracuse, ib. 11, § 10.

Dionysius the Younger, conspiracy of Dion against, v. 10, §§ 23, 28, 31, 32.

Diophonthus (?Archon, B.C. 395), his plan for the management of the public slaves, ii. 7, § 23.

Directors of Education, vii. 17, §§ 5, 7; of Gymnastics, vi. 8, §§ 22.

Discipline, good effects of, ii. 9, § 11.

Dithyrambic poetry, suited to the Phrygian harmony, viii. 7, § 10.

Dockyards, often at a convenient distance from the city, vii. 6, § 5.

Domination over others, not the true object of statesmanship, vii. 2; 3; 14, §§ 12-22.

Dorian Harmony, the: see Harmony.

Dowries made by Phales a means to the equalization of property, ii. 7, § 3; large dowries customary at Sparta, ib. 9, § 15.


Draco, notorious for the severity of his legislation, ii. 12, § 13.

Drawing, a branch of education, viii. 3, §§ 1, 12.

Drinking, Plato's law about (Laws II, 671 D), ii. 12, § 12.

Drunkenness, law of Pittacus respecting, ii. 12, § 13.

Dynasty, or Family Oligarchy, see Oligarchy.

E.

Earth-born men, the fable of the, ii. 8, § 21.

Eating, moderation in, encouraged by the Cretan lawgiver, ii. 10, § 9.

Eavesdroppers, employment of, by the tyrant Hiero, v. 11, § 7.

Echphantides (the ancient comic poet), viii. 6, § 12.

Education, may be directed to a wrong end, ii. 7, §§ 8, 9; must have regard to the constitution, i. 13, § 15; v. 9, § 11; viii. 1; the great means of uniting the state, ii. 5, §§ 18-21; special, for the ruler, iii. 4, § 8 (cp. vii. 14, § 6); confers a claim to preeminence in the state, iii. 13, § 1 (cp. c. 9, §§ 14, 15; 12, §§ 8, 9; iv. 8, §§ 2-5); excellence of the Spartan education, iv. 9, § 7; viii. 1, § 4 (but cp. viii. 4, §§ 1-7); bad education of the rich, iv. 11, § 6; v. 9, § 13; hostility of the tyrrant to education, v. 11, § 5; education necessary to supplement habit, vii. 13, § 13; 17, § 15; the special business of the legislator, viii. 1, § 1; wrong notions of education prevalent in Hellas, vii. 14, § 15; viii. 1, § 3; 4, § 6; the periods of education, vii. 17; viii. 4, §§ 7-9; necessity of a common system of education, viii. 1, § 3 (cp. ii. 7, § 8; and iv. 9, § 7); should education have an ethical or a practical aim? vii. 2; 3; 5; should it include music? ib. 3; 5; 6; what instruments and harmonies are to be used? ib. 6, §§ 8-16; 7; education not to be directed to a single end, ib. 4, § 2; the proper place of gymnastics in education, ib. 3, § 13; 4; the education of mind and body not to be carried on together, ib. 4, § 9; writers upon musical education, ib. 5, § 23; 7, §§ 3, 8, 11, 14; musical education a kind of rattle to older children, ib. 6, § 2; the three principles of education, ib. 7, § 15: — Directors of Education, vii. 17, §§ 5, 7.

Egypt; physicians allowed to alter their treatment after the fourth day, iii. 15, § 4; the pyramids, v. 11, § 9; the division into Castes, vii. 10, §§ 1-6; the Egyptians the most ancient of all people, ib. § 8.

Elder and younger, relation of, i. 2, § 6; 12; the elder to command, the younger to obey, v. 10, §§ 4-9; 14, §§ 4, 5.

Eleven, the, at Athens, vi. 8, § 11.

Elis, narrowness of the oligarchical government at, v. 6, § 11.

Elymaeas, v. 10, § 17.

Empire, unnecessary to the hap-
piness of states, vii. 2; 3; 14, §§ 13-22.
End, the, the completed nature of each thing, i. 2, § 8; has no limit in the arts, ib. 8, § 14; 9, § 13; may agree or disagree with the means, vii. 13, § 2; contains an element of pleasure, viii. 5, § 13.
Enemies, will not walk on the same path, iv. 11, § 7; may be united by a common danger, v. 5, § 1.
Entertainments (σατυρίαι): see Public Services.
Enthusiasm, created by music, viii. 5, § 16; peculiarly the effect of the Phrygian harmony, ib. § 22; 6, §§ 9-11; has a great power over certain persons, ib. 7, § 4.
Ephialtes, curtailed the privileges of the Areopagus, ii. 12, § 4.
Ephors, the, a democratic element at Sparta, ii. 6, § 17; 9, §§ 20-22; 10, § 10; iv. 9, § 9; their corruption and license, ii. 9, §§ 19-24; 10, § 12; greatness of their power, ib. 9, § 20; v. 11, § 2; the mode of their election childish, ii. 9, § 23; have the right of calling the magistrates to account, ib. § 26; try suits respecting contracts, iii. 1, § 10 (cp. ii. 9, § 23; 11, § 7); established by Theopompos as a check on the royal power, v. 11, §§ 1-3; correspond to the Cosmi in Crete, ii. 10, §§ 6, 10, 12; to the magistracy of 104 at Carthage, ib. 11, § 3.
Epidamnus, management of public slaves at, ii. 7, § 23; governed by a single archon, iii. 16, § 1; v. 1, § 11; democratic revolution there, v. 1, §§ 10, 11; its origin, ib. 4, § 7.
Epimenides, of Crete, used the name δομέαρω for the members of a family, i. 2, § 5.
Equality, how related to justice, iii. 9; 12; 13, §§ 11, 12; v. 1, § 2; 9, § 14; vii. 3, § 5; 14, §§ 1-6; (the true kind) no longer desired in Hellenic states, iv. 11, §§ 4-10, 19; v. 9, §§ 5-10; equality and liberty the aim of democracy, iii. 8, § 7; iv. 4, § 22; 8, § 7; v. 1, § 3; 8; § 6; 9, § 14; vi. 2, §§ 1-4, 9; the desire of equality a cause of sedition, v. 1, §§ 3-8; 3, §§ 2, 3; § 2; when attained creates contentment, ib. 7, § 6; equality either numerical or proportional, iii. 8; iv. 12, §§ 1-4; v. 1, §§ 12-16; vi. 3; states must not be based on one kind alone, v. 1, § 14; denied to the weak by the strong, vi. 3, § 6.
Equality of property, proposed by Phælas, ii. 7; 12, § 12.
Equals in rank form a kind of democracy, v. 8, § 6; legislation only for those who are equal, iii. 13, § 14.
Eretria, owed its importance in early times to its cavalry force, iv. 3, § 3; overthrow of the oligarchy of the ‘knight’s, v. 6, § 14.
Erythrae, overthrow of the Basi- lidae at, v. 6, § 5.
Ethics, the Nicomachean, quoted, N. E. i. 7, § 15; Pol. vii. 13, § 5; " iii. 4, §§ 4, 5; " ib. 13, § 7; v. 3, § 4; " ii. 9, § 3; ib. 5, § 6; " ii. 2, § 4; ib. 10, § 4; " ii. 12, § 1; " vii. 13, § 2; " iv. 11, § 3; x. 6, § 2; " vii. 13, § 5.
Ethiopia, offices given in, according to stature, iv. 4, § 4.
Eubulus (tyrant of Atarneus), story of, ii. 7, § 17.
Eunuch, the, (Thrasydaeus) assassinated Evagoras of Cyprus, v. 10, § 16.
Euripides, caused Decammichus to be scourged, v. 10, § 20; quoted, Iphig. in Aulid. 1400, i. 2, § 4; ib. (7) 1017 (or Fragm. Inc. lxxxi), v. 9, § 15; Bacchae, 380, viii. 5, § 2; Αἰολικ. fr. iii, iii. 4, § 8; Fragm. Inc. lxxxi, vii. 7, § 8.
Europe, the inhabitants of (northern), have more bravery than intelligence, vii. 7, § 2.
Euryphon, the father of Hippodamus, ii. 8, § 1.
Eurytion, a revolutionary leader at Heraclea, v. 6, § 15.
Euthycrates, a Phocian, v. 4, § 7.
Evagoras, tyrant of Salamis in
INDEX.

Cyprus, murdered by the eunuch Nicocles, v. 10, § 16.

Evil; the sense of good and evil characteristic of man, i. 2, § 12.

Evils, must be guarded against at their beginning, v. 4, §§ 1-3; 8, §§ 2, 3, 9.

Example, power of, ii. 11, § 11.

Exchange, (1) according to nature, (barter of necessaries), i. 9, §§ 2-7; 10, §§ 3, 4; (2) contrary to nature (retail trade), i. 9, §§ 1-4, 9-12; 10, § 4; 11, § 3.

Executive element, the, in the state, iv. 14, § 2; 15; vi. 8.

Exoteric discourses, referred to, iii. 6, § 5; vii. 1, § 2.

Experience, value of, ii. 5, § 16; vii. 10, § 8.

Expiations for crime, could not be made if a community of women were established, ii. 4, § 1.

Exposure of deformed children, justifiable, vii. 16, § 15.

Extravagance, the, of courts, causes discontent in the common people, v. 11, § 19.

Extremes, danger of, iv. 11, §§ 16-19; 12, §§ 4-6; vi. 5, §§ 1-4.

F

Faction, frequency of, in Crete, ii. 10, §§ 14-16; evil effects of, in Hellas, iv. 11, §§ 16-18; a cause of revolution in oligarchies, v. 6, § 9; less common in democracies, iv. 11, § 14; v. 1, §§ 15, 16; 7, § 6.

Families, should the number of equal the number of lots? ii. 6, § 13.

Families, large, encouraged at Sparta, ii. 9, § 18.

Family, the, the village a colony of, i. 2, § 6 (cp. c. 9, § 5); composed of three relations which are sanctioned by nature, ib. 2, § 2 foll.; 3, §§ 1-3; 12; 13, § 15; governed by the elder or parent who is their king, ib. 2, § 6; 7, § 1; 12, § 3; different kinds of rule within the family, ib. 12; the family a part of the state, ib. 13, § 15; ii. 9, § 5; the state more self-sufficient than the family, ii. 2, § 8.

Family oligarchy, see Oligarchy.

Family quarrels, a cause of revolutions, v. 4, §§ 5-7; 6, § 14; 10, § 3.

Father and child, relation of, i. 2, §§ 1-5; 3, §§ 1-3; 12.

Fear, will make the bitterest enemies unite, v. 5, § 1; helps to keep the state together, ib. 8, § 8.

Female, the, by nature different from the slave except among barbarians, i. 2, §§ 3, 4; subject by nature to the male, ib. 5, § 7; 12, § 1; 13, § 7; tendency of the female to produce offspring like the parents, ii. 3, § 9:—the union of male and female formed in obedience to a natural instinct, i. 2, § 2; the relation of male and female part of the household, ib. 3, § 2; 12, § 1. [See Woman.]

Ferrymen, number of, at Tenedos, iv. 4, § 21.

Finance, importance of, to the statesman, i. 11, § 13; the finances of Sparta badly managed, ii. 9, § 36; suggestions for the regulation of state finances, v. 8, §§ 15-19; vi. 5.

Fishermen, number of, at Tarentum and Byzantium, iv. 4, § 21.

Flatterers, influence of, with the tyrant, iv. 4, § 28; v. 11, § 12.

Flute, the, came into fashion at Athens and Lacedaemon after the Persian War, viii. 6, §§ 10-12; story of Athene and the flute, ib. §§ 13, 14; not a fit instrument for freemen, ib. §§ 10; 7, § 9.

Flute-maker, the ruler compared to the,—the subject to the flute-player, iii. 4, § 18.

Flute-players, used as an illustration of the claims to superiority in the state, iii. 12, §§ 4, 5.

Food, supplied by nature to all, i. 8, §§ 4-12; 10, § 3; one of the conditions of a state, vii. 8, § 7.

Force, generally associated with virtue, i. 6, § 3.

Forests, Inspectors of, vi. 8, § 6; vii. 12, § 8.
INDEX.

Fortifications, necessary to the state, vii. 11, §§ 8-12.
Fortune, the legislator ought not to trust to, ii. 11, §§ 15, 16; the controller of events, vii. 12, § 9; 13, § 9.
Fountains, officers in charge of, vi. 8, § 5.
Four Hundred, government of the, at Athens, v. 4, § 13; 6, § 6.
Free, the, and the noble akin, iii. 13, § 2 (cp. i. 6, §§ 6, 7).
Freedom, supposed by Hellenes not to exist among barbarians, i. 2, § 4; 6, § 6; is a reason why men claim authority in a state, iii. 9, § 14; 12, § 8; 13, §§ 2-5. [See Liberty.]
Freeman, the, in his relation to the slave, i. 2, §§ 2-4; 3, § 4; 5; 6; not always outwardly distinguished by nature from him, ib. 5, § 10; rule over freemen more noble than rule over slaves, ib. § 2; vii. 3, § 2; 14, § 19; will never willingly submit to the tyrant, iv. 10. § 4; v. 11, § 12; has a natural right to rule, ii. 2, § 6; iii. 16, §§ 2, 3; must not be ashamed to obey his lawful superiors, v. 9, §§ 11-14; vii. 3, § 2; 14, §§ 1-5 (cp. iv. 11, § 6); may have a certain knowledge of the arts, viii. 2, §§ 5, 6; may be allowed to share in the pleasures of music, ib. 5, § 7.
Friends, have all things in common, ii. 5, § 6 (cp. vii. 10, § 9).
Friendship, weakened by communism, ii. 4, §§ 5-9; the motive of society, ib. § 6; iii. 9, § 13; iv. 11, § 7 (cp. vi. 5, §§ 7-11); implies equality, iii. 16, § 13; friendship among the citizens hated by the tyrant, v. 11, § 5; friendship at Sparta, ii. 5, § 7.

G.
Gela, tyranny of Cleander at, v. 12, § 13.
Gelo, tyrant of Syracuse, v. 3, § 5; duration of his tyranny, ib. 12, §§ 5, 6; expulsion of his family, ib. 10, § 31; 12, § 6.
General, the, learns command by obedience, iii. 4, § 14; generals often became demagogues in ancient times, v. 5, §§ 6-10; have often attacked their masters, ib. 10, § 24; wise generals combine light-armed troops with cavalry and heavy infantry, vi. 7, § 2.
Generalship, a rare quality, v. 9, § 3.
Gentleness, associated with courage, vii. 7, §§ 5-9; viii. 4, § 2.
Gerusia: see Council of Elders.
God, happy by reason of his own nature, vii. 1, § 10; 3, § 10; alone able to hold together the universe, ib. 4, § 8.
Gods, the, supposed to be under a king because mankind originally were, i. 2, § 7; 12, § 3; their statues more beautiful than ordinary human forms, ib. 5, § 10.
Gods, the, who preside over birth, vii. 16, § 14; at whose festivals ribaldry is permitted, ib. 17, § 10.
Good, absolute and relative, vii. 13, §§ 5-8.
Good, the, the aim of the state, i. 1, § 1; ii. 2, § 7.
Good and evil, the sense of, characteristic of man, i. 2, § 12; made the test of freedom and slavery, ib. 6, § 8.
Goods, the three kinds of, vii. 1, §§ 2-5; external goods not to be preferred to virtue, ii. 9, § 35; vii. 1, §§ 5-9; 15, § 6; not the cause of happiness, vii. 1, § 10; 13, § 8.
Gordius, father of Psammetichus, tyrant of Corinth, v. 12, § 3.
Gorgias of Leontini, his definition of virtue, i. 13, § 10; of the citizen, iii. 2, § 2.
Government, the Constitutional, called in ancient times democracy, iv. 13, § 11; its rarity, ib. 7, § 1 (cp. c. 11, § 16); one of the true forms of government, iii. 7, § 3 (cp. iv. 8, § 1); how distinguished from aristocracy, oligarchy, and democracy, iv. 7; 8; 14, §§ 8-10; v. 7, §§ 5-7; vi. 1, § 3 (cp. ii. 11, §§ 5-9); composed of the heavy-armed soldiers, ii. 6, § 16; iii. 7, § 4;
INDEX.

17, § 4; iv. 13, § 10; the people to whom it is adapted, iii. 17, § 4; suited to a large country population, vi. 4, § 14; characterised by the alternation of rulers and ruled, i. 1, § 2; ii. 12, § 2; ii. 2, §§ 4–7; iii. 14; iii. 4, §§ 10, 14; vi. 9, § 9; vi. 2; iv. 17, § 4; vii. 14, §§ 1–5 (cp. i. 7, § 1); by the combination of the vote and the lot in the election of the magistrates, iv. 15, §§ 19–22; gives the affirmative power to the many, ib. 14, § 16; the mode in which it arises, ib. 9; causes of revolution to which it is subject, v. 3, §§ 6–8; 6, §§ 16–18; 7, §§ 5–9; means of its preservation, ib. 8, §§ 10, 11; more stable than aristocracy, ib. 7, § 6.

Government, forms of, how to be criticised, ii. 9, § 1; iv. 1; the legislator must know all, iv. 1, §§ 5–8; differ according to the character of the supreme authority, iii. 6, § 1; 13, § 5; iv. 8, §§ 2–4; 14, § 1; are based on partial justice only, iii. 9, §§ 1–4; 15; 17, § 6; v. 1, § 2; vi. 3, §§ 1–4; are all perversions of the perfect state, iv. 8, § 1; may be divided into true forms or perversions, iii. 1, §§ 8–10; 6, § 11; 7; 18; iv. 2, §§ 1–3; 8, § 1; their successive changes in ancient times, iii. 15, §§ 11–13; iv. 13, §§ 9–12; Plato’s theory of change wrong, v. 12, §§ 5–18; influence of increased population upon forms of government, iii. 15, §§ 11–13; iv. 6, § 5; vi. 5, § 5; the worst forms the most precarious, iv. 6, § 4; common error that forms of government can be reduced to two—oligarchy and democracy, iv. 3; §§ 6–8; sense in which this is true, ib. 4, § 19; v. 1, § 14 (cp. vi. 1, § 6); the people adapted to each form of government, iii. 17; the magistrates suited to each, iv. 15, §§ 11–13; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; the judicial arrangements, iii. 11, § 7; iii. 1, §§ 10, 11; iv. 16, § 8; the military force, vi. 7, §§ 1, 2.

Government, writers on, often unpractical, iv. 1, § 5; have extolled the Lacedaemonian constitution, ib. § 6; vii. 14, §§ 16, 17.

Guardians of Children, iv. 15, §§ 9, 13; vi. 8, § 22; of the Citizens (at Larissa), v. 6; § 6; of the Law, iv. 14, § 14; vi. 8, §§ 17, 22, 24; of Shines, vi. 8, § 19; of Women, iv. 15, §§ 9, 13; vi. 8, § 22.

Guardians, the, in Plato’s Republic: see Plato.

Guards, story of Dionysius’ request for, iii. 15, § 16; the guards of the tyrant mercenaries, of the king citizens, ib. 14, § 7; v. 10, § 10.

Gymnastic, like other arts, has undergone improvement, ii. 8, § 18; includes various kinds of training, iv. 1, §§ 1, 2.

Gymnastic exercises, forbidden to slaves in Crete, ii. 5, § 19; discouraged in oligarchies among the poor, iv. 13, § 4; one of the recognised branches of education, viii. 3, § 1; carried to excess at Lacedaemon, ib. 4, §§ 1–7; suggestions for their arrangement, vii. 12, §§ 1–6; should be of a lighter kind for children, viii. 4, § 7:—Directors of, vi. 8, § 22.

H.

Habit, bodily, the, to be required in the citizen, vii. 16, § 12; viii. 4.

Habit, the strength of law derived from, ii. 8, § 24; one element of virtue, vii. 13, §§ 11–13; 15, § 7; must go before reason in education, viii. 3, § 13.


Happiness, independent of external goods, vii. 1, § 10; 13, § 8; the happiness of the whole dependent on the happiness of the parts, i. 6, § 10; ii. 5, § 37; vii. 9, § 7; happiness proportioned to virtue, vii. 1, § 10; 8,
INDEX.

§ 5; 9, §§ 3, 7; 13, § 5; the perfect happiness of the divine nature, ib. 1, § 10; 3, § 10; the happiness of men and states the same, ib. 2; 3; the happiness of states not dependent on empire over others, ib. 2, §§ 14–18; or on size, ib. 4, §§ 4–11; happiness implies virtuous activity, ib. 3, §§ 1–3; is the worthy employment of leisure, viii. 3, §§ 3–6; 5, §§ 9–15.

Harbours, should be separated from the city, vii. 6, §§ 1–6.

Harmodius, conspiracy of, and Aristogeiton, v. 10, § 15.

Harmonies, the, sometimes divided into two principal forms, the Dorian and the Phrygian, iv. 3, § 7; their different effects and the use to be made of them in education, viii. 5, §§ 16–25; 7.

Harmony, the soul said to be, or to possess, viii. 5, § 25.

Harmony in music, i. 5, § 4; iii. 3, § 8.

Harmony, the Dorian, iii. 3, § 8; iv. 3, § 7 produces a moderate and settled temper, viii. 5, § 22; 7, §§ 8–13;—the Lydian; rejected by Plato in the Republic, ib. 7, §§ 9, 14; suitable to children, ib. § 15;—the Mixo-Lydian; has a sad and grave effect, ib. 5, § 22;—the Phrygian, iii. 3, § 8; iv. 3, § 7; inspires enthusiasm, viii. 5, § 22; 7, § 9; should not have been retained by Plato, ib. 7, §§ 9–13.

Harp, the Lydian, one of the instruments to be rejected in musical education, viii. 6, § 13.

Hatred, more reasonable than anger, v. 10, § 34; may arise out of love, vii. 7, §§ 7–9.

Health, an important consideration in choosing the site of a city, vii. 11, §§ 1–5.

Hearing, the, has more connection with morals than with any other sense, viii. 5, §§ 15–25.

Hebdome, slaughter of the Argives at, v. 3, § 7.

Heiress, number of, at Sparta, ii. 9, § 15; legislation of Andro- damas respecting, ib. 12, § 14; disputes concerning, a cause of revolutions, v. 4, §§ 6, 7.

Heliaea, court of, at Epidamnus, v. 1, § 11.

Hellanocrates of Larissa, one of the conspirators against Archelaus, v. 10, § 18.

Hellas, influence of the climate of, on the national character, vii. 7, §§ 1–4; natural superiority of Hellenes to Barbarians, i. 2, § 4; 6, § 6; iii. 14, § 6; vii. 7, § 3; differences of the various Hellenic tribes, vii. 7, § 4;—barbarous laws among the ancient Hellenes, ii. 8, § 20; the Hellenes formerly under royal rule, i. 2, § 6; iii. 15, §§ 11–11; iv. 13, § 10; changes in government caused by the increase of population, iii. 15, §§ 11–13; iv. 6, § 5; 13, §§ 10–12; vi. 5, § 5; rise of the heavy-armed in importance, iv. 13, § 10; effects of the Persian war upon Hellas, ii. 12, § 5; v. 4, § 8; viii. 6, § 11; growth of the Athenian empire in Hellas, iii. 13, § 19; division of Hellas between Athens and Lacedaemon, iv. 11, § 18; vi. 7, § 14;—smallness of the middle class in later Hellas, iv. 11, §§ 7, 16–19; lack of great men, v. 10, § 37; effects of the cultivation of rhetoric, ib. 5, § 7; wrong notions of education, iv. 11, § 6; vii. 14, § 15; viii. 1, § 3; 2, § 2;—rage for flute playing in Hellas after the Persian War, viii. 6, § 12.

Helots, difficulty of the Lacedaemonians in managing, ii. 5, § 22; 9, § 2; 10, § 16; their analogy with the Cretan Perioeci, ib. 10, §§ 4, 16.

Heniochi, the, in Pontus, said to be cannibals, viii. 4, § 3.

Hephaestus, the tripod of, i. 4, § 3.

Heptagon, the, a musical instrument, viii. 6, § 13.

Heraclea, in Pontus, had a large number of seamen, vii. 6, § 8; democratical revolution there, v. 6, § 7; (? the same place) over-
INDEX.

throw of the democracy, ib. 5, § 3; introduction of a more popular government, ib. 6, §§ 2, 3: (in Trachis), revolution at, arising out of the punishment of Eurytion for adultery, ib. 6, § 15.

Heraclides of Ænos, one of the assassins of Cotys, v. 10, § 18.

Heracleitus, saying of, about anger, v. 11, § 31.

Heracleodorus, a revolutionary leader at Oreus, v. 3, § 9.

Heracles, story of, and the Argonauts, iii. 13, § 16.


Hestiaea (the later Oreus) in Eubea, democratic revolutions at, v. 3, § 9; 4, § 4.

Hier, tyrant of Syracuse, v. 10, § 31; his employment of detectives and eavesdroppers, ib. 11, § 7; duration of his tyranny, ib. 12, §§ 5, 6.

Hipparimus, aided Dionysius to gain the tyranny of Syracuse, v. 6, § 8.

Hippocrates, 'the great physician,' vii. 4, § 5.

Hippodamus, of Miletus, the planner of cities, ii. 8, § 1; vii. 11, § 6; his character and appearance, ii. 8, § 1; peculiarities of his constitution, §§ 2–7; objections to it, ib. §§ 8–17.

Homer, calls Zeus 'the father of Gods and men,' i. 12, § 2:— quoted,

II. ii. 204; iv. 4, § 27;
ib. 372; iii. 16, § 10;
iv. 391–393; ib. 14, § 5;
ix. 63; i. 2, § 9;
ib. 319; ii. 7, § 10;
ib. 648; iii. 5, § 9;
x. 224; ib. 16, § 10;
xviii. 376; i. 4, § 3;
Odysseus. ix. 7; vii. 3, § 9;
ib. 14; i. 2, § 7;
xv. 385; vii. 3, § 9:
—a passage is also cited, viii. 3, § 8, which does not occur in our Homer.

Homicide, one of Hippodamus' three divisions of laws, ii. 8, § 4; laws of Androdamas respecting, ib. 12, § 14; suits concerning, tried at Sparta by the Elders, i. 1, § 10; (cp. ii. 9, § 25).

Honour, inequality in, a cause of revolutions, ii. 7, §§ 10–13, 18–20; v. 2, § 2; 3, §§ 2, 14; 4, §§ 8–10; 12, § 18; the remedy for this, v. 8, § 12; 11, §§ 26, 27; the citizen must share in the honours of the state, iii. 5, § 9; (cp. c. 10, §§ 4, 5); honour less desired by men than wealth, iv. 13, § 8; v. 8, § 16; vi. 4, § 3; (cp. vi 7, § 7).

Honours, conferred in many states for military exploits, vii. 2, §§ 10–12.

Horses, keeping of, a mark of great wealth in old times, iv. 3, §§ 3; 13, § 10; vi. 7, § 1.

Household management, the art of, distinguished from the rule of a master, i. 1, § 2; 3, § 4; 7, § 1; iii. 6, §§ 6, 7; divided into three parts, i. 3, §§ 1–3; 12, § 1; how related to money-making, ib. 3, § 3; 8, §§ 1, 2; 9, §§ 1, 12–18; 10, §§ 1–4; includes the natural art of acquisition, ib. 4, § 1; 8, §§ 13–15; 9, §§ 1–8; 10, §§ 1–4; 11, §§ 1–3; has a limit, ib. 9, §§ 14, 18; is more concerned with virtue than with wealth, ib. 13, § 1; the parts of men and women in, different, iii. 4, § 17; exists for the benefit of those under it, ib. 6, §§ 6, 7.

Hunting, a species of war, i. 7, § 5; 8, § 12; vii. 2, § 15; 14, § 21; the different branches of, i. 8, § 7.

Husband and wife, relation of. [See 'Male' and 'Female.']

Husbandmen, are sometimes hunters, i. 8, § 8: would be better suited for Plato's communism than the guardians, ii. 4, § 4; make the best form of democracy, iv. 6, § 2; 12, § 3; vi. 4, §§ 1, 8–10; furnish good sailors, vii. 6, § 8; should not be citizens, ib. 9, §§ 8; 10, §§ 13, 14; nor admitted to office, ib. 9, § 9; should be excluded from the 'Freemen's Agora,' ib. 12, § 3.
INDEX.

Husbandry, a part of the natural art of money-making, i. 8, § 3; 10, § 3; 11, § 2.

I. 
Iapygia, vii. 10, § 5.—Iapygians, the, defeat of the Tarentines by, v. 3, § 7.
Iberians, the, a warlike nation, vii. 2, § 11.
Imitations of our emotions, given by music, viii. 5, §§ 15-24.
Inactivity, not to be preferred to action, vii. 3, § 3 (cp. c. 14, §§ 10-14).
Indefinite office, he who shares in, a citizen, vii. 1, §§ 7, 11.
India, the kings of, have a natural superiority to their subjects, vii. 14, § 3.
Inferior, the, exists for the sake of the superior, vii. 14, § 10.
Inheritance, sale of an, forbidden, ii. 7, § 6; (at Sparta), ib. 9, § 14 (cp. v. 8, § 20); the division of an, may be a cause of revolution, v. 4, § 4.
Injustice, the sense of, peculiar to man, i. 2, § 12.
Inspectors of Forests, vi. 8, § 6; vii. 12, § 8.
Instincts, the, of animals, i. 5, § 9; vii. 13, § 12.
Instruments, best when made for one use, i. 2, § 3; may be either living or lifeless, ib. 4, § 2; are used either in production or in action, ib. §§ 4-6; are never unlimited in the arts, ib. 8, §§ 14, 15; the slave a living instrument, ib. 4, §§ 2, 6.
Instruments, musical, the, allowed to the freeman, viii. 6, §§ 9-14.
Intemmarriage, rights of, iii. 9, §§ 10, 13.
Invention, every, has been made many times over, ii. 5, § 16; vii. 10, § 7.
Invention of tactics, iv. 13, § 10; — of siege machines, vii. 11, § 9.
Ionia, origin of tyrannies in, v. 10, § 6.
Ionian Gulf, the, vii. 10, § 5.
Iphidamas, a party leader at Abydos, v. 6, § 13.

Istros, revolution at, v. 6, § 2.
Italus, king of Oenotria, gave his name to Italy, vii. 10, § 3; introduced common tables, ib. § 4.
Italy, antiquity of common tables in, vi. 10, §§ 2-6; took its name from Italus, ib. § 3.

J.
Jason, tyrant of Pherae, saying ascribed to, iii. 4, § 9.
Judges, not allowed to communicate with each other, ii. 8, § 13; should not hold office for life, ib. 9, § 25; necessary, even in the first beginnings of the state, iv. 4, §§ 13, 14; the various modes of appointing them, ib. 16, §§ 5-7; provision for an equal division of opinion among judges, vi. 3, § 6; those who inflict penalties to be different from those who see to their execution, ib. 8, §§ 8-11.
Judicial decisions, necessary to the existence of society, vi. 8, § 9; vii. 13, § 6; — element, the, in the state, iv. 14, §§ 1-2; — functions, the citizen must share in, iii. 1, §§ 6-12.
Justice, the sense of, peculiar to man, i. 2, § 12; the bond of men in states, ib. § 16; iii. 12, § 9; 13, § 3; (cp. iv. 4, § 13); sometimes defined as benevolence, i. 6, § 4; different in men and women, ib. 13, §§ 3, 9; in the ruler and the subject, ib. §§ 2-8; iii. 4, §§ 16-18; consists in equality, iii. 9, § 1; 12, § 1; 13, § 12; vii. 14, § 3; cannot be the destruction of the state, iii. 10, § 2; cannot be united with the love of conquest, vii. 2, §§ 7-18; selfishness of the ordinary notions of justice, vi. 3, § 6; vii. 2, § 14; all claims to rule based upon partial and relative justice only, iii. 9, §§ 1-6, 15; v. 1, §§ 2-6; 9, § 1; vi. 2, §§ 2; 3, §§ 1-4.

K.
Kettles, made at Larissa, iii. 2, § 2.
King, the, not the same with the statesman, i. 1, § 2; ought to be chosen for merit (as at Carthage),
INDEX. 279

ii. 9, § 29; 11, § 4; receives a special education, iii. 4, § 8; may be justified in putting down his rivals, ib. 13, § 22; v. 11, § 27; is the champion of the better classes against the people, v. 10, § 3; often supreme in religious matters, iii. 14, § 13; vi. 8, § 20; should he have a military force? iii. 15, §§ 14–16; is guarded by the citizens, ib. 14, § 7; v. 10, § 10.

King, the true, or natural superior of the citizens, iii. 13, §§ 13, 24, 25; 17, §§ 5–8; vii. 3, § 6; unknown in later Hellas, v. 10, § 37. [See Royalty.]

King, a, the Gods, why supposed to be under, i. 2, § 7; 12, § 3.

Kings, the, of Crete (in ancient times), ii. 10, § 6; of Carthage, ib. 11, §§ 3–6, 9, 10; of Macedonia, v. 10, § 8; of the Molossians, ib.; 11, § 2; of Persia, vii. 5, § 5; of Sparta [see Lacedaemon]: — Kings, the, ancient, sometimes became tyrants, v. 10, § 5.

Knights, the, at Athens, ii. 12, § 6; at Eretria, v. 6, § 14.

L

Lacedaemon; frequent wars of the Lacedaemonians with their neighbours, ii. 9, §§ 3, 11; their difficulties with the Helots, ib. §§ 2–4 (cp. ib. § 22); the Messenian Wars, ib. 9, § 11; v. 7, §§ 3, 4; the conspiracy of the Partheniae, v. 7, § 2; —of Pausanias, ib. 1, § 10; 7, § 4; vii. 14, § 20; —of Cinadon, v. 7, § 3; —of Lysander, ib. 1, § 10; 7, § 2; the putting down of the tyrants, ib. 10, § 30; the subject cities governed in the oligarchical interest by the Lacedaemonians, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14: — friendship among the Lacedaemonians, ii. 5, § 7; agriculture forbidden to them, ib. § 17; simplicity of life among them, ib. 6, § 17; iv. 9, §§ 6–9; excellence of the Lacedaemonian education, iv. 9, § 7; viii. 1, § 4 (but cp. vii. 2, § 9; viii. 4, § 1); music not comprised in it, viii. 5, § 7; Lacedaemonian training only advantageous while other nations did not train, ib. 4, §§ 4–7; rage for flute-playing at Lacedaemon after the Persian War, ib. 6, § 12; error of the Lacedaemonians in thinking the objects of their desire preferable to the virtue which gained them, ii. 9, § 35 (cp. vii. 1, § 5); spirit of distrust in the Lacedaemonian government, ii. 9, § 30; bad management of the revenue, ib. § 36; frequency of corruption, ib. §§ 19, 26; 10, § 12; accumulation of property, ib. 9, §§ 13, 14; v. 7, §§ 3, 10 (cp. v. 12, § 15); number of heiresses, ii. 9, § 15; decrease in population, ib. §§ 14–19; encouragement of large families, ib. § 14; expulsion of strangers, ib. 10, § 15; strangers admitted to citizenship in ancient times, ib. 9, § 17; license of the Lacedaemonian women, ib. §§ 5–13: — the Lacedaemonian constitution a combination of various forms of government, ib. 6, §§ 10, 17; 9, § 22; — an aristocracy with an element of democracy, iv. 7, § 4 (cp. ii. 9, § 20; 10, § 10); — regarded by some as a democracy, by others as an oligarchy, iv. 9, §§ 6–10; — often considered the next best to the ideal state, ii. 6, § 16; iv. 1, § 6; — its resemblance to the Cretan, ii. 10, §§ 4–7; — to the Carthaginian, ib. 11, §§ 3–5; the arrangement of the law-courts at Lacedaemon, an aristocratical feature, ib. § 7; iii. 1, §§ 10, 11; the attention of the legislator directed solely to war, ii. 9, §§ 34, 35; vii. 2, § 9; 14, §§ 16–22; viii. 4, §§ 1–7: — imperfections of the Lacedaemonian monarchy, ii. 9, §§ 29, 30; 11, §§ 3, 4; limited powers of the kings, iii. 14, § 3; v. 11, § 2; their office an hereditary generalship, ii. 9, § 33; iii. 14, §§ 4, 5, 14; 15, §§ 1, 2; 16, § 1; origin of their power, v. 10, § 8; reason of its long continuance, ib. 11, § 2: — the Gerusia criticised, ii. 9, §§ 25–29; 11, §§ 4, 11; v. 6, § 11: — faults and
merits of the Ephoralty, ii. 6, § 17; 9, §§ 19-24, 26; 10, §§ 10, 12; 11, § 3; established by Theopompus as a check on the royal power, v. 11, §§ 2, 3; — the office of admiral, ii. 9, § 33; — the common tables, why instituted, ib. 5, § 15; 6, § 17; 9, §§ 31, 32; iv. 9, § 8; not so well managed as in Crete, ii. 9, § 32; 10, §§ 7, 8.

Lametic Gulf, the, vii. 10, § 3.

Land, the, should be divided into two portions, vii. 10, § 11 (but cp. ii. 6, § 15): Hippodamius' division of, ii. 8, §§ 3, 12; — should it be cultivated by the owners? ib. 5, §§ 3, 18, 19; 8, §§ 8-13; vii. 9, §§ 1-4; 10, §§ 13, 14; — at Sparta, had fallen into the hands of a few, ii. 9, §§ 14, 15.

Landowners, small, to be encouraged, vi. 4, §§ 8-10.

Larissa, the, kite-makers of, iii. 2, § 2; democratical revolution at, v. 6, § 6; overthrow of the Aeolidae, ib. § 13.

Law, at Aphytis, regulating the census of properties, vi. 4, § 10; at Athens, providing for the maintenance of children of citizens slain in battle, ii. 8, § 6; at Cumae, about murder, ib. § 21; in Egypt, about physicians, iii. 15, § 4; at Epidamnus, about the employment of public slaves, ii. 7, § 23; at Thebes, excluding from the government persons who had not given up business for ten years, iii. 5, § 7; vi. 7, § 4; — forbidding inhabitants on the border from voting in a debate on war or peace, vii. 10, § 12; — Laws, to limit the acquisition or sale of land, ii. 7, §§ 6, 7; 9, § 14; against moneymaking in oligarchies, v. 12, § 14; to promote peasant proprietorship, vi. 4, §§ 8-10.

Law, the, of Oxylus, vi. 4, § 9: — Laws, the, of Androdamas, ii. 12, § 14; of Charondas, ib. §§ 6-8, 11; iv. 13, § 2; of Draco, ii. 12, § 13; of Lycurgus (see Sparta); of Minos, ii. 10, § 3; vii. 10, § 1; of Phales, ii. 7, 12, § 12; of Philolaus, ib. 12, §§ 8-10; of Pit-
INDEX. 281

the rich, v. 3, § 4; 5, §§ 1-5; vi.
5, § 3.

Law courts, the possible varieties of,
iv. 16.

Lawgiver, Onomacritus said to have
been the first, ii. 12, § 7.

Legislator, the, must have regard to
the country and the people, ii.
6, §§ 7; 7, §§ 14-17; must pay
attention to the foreign relations
of the state, ib.; ib.; vii. 2, § 18;
must secure leisure for his citi-
zens, ii. 9, § 2; 11, §§ 10, 12; vii.
9, §§ 3, 7 (cp. vii. 12, § 7); must
not trust to accidents, ii. 11, §§ 15,
16; vii. 13, §§ 8-10; must regard
the common good, iii. 13, § 12;
ought not to want such a prin-
ципle as ostracism, ib. § 23; v. 3,
§ 3; must know all possible forms
of states, iv. 1, § 8; and the causes
of their preservation and destruc-
tion, v. 9, § 9; vi. 5, § 2; must
be able to reform as well as to
create a state, iv. 1, § 7; should
favour the middle class, ib. 12,
§ 4; must consider the deliberative,
executive, and judicial ele-
ments in relation to the constitu-
tion of each state, ib. 14, § 1;
must be modest in his designs,
ii. 6, § 7; vii. 4, § 2; should not
make conquest the aim of his
state, vii. 2; must give all the
citizens a share in the administra-
tion, ib. 14, § 4; must have a
care of education, ib. §§ 1, 8; 15,
§ 8; viii. 1, §§ 1, 2; must not
neglect physical education, vii.
16, § 1.

Legislators, the best, belonged to
the middle class, iv. 11, § 15.

Leisure, the, of the citizens, the first
object of the legislator, ii. 9, § 2;
11, §§ 10-12; vii. 9, §§ 3, 4; 7 (cp.
vii. 12, § 7); the citizen must know
the right uses of, vii. 14, §§ 13-22;
vi. 3; § 5; § 4; needed for virtue,
vi. 9, § 4.

Leontini, tyranny of Panaetius at,
v. 10, § 6; 12, § 13.

Lesbos, subjection of, by the Athe-
nians, iii. 13, § 19.

Leucas, changes introduced at, by
the abolition of a law against
the sale of a man's patrimony, ii.
7, § 7.

Liberality, destroyed by commu-
nism, ii. 5, § 10; must be con-
joined with temperance, ib. 6,
§ 9; vii. 5, § 1.

Liberty, supposed to be the charac-
teristic feature of democracy, iii.
§ 7; iv. 4, §§ 22, 23; 8, § 7; v. 1, § 3;
8, § 6; 9, §§ 14, 15; vi. 2, §§ 1-4,
9; 4, § 20; must not be confused
with licence, v. 9, § 15; — should be
held out as a reward to slaves,
vii. 10, § 14.

Libya, Upper, community of wives
in, ii. 3, § 9.

Licence of the Spartan women, ii. 9,
§§ 5-13; of slaves and women in
democracies and tyrannies, v. 11,
§ 11; vi. 4, § 20; must not be
confused with liberty, v. 9, § 15.

Life, action, not production, i. 4,
§ 5; pleasure of, iii. 6, § 5; is the
speculative or the practical, bet-
ter? vii. 2, §§ 5-18; 3: — divided
by the poets into periods of seven
years, ib. 16, § 17; 17, § 15; —
simplicity of, at Sparta, ii. 6, § 17;
iv. 9, § 7.

Life, the, both of the citizens and
the magistrates should be in har-
mony with the constitution, ii. 9,
§ 24; v. 8, § 13.

Life, the good, not desired by man-
kind in general, i. 9, § 16; the
object of the existence of the
state, ib. 2, § 8; iii. 9, §§ 6-14;
iv. 4, § 12; vii. 1, § 1; 2, § 17;
4, § 11; 8, § 4; is it the same for
states and for individuals? vii. 1;
2; 3, § 10.

Limit, a, necessary in the arts, i. 8,
§ 14; 9, § 13; iii. 13, § 21; vii. 4,
§ 10; in population, ii. 6, §§ 6, 10;
7, § 5; 9, § 19; vii. 4, §§ 4-11; 5,
§ 1; 16, § 15; in the state, ii.
6, § 7; iii. 3, §§ 4-7; vii. 4; 5, § 1;
in wealth, i. 8, § 14; 9, § 14; ii. 6,
§§ 8, 9; 7, §§ 4-8; vii. 5, § 1.

Live stock, the knowledge of, a part
of the natural art of money-
making, i. 11, §§ 1, 2.

Lives, the different, of men and
animals, i. 8, §§ 4-12; vi. 4, §§ 1,
11.
INDEX.

Locri (in Italy), received laws from Zaleucus, ii. 12, § 6; ruined by a marriage connexion with Dionysius, v. 7, § 10: Locrians, law among the, forbidding the sale of property, ii. 7, § 6.

Lot, use of the, characteristic of democracy, ii. 11, § 7; 12, § 3; iv. 9, § 4; 15, § 19; vi. 2, §§ 5, 8; modes in which it may be used in elections of magistrates, iv. 15, §§ 16-22.

Love, would be weakened by communism, ii. 4, § 7; influence of, among warlike races, ib. 9, §§ 8, 9; may easily change into hatred, vii. 7, § 8.

Love of boys, prevalent among warlike races, ii. 9, §§ 8, 9; encouraged in Crete, ib. 10, § 9.

Love quarrels, a cause of revolutions, v. 4, § 1.

Luxury of the Spartan women, ii. 9, § 6; of the rich, in oligarchies, iv. 11, § 6; 15, § 13; v. 9, § 13.

Lycophron, the Sophist, his conception of law, iii. 9, § 8.

Lyctus, in Crete, a colony of the Lacedaemonians, ii. 10, § 2.

Lycurgus, the author of the Lacedaemonian constitution, ii. 10, § 2; 12, § 1; was the guardian of Charilaus, ib. 10, § 2; his visit to Crete, ib.; his failure to bring the women under his laws, ib. 9, §§ 11, 12; said by some to have been a disciple of Thales, ib. 12, § 7; belonged to the middle class, iv. 11, § 15.

Lydian Harmony, the: see Harmony.

Lydian Harp, the, viii. 6, § 13.

Lydian War, the, iv. 4, § 5.

Lygdamis, tyrant of Naxos, v. 6, § 1.

Lysander, the conspiracy of, v. 1, § 10; 7, § 2.

M.

Macedonia, origin of the royal power in, v. 10, § 8; ancient law in, that he who had not slain an enemy should wear a halter, vii. 2, § 10.

Magistrates, power of calling to account [see Account, power of calling magistrates to]; division of law-suits among the Lacedaemonians and Carthaginian magistrates, ii. 11, § 7; iii. 1, § 10 (cp. iv. 14, § 3); election of magistrates by merit characteristic of aristocracy, ii. 11, §§ 7, 9; iv. 15, § 10;— for wealth, of oligarchy, ii. 6, § 19; 11, § 9; iv. 15, § 10; choice by lot, of democracy, ii. 6, § 19; 12, § 3; iv. 15, § 19; vi. 2, §§ 5, 9; must be taken from those who carry arms, ii. 8, § 9; iv. 13, § 9; are very numerous in democracies, ii. 11, § 14; ought to be only the guardians and interpreters of the law, iii. 11, § 19; 16, §§ 5, 10-12; iv. 4, § 31; character and powers of the magistrates in aristocracies, iv. 14, § 10; 15, § 13; vi. 8, § 22; in constitutional governments, iv. 14, §§ 10, 16; in democracies, ib. §§ 1-7; 15, §§ 10-14; vi. 2, §§ 5-9; 8, §§ 17, 24; in oligarchies, iv. 14, §§ 8, 9; 15, §§ 10-14; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; the magistrates peculiar to each constitution, iv. 15, §§ 11-13; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; definition of the term 'magistrate,' iv. 15, §§ 1-4; should be hold more than one office? ii. 11, § 13; iv. 15, §§ 5-10; vi. 8, § 2; the various modes of appointment, iv. 15, §§ 14-21; vi. 5, § 11; popular election dangerous, v. 5, § 10; 5, § 6; the magistrates should not be allowed to make money, ib. 3, § 1; 8, § 15; vi. 7, § 5 (cp. v. 12, § 14); undue power acquired by them a cause of revolution, v. 3, § 3; 4, §§ 8-11; great authority of the ancient magistrates, iii. 16, § 1; v. 1, § 10; § 8; 10, § 5; vi. 2, § 8; the magistrates may prevent revolutions by prudence, v. 8, § 8; manner in which they should act in oligarchies, v. 5, §§ 10, 11; 7, §§ 4-7; enumeration of the different magistrates required by states, vi. 8; the magistrates must know the characters of their fellow-citizens, vii. 4, § 13; must suppress obscenity, ib. 17, § 10:—Magistrates, certain, required by law to take
their meals together, vi. 2, § 7; vii. 12, § 2.

Accountants, vi. 8, § 16; Archon (the single, at Epidamnus and Opus), iii. 16, § 7; v. 1, § 10; Archons, vi. 8, § 20; Auditors, ib. § 16; Controllers, ib.; Corn Measurers, iv. 15, § 3; Councillors, ib. § 11; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; (at Thurii), v. 7, § 13; Demiurges (at Larissa), iii. 2, § 2; Directors of Education, vii. 17, §§ 5, 7; of Gymnastics, vi. 8, § 22; Eleven, the (at Athens), ib. § 11; Fountains, officers in charge of, ib. § 5; Guardians of Children, iv. 15, §§ 9, 13; vi. 8, § 22; of the Citizens (at Larissa), v. 6, § 6; of the Laws, iv. 14, § 14; vi. 8, § 22; of Shrines, vi. 8, § 19; of Women. iv. 15, §§ 9, 13; vi. 8, § 22; Harbour Masters, vi. 8, §§ 5, 21; Inspectors of Forests, vi. 8, § 6; vii. 12, § 8; Magistracy of the 104 at Carthage, ii. 11, § 3; of the 5, ib. § 7; of the 100, ib.; Prytanis (at Mileitus), v. 5, § 8; Prytanes, vi. 8, § 20; Phylarchs (at Epidamnus), v. 1, § 10; Presidents, vi. 8, § 7; vii. 12, § 7; Receivers, vi. 8, § 7; Recorders, ib.; vii. 12, § 7; Revenue Officers, iv. 15, § 22; vi. 8, § 16; Sacred Recorders, vi. 8, § 7; vii. 12, § 7; Scrutineers, vi. 8, § 16; Superintendents of Dionysiac Contests, ib. § 22; of Gymnastic Exercises, ib.; of Sacrifices, ib. § 19; of the Walls, ib. § 5; Treasurers, ib. § 7; — of Sacred Revenues, ib. § 19; Wardens of the Agora, iv. 15, §§ 9, 22; vi. 8, §§ 10, 21; vii. 12, § 7; of the City, vi. 8, §§ 5, 10, 21; vii. 12, § 7; of the Country, vi. 8, §§ 6, 10, 21; vii. 12, § 8.

Magnesia (on the Maeander), possessed a great force of cavalry in ancient times, iv. 3, § 3.

Magnesians, The, constantly at war with the Thessalians, ii. 9, § 3.

Majority, the (in a state), difficulties about the power which should be possessed by, iii. 10; 11; 13, §§ 4-7; vi. 3.

Male and female, reason for the union of, i. 2, § 2; the relation of, part of the household, ib. 3, § 2; 12, § 1.

Male, the, intended by nature to rule over the female, i. 5, § 7; 12, § 1.

Maliens, the, chose their magistrates from those actually on military service, iv. 13, § 9.

Man a political animal, i. 2, §§ 9, 14, 15; iii. 6, § 3; has a natural wish for posterity, i. 2, § 2; alone has the faculty of speech, ib. § 10; — the sense of good and evil, ib. § 12; — the power of reason, vii. 13, § 12; the worst of animals when not controlled by law and justice, i. 2, §§ 15, 16; must allow reason to direct nature and habit, vii. 13, §§ 11-13; — should give the soul rule over the body, i. 5, §§ 4-7; the plants and animals created for his sake, ib. 8, § 12: — Man, the virtue of the, different from that of the woman, ib. 13, §§ 3-9-11; iii. 4, § 16: — Men are unlimited in their desires, i. 9, §§ 16-18; ii. 7, §§ 8, 19; are wicked by nature, ii. 5, § 12; are more desirous of gain than of honour, iv. 13, § 8; v. 8, § 16; vi. 4, § 3; are satisfied with a moderate amount of virtue, vii. 1, § 5; — Men. the first, were ordinary, foolish people, ii. 8, § 21.

Mantinea, battle of, v. 4, § 9; government by representation at, vi. 4, § 4.

Marines, the, generally freemen in Hellenic cities, vii. 6, § 8.

Marriage, regulations respecting, vii. 16; — the marriage relation. i. 2, § 2; 3, §§ 1-3; 12; iii. 4, § 6.

Marriages, quarrels about, often a cause of revolutions, v. 4, §§ 5-8; 6, § 14.

Massalia, revolution at, v. 6, §§ 2-3; persons of merit sometimes taken into the government, vi. 7, § 4.

Master, the, in relation to the slave, i. 2, §§ 2-5; 3, §§ 1-3; 12, § 1; 13, §§ 7, 12-14; has a common interest with the slave, ib. 6, § 10; iii. 6, § 6; vii. 14, § 6; ought to train the slave in virtue, i. 13,
INDEX.

§ 14;—the science peculiar to, ib. 3, § 4 ; 7, §§ 2-5; 13, § 14;—
the rule of, ib. 3, § 4 ; iii. 4, § 11 ;
vii. 14, § 6; wrongly supposed
[by Plato] to be different from
political rule, i. 1, § 2; 3, § 4.
Mean, importance of the, in states,
iv. 11; v. 9, § 6; in education,
viii. 6, § 7; 7, § 15.
Means, the, of the arts, not un-
limited, i. 8, §§ 14, 15; 9, § 13.
Mechanic, the: see Artisan.
Medes, the, iii. 13, § 19; the Median
kings not taught music, viii. 5,
§ 5.
Medicine, the art of, has no limit of
its end, i. 9, § 13; aims at health,
not money-making, ib. § 17; its
relation to household manage-
mint, ib. 10, §§ 3, 4; has, like
other arts, undergone improve-
mint, ii. 8, § 18. (See Physician.)
Megacles, the leader of the attack
on the Penthalidae at Mitylene,
v. 10, § 19.
Megara, iii. 9, § 9; the government
of, once confined to persons who
had fought against the demo-
cracy, iv. 15, § 15; the oligarchical
revolution, v. 3, § 5; 5, § 4; rise
of Theagenes to the tyranny, ib.
5, § 9.
Mercenaries, admitted to citizen-
ship at Syracuse (B.C. 466), v. 3,
§ 13; the tyrant’s guard com-
posed of, iii. 14, § 7; v. 10,
§ 10.
Merchant seamen, number of, at
Aegina and Chios, iv. 4, § 21; at
Heraclea in Pontus, vii. 6, § 8.
Messenians, the, enmity of, to the
Lacedaemonians, ii. 9, §§ 3, 11.
Messenian War, the (Second), v. 7,
§ 3.
Method, the, of investigation [ὁ
ὑφηγημένος ῥήτορος] pursued by
Aristotle, i. 1, § 3; 8, § 1.
Metics: see Aliens.
Midas, the fable of, i. 9, § 11.
Middle class, virtues of, the, iv. 11;
12; the middle class state the
best, ib. 11, §§ 8-15; 12, § 4; v.
8, § 14; 9, § 6; smallness of the
middle class in ancient states, iv.
13, § 11.
Might and right, i. 6, § 3; vi. 3,
§ 6; vii. 2, § 13.
Miletus, the oil presses in, bought
up by Thales, i. 11, § 9; great
powers of the ancient magistrates
at, v. 5, § 8.
Milk, given by nature as the food
of young animals, i. 8, § 10; 10,
§ 3; the best food for children,
vii. 17, § 1.
Minds, the, grows old as well as the
body, ii. 9, § 25; must not be
educated at the same time as the
body, viii. 4, § 9.
Mining, an intermediate species of
money-making, i. 11, §§ 4, 5.
Minos, the Cretan law-giver, ii. 10,
§ 3; his laws retained by the Pe-
rioeci, ib.; introduced the com-
mon tables into Crete, vii. 10,
§§ 2, 6; his death at Camicus, ii.
10, § 4.
Mithridates (? Satrap of Pontus),
conspiracy of, against Ariobar-
zanes, v. 10, § 25.
Mitylene, dictatorship of Pittacus
at, iii. 14, § 10; origin of the
war with Athens, v. 4, §§ 5, 6;
slaughter of the Penthalidae, ib.
10, § 19.
Mixo-Lydeian Harmony, the: see
Harmony.
Mnaseas, a Phocian, v. 4, § 7.
Mnason, a Phocian, v. 4, § 7.
Moderation in eating, encouraged
at the Cretan common tables, ii.
10, § 9; — in politics, necessary
for the salvation of the state, iv. 11,
§§ 16-19; v. 9, § 6; vi. 5, § 2.
Molossians, the, in Epirus, origin
of the royal power among, v. 10,
§ 8; good government of the
Molossian kings, ib. 11, § 2.
Monarchy, arguments for and
against, iii. 15-17.
Monarchy: see King, Royalty, and
Tyranny.
Money, origin of, i. 9, § 8; its con-
ventional nature, ib. § 11; ought
not to be made from money, ib.
10, § 5.
Money-making, the art of, how re-
lated to household management,
i. 3, § 3; 8, §§ 1, 2; 9, §§ 1, 12-
18; 10, §§ 1-4; the natural kind,
INDEX.

ib. 8, §§ 3–15; 9, §§ 1–8; 10, §§ 1–4; 11, §§ 1, 2; the unnatural, ib. 9, § 1 foll.; 10, §§ 4, 5; 11, § 3; the intermediate, ib. 11, § 4; the unnatural pursues its end without limit, ib. 9, §§ 13–15.

Money-making, tales about, i. 11, §§ 7–13.

Monopolies, a common method of gaining wealth, i. 11, §§ 8–13.

Morals, have a connexion with figures and colours, viii. 5, § 21.

Mortar-makers, iii. 2, § 2.

Multitude, the, their claim to the supreme power, iii. 10, § 1; are better collectively than the individual, ib. 11; 13, § 4; 15; should have power only to elect and control the magistrates, ib. 11, § 7.

Murder, expiations for, impossible if women are common, ii. 4, § 1; absurd law about, at Cumae, ib. 8, § 20; cases of, tried at Sparta by the elders, iii. 1, § 10 (cp. ii. 9, § 25).

Musaeus, quoted, viii. 5, § 11.

Music, subject to a ruling principle, i. 5, § 4; better judged of by the many than by the individual, iii. 11, § 3; useful (1) in education, viii. 3; 5; 7, § 3; (2) for the intellectual employment of leisure, ib. 3; 5, §§ 8, 9; 7, § 3; (3) with a view to purification, ib. 7, §§ 3–6; has an effect upon morals, ib. 5, §§ 7, 15–25; 6, §§ 1, 6; 7, §§ 3–7; not taught at Lacedaemon, ib. 5, § 7; naturally pleasant to men, ib. §§ 8, 11, 25; 7, § 6; produces enthusiasm, ib. 5, §§ 16, 22; 7, § 4; allays the passions, ib. 6, § 9; 7, §§ 4–6; a rattle for children of a larger growth, ib. 6, § 2; cannot be judged except by a performer, ib. § 4 (but cp. c. 5, § 7); must not be pursued to the point of professional excellence, ib. 6, §§ 7, 15; includes a higher and a lower kind, ib. § 8; 7, § 6; is composed of melody and rhythm, ib. 5, § 18; 6, § 5; 7, § 1.

Music, writers upon, viii. 5, § 23; 7, §§ 2, 3, 8, 11, 14.

Musical Harmonies: see Harmony.

Musical Instruments, which may be used in education, viii. 6.

Myron, tyrant at Sicyon, v. 12, § 12.

Mytilene, see Mitylene.

N.

Nature, implants in man a desire of posterity, i. 2, § 2; makes a distinction between the ruler and the ruled, ib.; 4, §§ 6; 5; 6, § 8; 12; 13, § 4; — between the female and the slave, ib. 2, § 3; her designs must be sought in things which are uncorrupted, ib. 5, § 5; does nothing in a niggardly fashion, ib. 2, § 3; creates nothing in vain, ib. 10; 8, § 12; ii. 5, § 8; gives to man the social instinct, ib. 2, §§ 10–16; iii. 6, §§ 3–5; not always able to accomplish her intentions, i. 5, § 10; 6, § 8; supplies food for all, ib. 8, §§ 9–12; 10, § 3; has given all freemen a right to rule, ii. 2, § 6; iii. 16, §§ 2, 3; fits the young to obey, the old to command, vii. 9, § 6; permits proper relaxation, viii. 3, § 2; herself suggests the proper harmonies for each age, ib. 7, § 13;—forms one element in virtue, vii. 13, §§ 11–13; 15, § 7; must be supplemented by art and education, ib. 17, § 15; Naval force, the, which should be possessed by the state, vii. 6, §§ 6–9.

Naxos, tyranny of Lygdamis at, v. 6, § 1.

Necessaries, the, of life, the object of the natural art of acquisition, i. 4, § 1; 9, §§ 2–7.

Necessity the mother of invention, vii. 10, § 7.

Nobility, among Barbarians only partially recognized by Hellenes, i. 6, § 7; confers a claim to superiority in the state, iii. 9, § 15; 12, § 9; 13, §§ 2–5; iv. 8, § 3; may be defined (1) as excellence of race, iii. 13, § 3; v. 1, § 7; (2) as ancient wealth and virtue, iv. 8, § 9; confused by mankind with wealth, ib. §§ 4, 8; v. 7, § 1; like virtue, is not often found, v. 1, § 14.
INDEX.

Nobles, quarrels among, a cause of revolutions, v. 1, § 16; 4, § 1; 6, § 5; 8, § 9; form a democracy among themselves, ib. 8, § 6; should be humane to the subject classes, iv. 13, § 8; vi. 5, §§ 5-11. Notium; quarrel between the Notians and the Colophonians, v. 3, § 15.

Number, the, of the citizens must be considered by the legislator, vii. 4, § 4 (cp. ii. 6, § 6). Number, the, of Plato, v. 12, §§ 7-9.

O.

Oath, the, of the ancient kings was the stretching out of the sceptre, iii. 14, § 12.

Oaths, sworn in oligarchies, v. 9, §§ 10, 11.

Obedience, the necessary preliminary to command, iii. 4, §§ 10, 14; vii. 9, § 6; 14, § 6.

Obligations, sometimes disavowed after a revolution, iii. 3, § 2.

Obscenity, must be forbidden among the citizens, vii. 17, §§ 8-10; permitted at the festival of certain Gods, ib. § 10.

Odysseus, viii. 3, § 9.

Œnophyta, battle of, v. 3, § 5.

Œnotrians, the (in Southern Italy), antiquity of common meals among, vii. 10, §§ 3-5.

Office, the 'indefinite,' in which all the citizens share, iii. 1, §§ 6-12; 2, § 5.

Office, lust of mankind for, iii. 6, § 10; oligarchical tricks to keep the poor from, iv. 13, §§ 1-4; justice of the various claims to, iii. 10-13:—Offices, the, of the state, posts of honour, ib. 10, § 4; their distribution, iv. 15; vi. 8; their organization determines the character of each constitution, iv. 1, § 10; 3, § 5; in small states must be combined, in large ones specialized, ii. 11, § 14; iv. 15, §§ 5-7; vi. 8, § 2; in democracies restricted to six months' tenure, v. 8, § 6; (cp. vi. 2, § 5); and rarely held more than once by the same person, iii. 1, § 6; vi. 2, § 5; should be divided into two classes, v. 8, § 21; vi. 5, § 11.

Offices, sale of, and pluralism, at Carthage, ii. 11, §§ 10, 13.

Oligarchy, the government of the few for their private interests, iii. 6, § 2; 8, § 3;—or, more correctly, of the wealthy, ib. 7, § 5; 8, §§ 6, 7; iv. 4, §§ 1-6; 19; 8, § 7; ii. §§ 16-19; v. 1, § 3; vi. 2, § 7; Plato wrong in thinking that an oligarchy can ever be called 'good,' iv. 2, § 3; oligarchy the perversion of aristocracy, iii. 7, § 5; 15, § 12; iv. 2, § 2; how distinguished from it, ii. 11, §§ 5-10; iv. 5, § 1; 7; 8, §§ 2-10; 14, § 10; v. 7, §§ 5-8; popularly supposed, like aristocracy, to be a 'government of the best,' iv. 8, § 4; v. 1, § 14; analogous to tyranny in love of wealth, v. 10, § 11; has more forms than one, iv. 1, § 8; 4, §§ 20-22; 12, § 3; 13, § 12; the forms enumerated, ib. 5, §§ 1-3; 6, §§ 7-11; 14, §§ 8-11; vi. 6; oligarchy less stable than democracy, iv. 11, §§ 14; v. 1, § 15; 7, § 6; the shortest lived of all forms of governments, excepting tyranny, v. 12, § 1; (cp. vi. 6, § 4;) the extreme form apt to pass into tyranny, iv. 11, §§ 11; v. 10, § 5; 12, § 13; the causes of revolutions in oligarchies, v. 3, §§ 14; 6; 12, §§ 15-18; the means of their preservation, ib. 6, § 9; 8, §§ 5-31; 9; vi. 6, § 5; 7;—the Lacedaemonians the champions of oligarchy in Hellas, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14;—the people to whom oligarchy is suited, iv. 2, § 4; 12, § 3;—the military strength of oligarchy derived from cavalry and heavy infantry, ib. 3, § 3; 13, § 10; vi. 7, § 1;—oligarchical modes of appointing magistrates and judges, ii. 6, §§ 19, 20; iv. 14, §§ 7-11; 15, §§ 14-21; 16, § 8; magistracies peculiar to oligarchy, iv. 14, §§ 14; 15, §§ 11; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24;—luxury of the women in oligarchies, iv. 15, § 13; bad education of the children, ib. 11, § 6; v. 9,
INDEX.

§ 13:—the oligarchs sometimes forbidden to engage in trade, v. 12, § 14; their tricks to keep the power in their own hands, iv. 9, § 2; 13, §§ 1-4; 14, § 12; they ought rather to give the people a share in the government, ib. 14, § 14; vi. 5, § 11; 7, § 4; they should not take oaths against the people, v. 9, §§ 10, 11; they should not be allowed to make money by office, ib. 3, § 1; 8, § 15; vi. 7, § 5.

Olympic Games, the, injurious effects of the excessive training for, viii. 4, § 8.

Olympus, melodies of, viii. 5, § 16.

Onomacritus, the Locrian, supposed by some to have been the first legislator, ii. 12, § 7.

Onomarchus, a Phocian, v. 4, § 7.

Opici, the, or Ausones, vii. 10, § 5.

Opinion, true, the virtue of the subject, iii. 4, § 18.

Opus (in Locris), governed by a single magistrate, iii. 16, § 1.

Oratory, cultivation of, in later Hellas, v. 5, § 7.

Order, good, in the state, produced by the law, vii. 4, § 8.

Order, in the succession to office, ii. 11, § 4; regulated by law, iii. 16, § 3.

Oreus: see Hestiaea.

Orthogoras, tyranny of, at Sicyon, v. 12, § 1.

Ostracism, how far justifiable, iii. 13, §§ 13-25; 17, § 7; v. 3, § 3; 8, § 12.

Oviparous animals, i. 8, § 10.

Oxylus, king of Elis, law respecting mortgages attributed to, vi. 4, § 9.

P.

Paches, capture of Mitylene by, v. 4, § 6.

Painters, combine their works from scattered elements, iii. 11, § 4; like other artists, observe a rule of proportion, ib. 13, § 21; those who, like Polygnotus, express moral ideas, to be preferred, viii. 5, § 21.

Paintings, obscene, not to be allowed, vii. 17, § 9.


Parent, the, relation of, to the child, i. 2, § 2; 3, § 2; 12; provides food for the offspring, ib. 8, § 10; 10, § 3.

Parrhon, of Aenos, one of the murderers of Cotys, v. 10, § 18.

Partheniaea, the (at Lacedaemon), conspiracy of, v. 7, § 2.

Passion, intended by nature to be controlled by reason, i. 5, § 6; present in the human soul from the first, iii. 15, §§ 5, 6; 16, § 5; vi. 15, § 10; blinds men to danger, v. 10, § 34; 11, § 31; the multitude freer from passion than the individual, iii. 15, § 8.

Patrimony, laws forbidding the sale of a, ii. 7, § 6; 9; § 14; (cp. v. 8, § 20).

Patron, metics required to have a, iii. 1, § 4.

Pausanias, the assassin of Philip of Macedon, v. 10, § 16.

Pausanias, son of Cleombrotus, incorrectly called king, v. 1, § 10; vii. 14, § 20; his conspiracy, v. 1, § 10; 7, § 4; vii. 14, § 20.

Pauson, paintings of, viii. 5, § 21.

Payment of the democracy: introduced at Athens by Pericles and Ephialtes, ii. 12, § 4; bad effects of the practice, ib. 7, § 19; iv. 6, § 5; vi. 2, § 6, how they may be counteracted, vi. 5, § 5.

Peace, the true object of war, vii. 14, §§ 13, 22; 15, §§ 1, 5; the dangers of, ib. 15, § 3.

Pediaei, the (or 'men of the plain'), at Athens, attacked by Peisistratus, v. 5, § 9.

Peisistratus, gained his tyranny by attacking the Pediaei, v. 5, § 9; tried before the Areopagus, ib. 12, § 2; twice driven from Athens, ib. § 5;—Peisistratidae, the, conspiracy of Harmodius and Aristogiton against, v. 10, §§ 15, 34; built the temple of Olympian Zeus, ib. 11, § 9; length of their tyranny, ib. 12, § 5.

Peloponnesus, ii. 10, § 3; iii. 3, § 5;—Peloponnesian War, the: see War, Peloponnesian.
INDEX.

Penestae, the, difficulties of the Thessalians with, ii. 5, § 22; 9, § 2.
Pentacosio-medimni, the, in Solon’s constitution, ii. 12, § 6.
Penthalidae, the, at Mitylene, slaughter of, v. 10, § 19.
Penthilus (? tyrant of Mitylene), assassination of, by Smerdis, v. 10, § 19.
Periander, tyrant of Ambracia, expelled by the people, v. 4, § 9; 10, § 16.
Periander, tyrant of Corinth, story of, and Thrasybulus, iii. 13, § 16; v. 10, § 13; the great master of tyrannic arts, v. 11, § 4; duration of his tyranny, ib. 12, § 3.
Pericles, curtailed the power of the Areopagus, and introduced the system of paying the dicasts, ii. 12, § 4.
Perioeci (in Argos), admitted to citizenship after ‘Hebdome,’ v. 3, § 7.—(in Crete), better managed than in Sparta, ii. 9, § 3; 10, § 16; correspond to the Helots, ib. 10, §§ 5, 16; retain the laws of Minos, ib. § 3; tribute paid by them, ib. § 8:—advantageous to have perioeci of foreign race as cultivators, vii. 9, § 8; 10, § 13.
Perjury, first made criminal by Charondas, ii. 12, § 11.
Permanence of the state, only secured by the loyalty of all classes, ii. 9, § 22; iv. 9, § 10; 12, § 1; v. 8, § 5; 9, § 5; vi. 6, § 2.
Perrhaebians, the, hostile to the Thessalians, ii. 9, § 3.
Persia; growth of the Persian empire, iii. 13, § 19; deposition of Astyages by Cyrus, v. 10, §§ 8, 24; tyrannical character of the Persian government, ib. 11, §§ 4, 6; military power held in esteem among the Persians, vii. 2, § 10; the Persian kings not taught music, viii. 5, § 5.
Persian War, the: see War, Persian.
Perversions, the, of the true forms of government, iii. 1, §§ 9–10; 6, § 11; 7; 17, § 1; iv. 2, §§ 1–3; 8, § 1; all governments perversions of the perfect state, iv. 8, § 1 (cp. ii. 11, § 5).
Phalaris, of Agrigentum, mode in which he acquired his tyranny, v. 10, § 6.
Phaleas of Chalcidon, the first to propose the equalization of property, ii. 7, § 2; 12, § 12; criticisms of his constitution, ib. 7.
Pharsalus, prudent administration of the oligarchical government at, v. 6, § 10; —the Pharsalian mare called ‘the Just,’ ii. 3, § 9.
Pheidon, of Corinth, wished population to be regulated, ii. 6, § 13.
Philip, King of Macedonia, assassinated by Pausanias, v. 10, § 16.
Philolaus, legislator for the Thebans, ii. 12, §§ 8, 10; —story of Philolaus and Diocles, ib. § 10.
Philosopher, the, may be allowed to discuss practical questions, i. 11, § 1; has no difficulty in acquiring wealth, ib. §§ 8–10; must go below the surface of things, iii. 8, § 1; his life as distinguished from that of the statesman, vii. 2, § 6; —philosophers, the, not agreed about slavery, i. 6, § 2; the opinions of natural philosophers about marriage, vii. 16, § 11; philosophers who have treated of musical education, viii. 5, § 23; 7, §§ 2, 3, 8, 11, 14.
Philosophy, especially necessary in the prosperous, vii. 15, §§ 3, 4.
Philoctenes, attempted to compose dithyrambic tales in the Dorian mode, vii. 7, §§ 10, 11.
Phocis; the commencement of the Sacred War, v. 4, § 7.
Phocylides, quoted (fragm. 12, Bergk) iv. 11, § 9.
Phreatto, court of, at Athens, iv. 16, § 3.
Phrygian harmony, the: see Harmony.
Phrynichus, played the demagogue in the government of the Four Hundred at Athens, v. 6, § 6.
Phylarchus, magistrates at Epidamus, v. i, § 10.

Physician, the, must be judged by the physician, iii. 11, §§ 10–12; is healed by the physician, ib. 16, § 8; is not expected to persuade or coerce his patients, vii. 2, § 13; must know both the end and the means of his art, ib. 13, § 2; precepts of the physicians about marriage, ib. 16, § 11; law about physicians in Egypt, iii. 15, § 4.

Pictures, indecent, to be forbidden, vii. 17, § 9.

Pilory, used as a punishment, v. 6, § 15.

Piraeus, laid out by Hippodamus, ii. 8, § 1; the inhabitants of, more democratic than other Athenians, v. 3, § 15.

Pittacus, laws of, against drunkenness, ii. 12, § 13; elected Aesymnete in Mitylene, iii. 14, §§ 9, 10.

Planning of cities, invented by Hippodamus, ii. 8, § 1; vii. 11, § 6.

Plants, created for the sake of the animals, i. 8, § 11; sex (?) ascribed to, ib. 2, § 2.

Plato, criticisms of; forms of government differ in kind (Pol. 258 E foll.), i. 1, § 2; 3, § 4; 7, § 1; the virtue of men and women not the same (Meno, 71–73), i. 13, §§ 9–11; slaves not always to be harshly treated (Laws, vi. 777), ib. § 14; disadvantages of community of wives and children, ii. 1, § 3–c. 5; of common property, ib. 5; vii. 10, § 9; the unity of the state may be carried too far, ii. 2, § 2–c. 3, § 4; 4, § 6; 5, § 13; men and women ought not to have the same pursuits (Rep. 451 D), ib. 5, § 24; danger from the rulers being always the same, ib. §§ 25, 26; happiness should not be confined to one class (Rep. iv. 419), ib. § 27; Plato has neglected the foreign relations of his state, ib. 6, § 7; amount of property allowed by him (Laws, v. 737 D) insufficient, ib. § 9; he should have limited population as well as property, ib. §§ 10–14; 7, § 4; he has not said how the rulers and subjects are related, ib. 6, § 14; why should not property in land be increased to a certain extent? ib. § 15; difficulty of living in two houses (Laws, v. 745), ib. 16; the best state not made up of tyranny and democracy, ib. § 18; the state of the Laws really a mixture of oligarchy and democracy, ib. §§ 18–22; Plato's distinctions between good and bad constitutions (Pol. 303 A), iv. 2, § 3; his account of the classes necessary to a state (Rep. ii. 359), ib. 4, §§ 12–15; has not recognised the 'Polity' in his enumeration of constitutions, ib. 7, § 1; his theory of revolutions (Rep. viii. 546), v. 12, §§ 7–18; his error in saying that the guardians should be fierce to those whom they do not know (Rep. ii. 375), vii. 7, §§ 5–8;—that a valiant city needs no walls (Laws, vi. 778), ib. 11, § 8;—that the crying of children should be checked (Laws, vii. 792), ib. 17, § 6; his inconsistency in retaining the Phrygian mode (Rep. iii. 399), viii. 7, §§ 8–13;—the merits of Plato's writings, ii. 6, § 6; he departs from ordinary practice more than other legislators, ib. 7, § 1; peculiarities suggested by him, ib. 12, § 12;—justice of his censure of the Lacedaemonian constitution (Laws, i. 630), ib. 9, § 34;—how far right in wishing that his city should not be near the sea, vii. 6, §§ 1–4;—speech of Aristophanes in the Symposium quoted, i. 4, § 6;—criticism of the Republic, ib. 1, § 3–c. 5; of the Laws, ib. 6.

Plays, the, of children, should be imitations of the occupations of later life, vii. 17, § 5.

Pleasure, always sought by mankind, i. 9, § 16; ii. 7, § 12; denied by Plato to his guardians, ii. 5, § 27; is regarded differently by different persons, vii. 3, § 5; the pleasure of living, iii. 6, § 4;
INDEX.

relation of pleasure to happiness, vii. 1, § 6; the natural pleasure given by music, viii. 5, §§ 11, 15, 17, 25; 6, § 8.—Pleasures, the, which are unaccompanied by pain, ii. 7, § 12.

Pluralism, at Carthage, ii. 11, § 13.

Poetry, better judged by the many than the individual, iii. 11, § 3.

Poets, the, divide life into periods of seven years, vii. 16, § 17; 17, § 15; never represent Zeus as singing or playing, viii. 5, § 8; employ the Phrygian harmony for dithyrambic poetry, ib. 7, § 11; their descriptions of the Isles of the Blest, vii. 15, § 4.

Polti: see Government, the Constitutional.

Polycrates, buildings of, at Samos, v. 11, § 9.

Polynotus, the painter, viii. 5, § 21.

Poor, the, everywhere abound, iii. 8, § 6; v. 1, § 14; covet the goods of the rich, iv. 11, § 9; their degraded state in Hellenic cities, ib. §§ 5-7; willing to fight if they are supported by the state, ib. 13, § 9; equal to the rich in democracies, vi. 2, § 9; the surplus revenue distributed among them in the extreme democracy, ib. 5, § 7; may cause a revolution if their numbers increase, v. 3, §§ 6-8; begrudge the extravagance of courts, ib. 11, § 19; should be humanely treated, ii. 7, § 20; iv. 13, § 8; should be helped by the rich; vi. 5, §§ 5-11.

Population, decline of, at Sparta, ii. 9, § 16; importance of regulating, ib. 6, §§ 10-14; 7, §§ 4-6; 9, §§ 14-19; vii. 5, § 1; 16, § 15; changes of government brought about by the natural increase of population in Hellas, iii. 15, § 13; iv. 6, § 5; 13, § 10; vi. 5, § 5; a limit of population necessary to good government, ii. 6, §§ 6, 10; 7, § 5; 9, § 19; vii. 4, §§ 4-11; 5, § 1; 16, § 15.

Possession, a, may be called an instrument for maintaining life, i. 4, § 2; is an instrument of action, ib. § 4.

Poverty, not the cause of the worst crimes, ii. 7, § 10; always antagonistic to riches, iv. 4, § 19; the parent of revolution and crime, ii. 6, § 13 (but cp. v. 12, § 17); one of the essential characteristics of democracy, vi. 2, § 7.

Preeminence in virtue; the preeminent good man or family should be supreme, iii. 13, §§ 8, 13-25; 17, §§ 5-8; v. 1, § 6; viii. 3, § 6; 14, § 6.

Preservation, the general causes of, in states, v. 8; 9; the causes which affect monarchies, ib. 11, §§ 1-3; tyrannies, ib. §§ 4-34; democracies, vi. 5; 6, § 5; oligarchies, ib. 6, § 7.

Presidents; name given to certain magistrates, vi. 8, § 7; vii. 12, § 7.

Priests, are not political officers, iv. 15, § 2; necessary to the state, vii. 8, §§ 7, 9; should be taken from the aged citizens who are past state service, ib. 9, § 9; their duties, vi. 8, §§ 18-20; required to take their meals at common tables, vii. 12, § 6.

Prior and posterior; the state prior to the family or the individual, i. 2, § 12; 13, § 5; the whole prior to the part, ib. 2, § 12; true forms of government prior to permutations, iii. 1, § 9; the body prior in order of generation to the soul, vii. 15, § 9; viii. 3, § 13; the irrational element prior to the rational, vii. 15, § 9.

Prisoners of war, usually made slaves, i. 6, §§ 1, 5.

Probuli, or senators, the head of the state in oligarchies, iv. 15, § 11; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24.

Production, instruments of, i. 4, §§ 4-6.

Property, a part of the household, i. 4, § 1; 8, § 1; a condition but not a part of the state, vii. 8, § 4; in the sense of food, provided by nature for all, i. 8, §§ 9, 10, § 3; the pleasure of property, ii. 5, § 8;—Plato's limit of property unsatisfactory, ib. 6, § 9; the limit should be such as to enable a man to live both temperately and liberally,
INDEX.

ib.; vii. 5, § 1; — inequality of property at Sparta, ii. 9, §§ 14-19; v. 7, § 3, § 10; 12, § 15; — a great cause of revolutions, ii. 7, §§ 2-6.

Property, community of; criticism of Plato's scheme, ii. 5 (see Plato); common property opposed to human nature, ib. §§ 4, 16; exists in a modified degree among friends, ib. §§ 6, 7; vii. 10, § 9; found to some extent at Sparta and Tarentum, ii. 5, § 7; vii. 5, § 16; would destroy the virtues of temperance and liberality, ii. 5, §§ 8-10; would not produce the marvellous results which Plato expects, ib. § 11; — equalisation of proposed by Phaeas, ib. 7, § 12; would not remedy the deeper evils of human nature, ib. 7, §§ 8-13, 18.

Property qualification, required in the holders of various offices, iii. 11, § 16; iv. 4, § 24; 5, § 1; 6, §§ 3, 7; vi. 4, § 5; ought not to be excessive, iv. 13, § 7; in oligarchies should be fixed according to two standards, vi. 6, § 2; changes in cause of revolutions, v. 3, §§ 8, 10; 6, §§ 16-18; 7, § 9; the evil may be remedied by periodical revisions of the census, ib. 8, §§ 10, 11.

Property taxes, in democracies, vi. 5, § 5.

Proportion, importance of, iii. 13, § 21; iv. 12; v. 1, §§ 12-15; 3, § 6; 7, § 8; 8, § 12; 9, § 7; vii. 4, § 10.

Prosperity often dangerous to men, v. 8, § 12; 10, § 33; vii. 15, § 4.

Proverbs; ' Slave before slave, master before master,' i. 7, § 3; ' Friends have all in common,' ii. 5, § 6; ' Well begun, half done,' v. 4, § 3; ' Nail knocks out nail,' ib. 11, § 13; ' No leisure for slaves,' vii. 15, § 2.

Proxenus; Doxander proxenus of Athens at Mitylene, v. 4, § 6.

Prytanis, the chief magistrate at Miletus in ancient times, v. 5, § 8; — Prytanes, officers appointed for the performance of the public sacrifices, vi. 8, § 20.

Psammetichus, son of Gordius, tyrant at Corinth, v. 12, § 3.

Public Services (laevrovryiai), the rich should be excused from, v. 8, § 20; vi. 5, § 9.

Public works, erection of, a part of tyrannical policy, v. 11, § 9; should be undertaken by the notables in oligarchies, vi. 7, § 5; the labourers upon, sometimes public slaves, ii. 7, § 23.

Punishments, judicial, necessity of, vi. 8, § 9; vii. 13, § 6.

Purification, produced by music, viii. 7, §§ 3-5.

Pyramids, the, of Egypt, v. 11, § 9.

Q.

Quality and quantity in the state, iii. 8; iv. 12, §§ 1-4; v. 1, §§ 12-15.

Quarrels, often happen among fellow-travellers, ii. 5, § 4; would be less frequent, if property were equalized, ib. 7, § 18; when they occur among the nobles, a cause of revolution, v. 4, §§ 1-4; 8, § 9; quarrels about marriages another cause, ib. 4, §§ 5-8; the constant quarrels between the demagogues and the rich, a great injury to the state, ib. 9, § 10; quarrels between the kings of Sparta encouraged by state policy, ii. 9, § 30.

R.

Rattle, the, of Archytas, viii. 6, § 2.

Reading, one of the customary branches of education, viii. 3, §§ 1, 12.

Reason, an element of virtue, vii. 13, §§ 10-13; 15, § 7; is the master artificer, i. 13, § 8; divided into two parts, the speculative and the practical, vii. 14, § 10; is the end towards which nature strives, ib. 15, § 8; intended by nature to control the passionate or irrational element in the soul, i. 5, §§ 6, 13, § 6; vii. 14, § 9; 15, § 8; is not found in the animals, i. 2, §§ 11; vii. 13, § 12; exists in slaves to a limited extent, i. 5, § 9; 13, § 3; is not readily obeyed by those who have great advantages over others, iv. 11, § 5; may be
INDEX.

overcome by passion, v. 10, § 33; 11, § 31; may make mistakes, vii. 15, § 7.
Receivers, name given to certain revenue officers, vi. 8, § 6.
Recorders, vi. 8, § 7.
Reformation, the, of an old constitution, as difficult as the creation of a new one, iv. 1, § 7.
Registrars, vi. 8, § 7.
Registration of citizens, a preliminary to sitting in the assembly or the law-courts, iv. 13, § 3.
Relations, the, of male and female, master and slave, parent and child, which compose the family and the state, i. 2, §§ 1–5; 3, §§ 1–3; 12; 13, § 15.
Relaxation, necessity of, viii. 3, § 4; 5, §§ 2, 10; music a relaxation worthy of freemen, ib. 3, §§ 7–11.
Religion, matters of, used to be entrusted to the kings, iii. 14, §§ 3, 14 (cp. vi. 8, § 20); the tyrant should have a care of religion, v. 11, § 25; the expense of public worship should be borne by the state, vi. 10, § 10; —the officers of religion, vi. 8, §§ 18–21; viii. 7, § 9; 9, § 9.
Religious worship, one of the conditions of the state, vii. 8, § 8.
Representation, principle of, once existed in the government of Mantinea, vi. 4, § 4.
Republic, the, of Plato: see Plato.
Residence in one spot does not make a citizen, iii. 1, § 3; —or constitute a city, ib. 3, § 3; 9, §§ 9–12 (but cp. ii. 1 § 2).
Rest: see Leisure.
Retail trade, not a natural mode of money-making, l. 9, §§ 4, 12; arises out of the barter of necessary articles, ib. §§ 9–12.
Revenue, officers of, vi. 8, §§ 6, 16.
Revenue, a certain amount of, one of the conditions of the state, vii. 8, § 7; —Revenues, the, of the state should be publicly announced, v. 8, § 19; at Sparta, badly administered, ii. 9, § 36.
Revolutions, their objects, v. 1; their causes, ii. 7, §§ 2, 5, 10; v. 2; 3; 4; 10, § 13; 12, §§ 14–18; their occasions, v. 4; 7, § 11; the prevents of them, ii. 11, § 15; v. 7, § 6; 8; 9; 11; vi. 4, §§ 16–20; 5; 6; revolutions in democracies, v. 5; —in oligarchies, ib. 6; —in constitutional governments, ib. § 17; 7, § 5; —in aristocracies, ib. 7; —in monarchies, ib. 10; —in tyrannies, ib. 11; Plato's theory of revolutions, criticized, ib. 12, §§ 7–18; —questions raised after revolutions: citizens de jure and de facto, iii. 2, §§ 3–5; should old debts be paid? ib. 3, § 1; —democratic measures taken by Cleisthenes and others after a revolution, ib. 2, §§ 3–5; vi. 4, § 18; revolutions may happen without an immediate change in the constitution, iv. 5, § 3; v. 1, § 8.
Revolutions at Abydos, v. 6, §§ 6, 13; Aegina, ib. § 9; Ambracia, ib. 3, § 10; 4, § 10; 10, § 16; Amphipolis, ib. 3, § 13; 6, § 8; Antissa, ib. 3, § 12; Apollonia, ib. 13; 6, § 9; Argos, ib. 3, § 7; Athens, ib. 4, § 13; 5, § 9; 6, § 6; Byzantium, ib. 3, § 12; Carthage, ib. 7, § 4; 12, § 12; Chalcis, ib. 4, § 9; 12, § 12; Chios, ib. 6, § 16; Clazomenae, ib. 3, § 15; Cnidus, ib. 6, §§ 4, 16; Colophon, ib. 3, § 15; Corinth, ib. 6, § 12; Cos, ib. 5, § 2; Cyme, ib. § 4; Cyrene, vi. 4, § 18; Delphi, vi. 4, § 5; Elis, ib. 6, § 11; Epidamnus, ib. 1, § 10; 4, § 7; Eretria, ib. 6, § 14; Erythrae, ib. § 5; Heraea, ib. 3, § 9; Heraclea, ib. 5, § 3; 6, §§ 2, 7, 15; Hestiaea, ib. 4, § 4; Istris, ib. 6, § 2; Lacedaemon (see Lacedaemon); Larissa, v. 6, §§ 6, 13; Leontini, ib. 12, § 13; Locri, ib. 7, § 10; Massalia, ib. 6, § 2; Megara, iv. 15, § 15; v. 3, § 5; 5, §§ 4, 9; Miletus, v. 5, § 8; Naxos, ib. 6, § 1; Oreus, ib. 3, § 9; Rhegium, ib. 12, § 13; Rhodes, ib. 3, §§ 4, 5; 5, § 2; Sicyon, ib. 12, § 12; Sybaris, ib. 3, § 11; Syracuse, ib. §§ 5, 13; 4, § 1; 5, § 10; 6, § 8; 12, § 12; Tarentum, ib. 3, § 7; Thebes, ib. § 5; 6,
INDEX.

§ 15; Thurii, ib. 3, § 12; 7, §§ 9, 12.

Rhegium, tyranny of Anaxilaus at, v. 12, § 13; Androdamas of, ii. 12, § 14.

Rhodes, ii. 10, § 3; oligarchical revolution at, v. 3, §§ 4, 5; 5, § 2.

Rhythm, supplies imitations of the virtues and vices, viii. 5, § 18; one of the elements of music, ib.; 6, § 5; 7, § 1.

Rich, the, one of the elements of the state, iv. 4, § 15; everywhere few compared to the poor, iii. 8, § 6; v. 1, § 14; often hindered by the cares of property from attending to public business, iv. 6, § 6 (but cp. i. 7, § 5); possess the external advantages of which the want occasions crime, iv. 8, § 4 (cp. ii. 7, § 10); have too much power in so-called aristocratical governments, iv. 12, § 6; v. 7, § 7; their encroachments more dangerous to the state than those of the poor, iv. 12, § 6; constantly in antagonism to the poor, ib. 11, § 7; v. 9, § 10; should be protected against the demagogues, v. 8, § 20; vi. 5, § 3; should be relieved from useless state expenses, v. 8, § 20; vi. 5, § 9; should be generous to the poor, iv. 13, § 8; vi. 5, § 10; should be public-spirited and munificent, vi. 7, § 6; are often spoilt by indulgence in childhood, iv. 11, § 6; v. 9, § 13; can alone afford the expense of keeping horses, iv. 3, § 2.

Riches and poverty, the opposing elements of the state, v. 1, § 14; 8, § 14; riches more desired by men than honour, iv. 13, § 8; v. 8, § 16; vi. 4, § 2; Solon wrong in thinking that 'no bound has been fixed to riches,' i. 8, § 14. See Wealth.

Riding, taught to the children of kings, iii. 4, § 8.

Roll of citizens, the, at Athens, v. 3, § 7.

Royalty, the form of government in which one rules for the best, iii. 7, § 3; v. 10, § 3; analogous to aristocracy, v. 10, §§ 2, 7; opposed to tyranny, iii. 7, § 5; iv. 2, § 2; v. 10, § 2; is it better than the rule of the law? iii. 15; 16; arose (1) from the government of families by the eldest, i. 2, § 6; 7, § 1; 12, § 3; (2) from services rendered by the first chiefs, iii. 14, § 12; 15, § 11; v. 10, §§ 3, 8; (3) from the weakness of the middle and lower classes, iv. 13, § 11; once existed in Crete, ii. 10, § 6; has various forms: (1) the Lacedaemonian (which is only a generalship for life), ii. 9, §§ 33; iii. 14, §§ 3, 14; 15, §§ 1, 2; 16, § 1; (2) the despotic (among Barbarians), iii. 14, §§ 6, 14; iv. 10, § 2; (3) the ancient Dictatorships, iii. 14, §§ 8, 14; iv. 10, § 2; (4) the monarchies of the heroic age, iii. 14, §§ 11-14; (5) the absolute monarchy, ib. § 15;—the people to whom royalty is suited, ib. c. 17;—causes of revolutions in monarchies, v. 10; means of their preservation, ib. 11, §§ 1-3; royalty more often destroyed from within than from without, ib. 10, § 36; true royalty unknown in later Hellas, ib. § 37; viii. 14, § 3. See King.

Rule; the various kinds of rule essentially different from each other, i. 1, § 2; 3, §§ 4; 5, § 6; 7, § 1; 12; 13, §§ 4-8; iii. 6, §§ 5-7; vii. 3, § 2; 14, § 6; the distinction between the ruler and the ruled found throughout nature, i. 2, § 2; 5, §§ 2-7; the better the ruled, the better the rule, ib. 5, §§ 2, 7; vi. 11, § 34; the rule of freemen better than despotic authority, vii. 14, § 19; rule over others, not the highest object of the legislator, ib. 14, §§ 14-22; rule must be learnt by obedience, iii. 4, §§ 10, 14; vii. 9, § 6; 14, § 6.

Ruler, the, ought to have moral virtue in perfection, i. 13, § 8; the virtue peculiar to him, iii. 4, § 17; must learn to govern by obedience, ii. 11, § 14; iii. 4, § 14; vii. 9, § 6; 14, § 6; the rulers ought to remain the same, ii. 2,
INDEX.

§§ 4-8; vii. 14, § 2; dangers arising from this arrangement, ii. 5, §§ 24-27; vii. 14, § 3; the difficulty solved, if the elder rule, and the younger obey, vii. 9, § 5; 14, § 5.
Ruling class, a, not always humane, iv. 13, § 8.

S.
Sacred recorders, vi. 8, § 7.
Sailor, analogy of the, and the citizen, iii. 4, §§ 1-4; number of sailors at Ægina, Athens, and Chios, iv. 4, § 21;—at Hermaclea, vii. 6, § 8.
Salamis, victory of, v. 4, § 8.
Sambucia, the, an ancient musical instrument, viii. 6, § 13.
Samos, subjection of, by the Athenians, iii. 13, § 19; buildings of Polycrates at, v. 11, § 9;—Samian colonists at Zancle, ib. 3, § 12.
Sardanapalus, death of, v. 10, § 22.
Science, the, of the statesman, i. 1, § 2; 10, § 1; iii. 12, § 1; iv. 1, § 3;—of the master, i. 3, § 4; 7, §§ 2, 4;—of the slave, ib. 7, §§ 2, 3; in all sciences the whole must be resolved into the parts, ib. 1, § 3; every science capable of improvement, ii. 8, § 18; the philosophical student of science must not neglect any detail, iii. 8, § 1; all sciences aim at some good, ib. 12, § 1;—the political science the highest of all sciences, iii. 12, § 1; aims at the good of the state, vii. 2, § 4; the subjects which it includes, iv. 1, §§ 3-11.
Scrinineers, vi. 8, §§ 17, 21.
Scylax, quoted about the kings of India, vii. 14, § 3.
Scyllitic Gulf, the, vii. 10, § 3.
Scythians, the, vii. 2, §§ 10, 11.
Sea, the, proximity of, good or evil? vii. 6.
Sedition, see Revolution.
Self-sufficiency, the, of the state, the end and the best, i. 2, §§ 8; vii. 5, § 1; 8, § 8; would not be promoted by extreme unification, ii. 2, § 8.
Selfishness, natural and unnatural, ii. 5, § 8.
Senate, see Council of Elders.
Senators, see Councillors.
Senses, the, have not much resemblance to moral qualities, viii. 5, §§ 19-21.
Servant, the, a kind of instrument in the arts, i. 4, § 2; many servants often less efficient than a few, ii. 3, § 4; the servants who are employed in daily life, those with whom we most often disagree, ib. 5, § 4; children not to be left too much to servants, vii. 17, § 7. See Slave.
Sesostris, king of Egypt, first separated the people into castes, vii. 10, §§ 1, 6.
Shepherds, lead the laziest life among men, i. 8, § 6; sometimes combine brigandage with their other occupations, ib. 8; form the second best material of a democracy, vi. 4, §§ 1, 11; make excellent soldiers, ib. 11.
Sicily, invaded by Minos, ii. 10, § 4; the tyrannies in, mostly arose out of oligarchies, v. 12, § 13.
Sicily, story of the man of, who bought up all the iron, i. 11, § 11.
Sicyon, tyranny of Ochragoras and his descendants, v. 12, § 1.
Siege machines, invention of, vii. 11, § 9.
Sight, has a slight relation to moral qualities, viii. 5, § 20.
Simos (?), a party leader at Larissa, v. 6, § 13.
Simplicity of life at Sparta, ii. 6, §§ 17; iv. 9, §§ 6-10.
Syrnhas, war of, against Archelaus, v. 10, § 17.
Situation, the, suitable for the state, vii. 5; 11, §§ 1-5.
Slavery, is it according to nature? i. 5; 6.
Slavery;—men should not think it slavery to live according to the constitution, v. 9, § 15.
Slave, the, does he exist by nature? i. 4, §§ 6-c. 6; different from the female (except among Barbarians), ib. 2, §§ 2-4; how related to his master, ib. §§ 2-5; 3, §§ 1-
INDEX.

3; 4, § 5; vii. 3, § 5; not always distinguished by nature from the freeman, i. 5, § 10; 6, § 8; the relation between slave and master, when natural, does not exclude kindness, ib. 6, § 9; slave and master have a common interest, ib. 2, § 3; iii. 6, § 6; the slave must not be addressed in the language of command only [against Plato, Laws, vii. 777], i. 13, § 14; place of the slave in the management of the family, ib. 4; 5, § 9; 8, § 1; the slave an instrument taking precedence of other instruments, ib. 4, § 2; like the animals, ministers to the needs of life, ib. 5, § 9; the science proper to him, i. 7, §§ 2, 3; his share in virtue, ib. 13, §§ 2-14; — in reason, ib. 5, §§ 8, 9; 13, § 3; has not the deliberative faculty, ib. 13, § 7; is nearer to his master than the mechanic, ib. § 13; ought to be trained in virtue by him, ib. § 14: —Slaves, how related to artisans, i. 13, § 13; ii. 7, § 22; iii. 4, § 12; 5, § 3; forbidden gymnastic exercises in Crete, ii. 5, § 19; difficulty in managing them, ib. § 22; 9, §§ 2-4; vii. 10, § 13; the different classes of slaves, iii. 4, § 12; children of slaves only admitted to citizenship in extreme democracies, ib. 5, § 7; vi. 4, § 16; slaves cannot form a state, iii. 9, § 6; cannot be self-sufficient, iv. 4, § 11; licence allowed to them in democracies and tyrannies, v. 11, § 11; vi. 4, § 20; sometimes emancipated by tyrants to serve as a guard, v. 11, § 32; should be encouraged by the hope of freedom, vii. 10, § 14; their company dangerous for children, ib. 17, § 7.

Slaves, the art of acquiring, a species of hunting or war, i. 7, § 5; vii. 14, § 21.

Slaves, a school for, once existed at Syracuse, i. 7, § 2.

Small matters, must not be neglected by the statesman, v. 3, § 10; 4, § 1; 7, § 11; 8, §§ 2, 3.

Smerdis, the murderer of Penthius at Mitylene, v. 10, § 19.

Society, political, the highest of all communities, i. 1, § 1; exists, not for mere companionship, but for the sake of noble actions, iii. 9, §§ 12-14; man designed by nature to take part in society, i. 2, §§ 8-16; iii. 6, § 3; benefit conferred on mankind by the establishment of society, i. 2, § 15; society cannot exist without judicial decisions and punishments, vi. 8, § 9; vii. 13, § 6.

Socrates: see Plato.

Soldiers, according to Plato, should be taught to use both hands alike, ii. 12, § 12; shepherds make excellent soldiers, vi. 4, § 11; relation of the different kinds of soldiers to the different constitutions, ib. 7, §§ 1-3; the soldier must have a good knowledge of the military art, vii. 11, § 12; soldiers as necessary to the state as artisans or husbandmen [against Plato, Rep. ii. 369], iv. 4, §§ 10-17; vii. 4, §§ 4-7; 8, § 7; 9, § 10; the soldiers should be taken from the youth, the councillors from the old, vii. 9, §§ 3-10; 14, § 5; should form a separate caste, as in Egypt, ib. 9, § 10; 10, § 1; position of the soldiers in the constitution of Hippodamus, ii. 8, §§ 2, 8-12.

Soldiers, heavy-armed, citizenship in constitutional governments confined to the, ii. 6, § 16; iii. 7, § 4; 17, § 4; iv. 13, § 10; growth of their importance in Hellenic states, iv. 13, §§ 9-12; taken from the roll of citizens at Athens, v. 3, § 7; form (with cavalry) the natural military force of an oligarchy, vi. 7, §§ 1, 2; generally worsted by the light-armed in popular insurrections, ib. § 3; —the principal magistrates elected from those who are serving, or who have served, ii. 8, § 9; iv. 13, § 9.

Soldiers, light-armed, always attached to democracy, vi. 7, § 2; generally master the heavy-armed
INDEX.

in popular insurrections, ib. § 3; the younger citizens in oligarchies should be trained in the exercises of light infantry, ib.

Solon, quoted, i. § 14; like most legislators, a citizen of the middle classes, iv. § 11, § 15; had a law to prohibit unlimited acquisition of property, ii. § 6; opposite opinions about his constitution, ib. 12, §§ 2-6 (cp. iii. 11, § 8).

Sophism, the, upon the twofold meaning of the word 'all,' ii. § 3, § 3;—that 'if the parts are little the whole is little,' v. § 8, § 3.

Sophocles, quoted (Ajax, 293), i. § 13, § 11.

Soul, the, rules by nature over the body, i. §, §§ 4-6; posterior to the body in order of generation, vii. § 15, § 9; more truly a part of an animal than the body, iv. § 14; the beauty of the soul less easily seen than that of the body, i. §, § 11; the interests of soul and body the same, ib. § 10; the irrational element in the soul subject to the rational, ib. §, § 6; 13, § 6; vii. § 14, § 9; 15, § 8; the divisions of the soul, i. §, §§ 5-7; 13, § 6; iii. § 4; vii. § 14, § 9; 15, § 9; the soul never wholly free from passion, iii. § 15, § 5; said to be or to possess harmony, viii. §, § 25.

Sparta: see Lacedaemon.

Spectators, are of two kinds, viii. §, § 6; the vulgar sort deteriorate the character of the performers, ib. § 16; 7, § 7.

Speculation, life of, opposed to that of contemplation, vii. § 3; 14, §§ 9-22.

Speech, why given to man, i. § 2, §§ 10-12.

Spies, employment of, by the tyrant, v. § 7.

Spits, made to hold a lamp, iv. § 15, § 8.

State, the, is the highest of communities, i. § 1; is based upon the relations of husband and wife, father and child, master and slave, ruler and subject, ib. 2; 13, § 15; formed of a union of villages, ib. 2; § 8; exists for the sake of a good life, ib. iii. § 9, §§ 1-14; iv. § 11; vii. § 1; 8, §§ 4; 8;—not for the sake of alliance and security, iii. § 9, §§ 1-14; is distinguished from an alliance because it has an ethical aim, ii. § 2, § 3; iii. § 8;—from a nation, because it is made up of different elements, ii. § 2, § 3; is not necessarily formed by a number of persons residing together, iii. § 3, § 3; 9, §§ 9-12; (but cp. ii. § 1, § 2); is a work of nature, i. § 2, §§ 8, 9; prior to the family or the individual, ib. § 12; 13, § 15;—composed of dissimilar parts or elements, ii. § 2, § 3; iii. §§ 1-2; 4, §§ 6-8; iv. § 3; 1-4; 4, § 7; 12, §§ 1-4; v. § 1, §§ 12-15; 3, § 6; vii. § 8; the parts not to be identified with the conditions of the state, vii. § 1; the parts and conditions enumerated, iv. § 3, §§ 1-6; 4, §§ 7-20; vii. § 7;—compared to the parts of animals, iv. § 4, §§ 7-9;—the state depends for its identity mainly on the sameness of the constitution, iii. § 3; must be able to defend itself, ii. § 6; 7, §§ 14-17; 10, § 15; iii. § 12, § 9; iv. § 4; 10; vii. § 4; 15; § 2; should be self-sustaining, i. § 2, § 8; ii. § 2, § 8; vii. § 4, § 11; 5, § 1; 8, § 8; should not exceed a certain size, ii. § 6; iii. §, §§ 4-7; vii. § 4; 5; § 1;—has the same virtue, and therefore the same life and end, as the individual, vii. 1-3; 13-15; may, like an individual, be wanting in self-discipline, v. § 9, § 12; must have the virtues of leisure, vii. § 1; can lead a life of virtuous activity isolated from others, ib. § 16; 3, §§ 8-10; is not made happier by conquest, ib. 2; 3; 14, §§ 14-22; rests upon justice, i. § 2, § 16; vii. § 14, § 3; must have a care of virtue, iii. § 9, § 8; vii. § 13, § 9 (cp. iv. § 7, § 4); must be happy, not in regard to a portion of the citizens, but to them all, ii. § 27; vii. § 7; is united by friendship among the citizens.
INDEX.

ii. 5, § 6; iii. 9, § 13; iv. 11, § 7
v. 11, § 5; (cp. vi. 5, § 7); must pay
great regard to education, i. 13,
§ 15; ii. 7, § 8; v. 9, § 11; viii.
1: — must not be left to fortune,
i. 11, §§ 15, 16; vii. 13, § 9; is
not the growth of a day, v. 3,
§ 11; is preserved by the prin-
ciple of compensation, ii. 2, §§ 4—
7; is sometimes left at the mercy
of the army by the violence of
faction, v. 6, § 13; its perma-
nence can only be secured by the
toleration of all elements, ii. 9,
§ 22; iv. 9, § 10; 12, § 1; v. 8,
§ 5; 9, § 5; vi. 6, § 2; any state,
however ill constituted, may last
a few days, vi. 5; § 1: — the
various claims to authority in the
state, iii. 9, §§ 1—5, 14; 10; 12;
13; iv. 8, § 9; vi. 3, §§ 1—4;
what share in the state may be
allowed to the ordinary citizen?
iii. 11, §§ 6—8; iv. 13, §§ 5—8;
vi. 4, § 5; 7, § 5 (cp. ii. 12, § 5).

State, the ideal, of Aristotle, would
require (1) a defensible position,
vii. 5, § 3; (2) a moderate naval
force, ib. §§ 6—9; (3) courageous
and intelligent citizens, ib. 7; (4)
the exclusion of mechanics and
tradesmen from citizenship, ib. 9,
§§ 1—8; (5) slaves and Perioeci
till the soil, ib. § 8; 10,
§§ 9, 13, 14; (6) common meals,
ib. 10, §§ 1—8, 10; (7) subdivision
of the land into two parts, public
and private, ib. § 11; (8) [for
the city] a central situation, ib.
5, § 3; 11, § 2: — near, but not
upon, the sea, ib. 6, §§ 1—6; a
healthy site, ib. 11, § 1; a good
water supply, ib. § 3; proper
fortifications and walls, ib. §§ 5,
8—12; an arrangement of houses
and streets which will combine
the advantages of beauty and
security, ib. § 6; an acropolis,
for the temples, and a 'freemen's
agora,' ib. 12, §§ 1—6; govern-
ment buildings and a trader's
agora, ib. 7.

State, the best [absolutely], the en-
quirer into, must examine the
best ideal and actual forms of
government, ii. i. § 1; differs from
the so-called aristocracies be-
cause the citizens are absolutely
good, iii. 13, § 12; iv. 7, § 2;
(but cp. iii. 4, § 5) presupposes
the best life, vii. 1; in comparison
with it, all existing governments
may be called perversions, iv. 8, § 1.

State, the best [under ordinary cir-
cumstances], iv. 1, § 3; ii. 21
(cp. ii. 6, § 16).

State, the best [for mankind in
general], iv. 1, § 3; 11, § 1.

Statesman, the, is properly con-
cerned with the natural art of
acquisition only, i. 8, § 15; 10,
§ 1; ought also to be acquainted
with the art of moneymaking, ib.
11, § 13; must be able to re-
recognise evils at their commence-
ment, v. 4, § 3; 8, § 9; must not
despair small things, ib. 3, § 10;
4, § 1; 7, § 11; 8, § 2; must he
have virtue, or is skill alone suf-
cient? ib. 9, §§ 1—4; must know
the real effect of political mea-
sures, ib. § 9; will use fear as a
means to bind the state together,
ib. 8, § 8; will not suppose that
the greatness of the state depends
merely on size, vii. 4, § 4; the life
of the statesman contrasted with
the life of the philosopher,
ib. 2, § 6.

Statesman, the, the rule of, dif-
ferent from other kinds of rule,
i. 1, § 1; 3, § 4; 7, § 1.

Stentor (proverbial use of the name),
vi. 4, § 11.

Strangers, prohibition of, at Lac-
daemon, ii. 10, § 15.

Subject, the, distinguished by nature
from the ruler, i. 5, § 2.

Suits at law, distributed among
different magistrates, or tried by
all, accordingly as the govern-
ment is aristocracy or oligarchy,
ii. 11, § 8; iii. 1, §§ 10—12; divided
by Hippodamus into three classes,
ii. 8, § 4.

Superintendents of Gymnastic and
Dionysiac contests, vi. 8, § 22.

Sybaris, foundation of, v. 3, § 11:
—expulsion of the Sybarite colon-
ists from Thurii, ib. § 12.
INDEX.

Symposium, the, of Plato. See Plato. Symposium, the man of, who taught household duties, i. 7, § 2; — advice given to the Syracusans when Dionysius requested a guard, iii. 15, § 16; — revolution in ancient times at Syracuse arising out of a love-quarrel, v. 4, §§ 1-4; anarchy of the state before the tyranny of Gelo, ib. 3, § 5; duration of the tyranny of Hiero and Gelo, ib. 12, § 6; employment of spies by Hiero, ib. 11, § 7; expulsion of the family of Gelo and consequent democratic revolution, ib. 3, §§ 13, 10, § 31; 12, §§ 6, 12; disturbances arising from the admission of mercenaries to citizenship, ib. 3, § 13; tyrants put down in many Sicilian cities by the Syracusans, ib. 10, § 30; increased strength of the democracy at Syracuse after the victory over the Athenians, ib. 4, § 9; rise of Dionysius to the tyranny, ib. 5, §§ 10, 6, § 8; 10, § 6; his excessive taxation, ib. 11, § 10; attack of Dion on Dionysius the Younger, ib. 10, §§ 23, 28, 31, 32.

Syrtis (?), a district of Southern Italy, vii. 10, § 5.

T.

Tactics, unknown in ancient times, iv. 13, § 10.

Tarentum, colonized from Lacedaemon, v. 7, § 2; numbers of fishermen there, iv. 4, § 21; defeat of the Tarentines by the Iapygians and consequent democratic revolution, v. 3, § 7; kindly spirit shown by the government, vi. 5, § 10.

Taxation, oppressive, a part of tyrannical policy, v. 11, § 10; levied by the demagogues, in order to ruin the rich, vi. 5, § 5.

Telecles, of Miletus, constitution proposed by, iv. 14, § 4.

Temperance, different in men and women, i. 13, §§ 9-12; iii. 4, § 16; would be destroyed by communism, ii. 5, § 10; must be united with liberality, ib. 6, § 9; vii. 5, § 1; as necessary for the state as the individual, vii. 15, § 2.

Temple officers, vi. 8, § 18.

Temples, the (of the city), should be built upon the Acropolis, vii. 12, § 2; their arrangement in the country, ib. § 8.

Tenedos, number of ferrymen at, iv. 4, § 21.

Thales, of Miletus, story about the way in which he once made a fortune, i. 11, § 8; — [probably the Cretan poet] erroneously supposed to have been the companion of Onomacritus, ii. 12, § 7.


Thebes; overthrow of the democracy after Oenophyta, v. 3, § 5; punishment of Archias and consequent revolution, ib. 6, § 15; the Theban invasion of Laconia, ii. 9, §§ 10, 16; — the legislation of Philolaus, ib. 12, § 10; law at Thebes excluding persons from the government who had not left business ten years, iii. 5, § 7; vi. 7, § 4.

Theodectes, quoted, i. 6, § 7.

Theodorus, the actor, saying attributed to, vii. 17, § 13.

Theopompos, king of Sparta, established the Ephoryalty, v. 11, § 2.

Thera, one of the Sporades, ancient government of, iv. 4, § 5.

Thessaly; difficulties of the Thessalians with the Penetae, ii. 5, §§ 22; 9, § 2; ancient wars of the Thessalians with their neighbours, ib. 9, § 2; the 'Freemen's Agora' in Thessalian towns, vii. 12, § 3.

Thetes, the (in Solon's constitution), ii. 12, § 6.

Thibron, a panegyrist of the Lacedaemonian government, vii. 14, § 17.

Thirty, the, government of, at Athens, v. 6, § 6.

Thracians, the, a warlike nation, vii. 2, § 10.

Thrasybulus (brother of Hiero), tyrant of Syracuse for eleven months, v. 10, § 31; 12, § 6.

Thrasybulus, tyrant of Miletus,
INDEX.

Periander's advice to, iii. 13, § 16; v. 10, § 13.
Thrasylus, tablet dedicated by him at Athens when Choragus to Euphantides, viii. 6, § 12.
Thrasymachus, a revolutionary leader at Cyme, v. 5, § 4.
Thurii, story of the foundation of, v. 3, §§ 11, 12; democratical revolution at, ib. 7, § 9; subsequent (?) oligarchical revolution, ib. § 12.
Timophaes of Corinth, an instance of a general becoming a tyrant, v. 6, § 12.
Timophaes of Mitylene, v. 4, § 6.
Trade, see Commerce.
Traders, the employments of, devoid of moral excellence, vi. 4, § 12; vii. 9, § 3; ought to be excluded from citizenship, vii. 9, § 3; admitted to office at Thebes after they had retired from business ten years, iii. 5, § 7; vi. 7, § 4.
Travellers, apt to quarrel about every trifle, ii. 5, § 4.
Treasurers, vi. 8, § 7;—of sacred revenues, ib. § 19.
Treaties, conferring citizenship, iii. 1, § 4; of commerce, ib. 9, § 6.
Tribes, new, formed, after a revolution, iii. 2, § 3; vi. 4, § 18.
Trierarchs, at Rhodes, v. 5, § 2.
Triplium, promontory near Cnidus, ii. 10, § 3.
Tripods, the, of Hephaestus, i. 4, § 3.
Troeen; the Troezenians joint-founders with the Achaeans of Sybaris, v. 3, § 11; ancient oracle once given to them, vii. 16, § 7.
Tyrannical arts, generally attributed to Periander or to the Persian kings, v. 11, §§ 4, 6.
Tyrant, the, is the natural enemy of the freeman, iv. 10, § 4; v. 11, § 13; cuts off his rivals, iii. 13, §§ 16–19; v. 10, § 13; 11, § 5; rules over involuntary subjects as the king over voluntary, iii. 14, § 7; aims at pleasure, the king at honour, v. 10, § 10; is guarded by mercenaries, iii. 14, § 7; v. 10, § 10; sometimes obliged to emancipate the slaves, v. 11, § 32; is much under the influence of flatterers, iv. 4, § 28; v. 11, § 12; destroys the spirit and confidence of his subjects, v. 11, §§ 4, 13, 15; sends spies among them, ib. § 7; incites them to quarrel, ib. § 8; oppresses them by war and taxation, ib.; distrusts his friends, ib. § 10; gives licence to slaves and women, ib. § 11; vi. 4, § 20; loves the bad, v. 11, § 12; prefers foreigners to citizens, ib. § 14; is capable of any wickedness, ib.; is full of self-indulgence and sensuality, ib. § 23; may also preserve his tyranny by playing the ‘father of his country,’ ib. §§ 17–33; must be on his guard against assassins, especially against those who think that they have been insulted, ib. § 30; must conciliate the poor or the rich, whichever is the stronger, ib. § 32.
Tyrants, the, of Hellenic cities put down by the Lacedaemonians, iii. 2, § 3; v. 10, § 30; of Sicily, by the Syracusans, v. 10, § 30.
Tyrants, most of the ancient, originally demagogues, v. 5, § 6; 10, § 4; sometimes great magistrates, or kings, ib. 5, § 8; 10, § 5.
Tyranny, the government of the monarch who rules for his own interests, iii. 7, § 5; 8, § 2; iv. 10, § 3; v. 10, § 9; akin to democracy, iv. 4, § 27; v. 10, §§ 11, 30; 11, § 12; hardly to be called a constitution, iv. 8, § 1; 10, § 1; the perversion of royalty, iii. 7, § 5; 17, § 1; iv. 2, § 2; 4, § 27; 5, § 2; 10, § 3; does not rest upon natural justice or expediency, iii. 17, § 1; has all the vices both of democracy and oligarchy, v. 10, §§ 11, 30, 35; is unendurable to freemen, iv. 10, § 4; v. 11, § 13; may arise either from extreme oligarchy or democracy, iv. 11, § 11; v. 8, § 7; in Sicily often arose out of oligarchy, v. 12, § 13; was common in ancient times, owing to the great powers of the magistrates, ib. 5, § 8; 10, § 5; always a short-lived
government, ib. 12, § 1; rarely becomes hereditary, ib. 10, § 33; causes of revolution in tyrannies, ib. 10; means of their preservation, ib. 11; governments into which tyranny may change, ib. 12, § 11.

Tyrrenians, the, treaties of, with the Carthaginians, iii. 9, § 6.

Tyrtaeus, the Eunomia of, cited, v. 7, § 4.

U.

Unity, how far desirable in the state, ii. 2; 5, §§ 13-17.

Useful, the, exists for the sake of the honourable, vili. 14, § 13.

User, the, often a better judge than the artist, iii. 11, § 14.

Usury, the most unnatural mode of moneymaking, i. 10, § 5; ii. 11, § 3.

Utility, too much regarded by Hellenic legislators, vili. 14, § 15; is not the sole aim of education, vii. 2, § 3; iii. 11; is not sought after by men of noble mind, ib. 3, § 12.

V.

Valour, necessity of, in the state, ii. 6, §§ 7-8; 7, § 14; iii. 12, § 9; vili. 15, § 2; (cp. iv. 4, §§ 12-16; vili. 4, § 6). See Courage.

Venality, at Sparta, ii. 9, §§ 20, 26; at Carthage, ib. 11, §§ 10-13; particularly dangerous in oligarchies, v. 8, § 15.

Vermiparous animals, the, i. 8, § 10.

Village, the, a colony of the family, i. 2, § 6; the state a union of villages, ib. 8.

Violence, often associated with virtue, i. 6, § 3.

Virtue, the especial characteristic of aristocratical governments, ii. 11, §§ 5-10; iv. 7; v. 7, §§ 5-7; often allied to force, i. 6, § 3; more a concern of household management than wealth, ib. 13, § 1; depends upon the supremacy of the rational principle in the soul, ib. § 6; vili. 14, § 9; 15, § 9; cannot be included under a general definition, i. 13, § 10; must be taught to the slave by his master, ib. § 12; ought to be the aim and care of the state, iii. 9, §§ 6-8; vili. 13, § 9 (cp. iv. 7, § 4); gives a claim to superiority in the state, iii. 9, §§ 14, 15; 13, § 1; has many kinds, ib. 7, § 4; cannot ruin those who possess her, ib. 10, § 2; is a mean, iv. 11, § 3; how far required in the great officers of state, v. 9, §§ 1-4; must be at least pretended by the tyrant, ib. 11, §§ 25, 34; is regarded as a secondary object by mankind, vili. 1, § 5:—cannot be separated from happiness, vili. 1, § 3; 2, § 2; 3, § 1; 8, § 5; 9, § 3; 13, § 5; results from nature, habit, and reason, ib. 13, §§ 10-13; 15, §§ 7-10; is not a matter of chance, ib. 13, § 9; how far consistent with the political life, ib. 2; 3; should it be made the aim of education? vili. 2; consists in hating and loving and rejoicing aright, ib. 5, § 17:—should not (as is done by the Lacedaemonians) be supposed inferior to external goods, ii. 9, § 35; (cp. vili. 1, § 5;) nor be practised with a view to the single object of success in war, ii. 9, § 34; vili. 2, § 9; 14, § 16; 15, § 6:—the virtue proper to the slave, the woman, the child, i. 13, §§ 1-3; of the ruler and the subject different, ib. §§ 4-6; ili. 4, §§ 7-18; of the ruler, practical wisdom, of the subject, true opinion, ili. 4, § 18; of men and women not the same, i. 13, §§ 3-9-11; ili. 4, § 16; less required in the artisan than the slave, i. 13, § 12; (cp. vili. 9, § 7;) of the citizen relative to the constitution, ili. 4, §§ 1-7; iv. 7, § 3; v. 9, § 1; of the good man absolute, ili. 4, §§ 1-7; vili. 13, § 7; of the good citizen:—is it identical with that of the good man? ili. 4; 5, § 10; 18; vili. 14, § 8; of the citizen in the perfect state, ili. 4, § 5; 13, § 12; iv. 7, § 2.

Virtue, military, is found in the masses, ili. 7, § 4; the social, is justice, i. 2, § 16; ili. 13, § 2.

Virtues, the, of women and children
INDEX.

important to the state, i. 13, § 15; ii. 9, § 5; of the state and the individual the same, vii. 1, § 12; of the military life, ii. 9, §§ 11, 34; vii. 15, § 3; of leisure, vii. 15, § 1.

Viviparous animals, the, i. 8, § 10.
Vote, election by, modes in which it can be employed, ii. 6, § 19; iv. 15, §§ 14–22.

W.

Walls, are not, as Plato supposes (Laws, vi. 778), unnecessary, vii. 11, § 8.
Walls, officers appointed to take charge of the, vi. 8, § 5.
War, a part of the art of acquisition when directed against wild beasts and against men who are intended by nature to be slaves, i. 7, § 5; 8, § 12; vii. 2, § 15; 14, § 21; exists for the sake of peace, vii. 14, §§ 13, 22; 15, § 1; a school of virtue, ii. 9, § 11; a remedy against the dangers of prosperity, vii. 15, § 3; constant war a part of tyrannical policy, v. 11, § 10; success in war the sole object of the Lacedaemonian and Cretan constitutions, ii. 9, §§ 34, 35; vii. 2, §§ 9; 14, § 16; 15, § 6; progress in war: — invention of tactics, iv. 13, § 10; — of siege machines, vii. 11, § 9; improvement of fortifications, ib. § 12.
War, captives taken in, ought they to be made slaves i. 6, §§ 1–8.
War, the Peloponnesian; losses of the Athenian nobility, v. 3, § 7; battle of Oenophyta, ib. § 5; — capture of Mytilene, ib. § 6; — battle of Mantinea, ib. § 9; — the Sicilian expedition, ib.; — the Four Hundred at Athens, ib. § 13; 6, § 6; — the Thirty, ib. 6, § 6.
War, the Persian, v. 3, §§ 7; 4, §§ 4, 8; 7, § 4; effect of, upon Athens, ii. 12, § 5; v. 4, § 8; vii. 6, § 11: — the Sacred, v. 4, § 7.
Wardens of the Agora, iv. 15, §§ 9, 22; vi. 8, §§ 10, 21; vii. 12, § 7; of the City, vi. 8, §§ 5, 10, 21; vii. 12, § 7; of the Country, vi. 8, §§ 6, 10, 21; vii. 12, § 9; of the Harbour, vi. 8, § 5.

Warriors and Councillors, the two highest classes in the state, iv. 4, §§ 10–17; vii. 4, §§ 4–7; 8, § 7; 9, §§ 4–10.
Water, good, as necessary as good air, vii. 11, §§ 3–5.
Weak, the, always go to the wall, vi. 3, § 6.
Wealth, the, of Midas, i. 9, § 11.
Wealth, always antagonistic to poverty, iv. 4, § 19; forms an element of the state, ii. 7, § 16; iv. 4, § 15; vii. 8, §§ 7, 9; includes many varieties, i. 8, § 3; iv. 3, § 2; [the true kind] has a limit, i. 8, § 14; 9, §§ 1, 12; popularly confused with coin, ib. 9, §§ 10, 14; not so much a concern of household management as virtue, ib. 13, § 1; must be used with both temperance and liberality, ii. 6, § 8; vii. 5, § 1.

Wealth, too highly valued at Sparta and Carthage, ii. 9, §§ 7, 13; 11, §§ 8–12; iv. 7, § 4: the chief characteristic of oligarchy, ii. 11, § 9; iii. 8, § 7; iv. 4, §§ 3, 19; v. 10, § 11; vi. 2, § 7; confers a claim to superiority in the state, i. 3, §§ 4–6, 15; 12, §§ 8, 9; 13, §§ 1–5; popularly associated with good birth and education, iv. 8, §§ 4, 8; v. 7, § 1. See Riches.
Wealthy, the, have the external advantages of which the want tempts men to crime, ii. 7, § 10; iv. 8, § 3; are apt to be spoiled by the luxury in which they are reared, iv. 11, § 6; v. 9, § 13; form one of the classes necessary to the state, iv. 14, § 15; vii. 8, §§ 7, 9. See Rich.

Whole, the, must be resolved into its parts, i. 1, § 3; 8, § 1; prior and therefore superior to the parts, ib. 2, §§ 12–14; iii. 17, § 7; the part belongs entirely to the whole, i. 4, § 5; every whole has a ruling element, ib. 5, § 3; the whole and the part have the same interest, ib. 6, § 10; the virtue of the parts relative to the virtue of the whole, ib. 13, § 15;
the happiness of the whole dependent on the happiness of the parts, ii. 5, § 27; vii. 9, § 7; the sophism that "if the parts are little the whole is little," v. 8, § 3; the care of the part and the care of the whole inseparable, viii. 1, § 3.

Will, found even in very young children, vii. 15, § 10.

Will, the of the ruler, an unsafe guide, ii. 9, § 23; 10, §§ 11, 13; iii. 15, § 5; 16, §§ 4-6.

Winds, the, sometimes said to be only two—north and south, iv. 3, § 5; the east wind the healthiest, vii. 11, § 2; the north wind better than the south for the procreation of children, ib. 16, § 11.

Wine, not to be given to young children, vii. 17, § 11; the age at which it may be drunk, ib. § 11.

Winter, the best season for marriage, vii. 16, § 10.

Wisdom, practical, the virtue of the ruler, iii. 4, § 18.

Woman, the, has a different virtue to the man, i. 13, §§ 3-12; iii. 4, § 16; shares in the deliberative faculty, i. 13, § 7.

Women, should be trained with a view to the state, i. 13, § 15; (cp. ii. 9, § 5;) cannot have the same pursuits as men, ii. 5, § 24; said to have been common among certain Libyan tribes, ib. 3, § 9; have great influence among warlike races, ib. 9, § 7; caused great harm to Sparta by their disorder and licence, ib. §§ 5-13; possessed two-fifths of the land in Laconia, ib. § 15; too proud in oligarchies to be controlled, iv. 15, § 13; have often ruined tyrannies by their insolence, v. 11, § 23; are allowed great licence in democracies and tyrannies, ib. 11, § 11; vi. 4, § 20; commonly cease to bear children after fifty, vii. 16, §§ 5, 16; should not marry too young, ib. § 6; impart their nature to their offspring, ib. § 14.

Women and children, the community of, proposed by Plato, ii. 1, § 3; 12, § 12; he has not explained whether he would extend it to the dependent classes, ib. 5, §§ 18-24; — objections of Aristotle: (1) unity would not be promoted, ib. 3, § 2; (2) there would be a general neglect of the children, ib. § 4; (3) the parentage of the children could not be concealed, ib. § 8; (4) expiations would be impossible, ib. 4, § 1; (5) the concealment of relationship would lead to unnatural crimes, ib. §§ 1-3, 10; (6) affection would be weakened, ib. §§ 4-9; (7) the transfer of children to another rank would be found impracticable, ib. § 10; (8) the household would be neglected, ib. 5, § 24.

X.

Xenelasia: see Strangers.

Xerxes, King of Persia, conspiracy of Artapanes against, v. 10, § 21.

Z.

Zaleucus, the Locrian legislator, ii. 12, § 7; said to have been a disciple of Thales, ib.

Zancle, seizure of, by the Samians, v. 3, § 12.

Zeugitae, the (in Solon's legislation), ii. 12, § 6.

Zeus, iii. 13, § 25; 'the father of gods and men," i. 12, § 3; never represented by the poets as singing or playing, viii. 3, § 8: — Olympian, temple of (at Athens), built by the Peisistratidae, v. 11, § 9.